



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 478.41 .R462

Reynolds, Alphaeus Bruce,

Latin reader : nature study and easy sto

**Stanford University Libraries**



**3 6105 04926 5528**



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

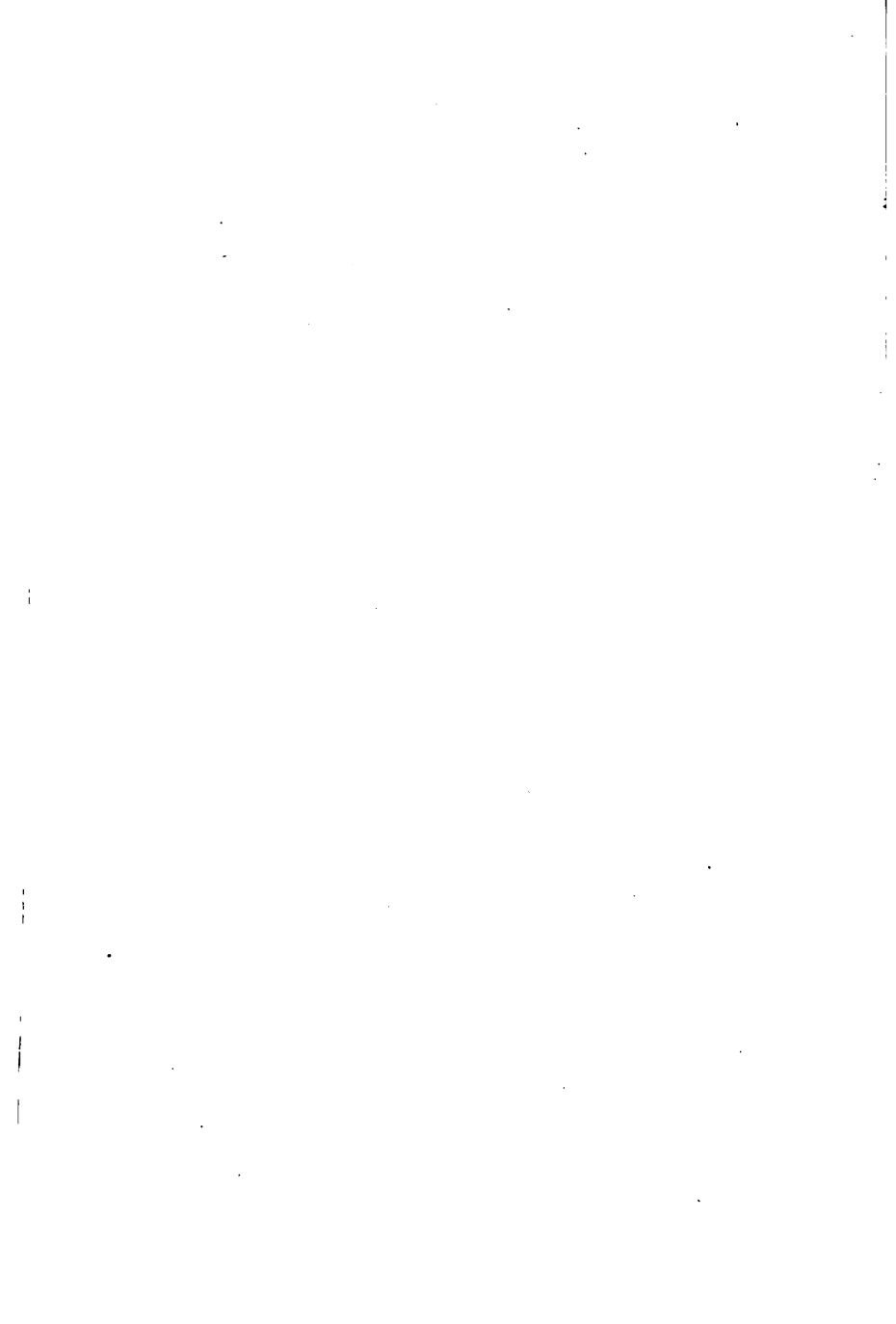
TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES









JULIUS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum

# L A T I N   R E A D E R

NATURE STUDY AND EASY STORIES  
·FOR SIGHT READING DURING  
THE FIRST YEAR IN LATIN

BY

A. B. REYNOLDS

HEAD OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT  
HITCHCOCK MILITARY ACADEMY  
SAN RAFAEL, CALIFORNIA

*Bene inceptum, dimidium cōfectum*

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO



597397

**C**

COPYRIGHT, 1918,

BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

2 E O

TO  
ALL · THOSE BOYS AND GIRLS · WHO  
SEEK · BY MEANS OF THE LATIN · TO  
IMPROVE THEIR UNDERSTANDING OF  
ENGLISH · TO ACQUIRE A TRUE APPRE-  
CIATION OF ANCIENT LITERATURE · OR  
TO KNOW THE FOUNTAIN HEAD OF SO  
MUCH THAT IS INDISPENSABLE TO THEIR  
PART IN MODERN LIFE · THIS BOOK  
IS DEDICATED



## PREFACE

DURING the first year pupils must form the habit of reading Latin. If we had the material, they might learn to read Latin as they learned to read English, *by reading*. What can be done to get this material? Of what should this material consist?

We are preparing them to read authors. Our own experience has often shown us that the first few pages of a new book seem difficult — usually the most difficult of the whole book — and so much so that we might say of many books: “Well begun is half done.”

The majority of pupils who read much Latin, read Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil. Their first attack upon each of these authors is nearly always made upon the first pages of the Gallic War, Book I or Book II, the First Oration against Catiline, and the First Book of the *Æneid*. Their reading during the first year can be made to contain every important word and every form and construction occurring in those few pages.

During the first year's work, students of Latin are obliged to read hundreds and even thousands of sentences illustrating Latin forms and syntax. Those sentences are for the most part fragments of the sentences of Caesar and other Latin authors and are usually arranged so as to illustrate and review the use of certain constructions with regularity and precision.

Now if those sentences can be made to tell *something worth knowing and remembering*, the pupil's interest will not have to be either forced or lacking, and he may find some encouragement to re-read many times and even to memorize passages illustrating the more common forms and constructions and fix them forever in mind. He will also be enabled to bring into play those instincts (that have already been so well trained while learning to read his own language) by means of which he has gathered the meaning of hundreds of English words from their connection in sentences and not lapse from the first into the helpless condition of a vocabulary slave.

The words and constructions of those first few famous pages above mentioned were used by the same authors elsewhere in their works — and by other authors — to say things that are entertaining and worth remembering. By gathering together a large number of phrases and sentences from Nepos,

Vergil, Sallust, Pliny's *Natural History*, Cicero's Speeches, the *Somnium Scipionis* and the *Tusculan Disputations*, Caesar's sketches of the Gauls, Germans, and Britons, from Tacitus, Livy, and others, one may easily possess the wherewith to tell almost any story about Nature, the Geography of Europe, the History of Romans, or make sketches and comparisons of ancient and modern life, and even construct interesting fiction using all those very words and constructions that the pupil will first meet (with very few additions) till he shall not find anything strange in the first pages of the authors but the story.

Such has been the process in creating this book and such is its purpose.

We merely hope that here and there pupils will find some passage that will be to them not something to pass over and be rid of, but something that they will gladly go back to and learn.

Two distinct methods have been employed to induce the student to help himself. First, where forms are familiar, attention is called to the meaning of the root word in one or more English derivatives; second, where forms require explanation or where the meaning is difficult to illustrate by English derivatives, the particular form is explained at the bottom of the page. The general vocabulary is for occasional reference.

I desire to express my thanks to Mr. S. J. Halley of Belmont School, Belmont, California, for valuable criticisms of the text; to Major G. H. White and Mr. G. A. Broadfoot of Hitchcock Military Academy, and to Mr. J. W. Hunt, formerly of the same school, for suggestions regarding the treatment of grammatical matters; to Mr. W. H. Edmands of the University of California for his help in arranging the plot of the last story; to Mr. Webster Dillon of San Leandro, Cal., for assistance in preparing the appendix; to Miss Hazel E. Kyle of San Rafael for many suggestions regarding the matter and arrangement of the appendix; to Mr. Oscar I. Losey of Meridian, Cal., for his help in reading the proof; and to the last two for their painstaking work in eliminating typographical errors from the manuscript.

A. B. R.

SAN RAFAEL, CALIFORNIA,  
May, 1918.

## TO THE TEACHER

I. THE first twenty-one readings are so arranged as to afford opportunity for a very thorough study or review of the five essential elements of all sentences, viz. :

1. Predicate Verb — the word that asserts (finite verb) or represents a former assertion (infinitive), in boldface on page 3.
2. Subject — printed in boldface on pp. 4, 10, and 23.
3. Predicate Noun or Adjective — represented as being the *same person or thing* as the subject or as a *quality, condition*, etc. of the same — *i.e.* who or what the subject is or is made or called, printed in boldface on pp. 5, 11, and 22.
4. Direct Object — always *some other person or thing* (except in case of reflexives), printed in boldface on pp. 6 and 15.
5. Modifiers of all classes — all genitives (pp. 14, 19, 20, and 21), datives including the indirect object (p. 8), ablatives (pp. 9 and 12), prepositional phrases (pp. 13, 16, and 17), etc.

II. If left to themselves, pupils are sure to put all their energy into memorizing the English translation and rely on a merely visual impression to retain the *Latin which they are setting out to learn*. To prevent their forming this pernicious habit, it might be helpful: (1) to have them read each lesson till they can pronounce it with ease, (2) to have them read the Latin over after translating till they can bring out the meaning and show that they understand what they are reading.

In order not to become monotonous, each reading should have a definite purpose. One pupil may be asked to re-read the whole page promptly in Latin after translating. Another may then be required to read one sentence at a time, pausing for a third to select the subject (or some other essential element not in boldface type) and for a fourth to repeat the translation briskly. Concentrating on one element at a time soon develops the habit of reading observingly.

(CLASSIFICATION OR PARSING OF THE WORDS ON PAGE 6)

IV. The meaning of some three hundred Latin words is taught with the text by means of derivatives. This at once compels a careful analysis of the English words and paves the way for collecting and defining other derivatives from the same roots, at first by the help of §§ 40-47; 127, 137 of the appendix, and later by the use of §§ 219-223. See suggestions on page 249.

V. In the simpler readings pupils are required to translate infinitives in all the ways in which they will be obliged to render them later. Both literal and free translation may be illustrated as follows:

**legere** read: to read; (be) reading; do reading;  
**legi** (be) read; to be read; (being) read; reading (be) done;

**Nōs legere iussit** he bade us read;  
                                   he ordered us to read;  
                                   he ordered that-we read;  
                                   he bade us be reading.

**Nōs legere audiit** he heard us read;  
                                   he heard us reading;  
                                   (he heard-about us reading);  
                                   he heard-about our reading;  
                                   he heard that-we read.

**Nōs legere patitur** he lets us do (the) reading;  
                                   he allows us to do reading.

**Legi intellegēbat** he knew (it) to be read.

**Legi passus est** he let (it) be read.

**Legi audivit** he heard (it) read;  
                                   he heard-about (it) being read;  
                                   he heard reading done;  
                                   he heard-about (the) reading being done;  
                                   he heard that-it was read;  
                                   he heard that-reading was being done.

In order to make the pupil appreciate the forms used in the Indirect Statement on page 3, it may be rendered, first literally:

"We are reading-about us living on the earth; (about) the earth looking flat; (about) it not being flat, however; (about) it being round; (about) us calling it a globe" and then freely, as:

"We read (that) we live on the earth; (that) the earth appears flat; (that) it is not flat," etc.

VI. Directions for the study of syntax are merely suggestions to be used at the discretion of the teacher.





# CONTENTS

## *Introduction*

	PAGE
TO THE STUDENT . . . . .	xvii
READING AND TRANSLATING . . . . .	xix
THE FRAMEWORK OF SENTENCES . . . . .	xx
BRAIN WORK AND THUMB WORK . . . . .	xxiii
THE RIGHT ATTITUDE . . . . .	xxiii

## *Pronunciation and Derivatives*

ILLUSTRATIONS AND CAUTIONS . . . . .	1
THE REMAINS OF ANCIENT WORDS . . . . .	2

## *Nature Study*

THE EARTH . . . . .	3
THE SUN . . . . .	4
THE MOON . . . . .	5
LIGHT AND SHADOWS . . . . .	6
THE SOURCE OF LIGHT . . . . .	7
EARTHLIGHT AND MOONLIGHT . . . . .	8
SUNLIGHT . . . . .	9
THE STARS . . . . .	10
STARLIGHT . . . . .	11
DAY AND NIGHT . . . . .	12
THE NORTH . . . . .	14
THE FOUR WINDS . . . . .	15
THE EARTH'S INTERIOR . . . . .	16
LAND AND WATER . . . . .	17

	PAGE
THE ATMOSPHERE . . . . .	18
THE SEASONS . . . . .	20

*Sketches of Roman Life*

THE LATINS . . . . .	24
CHUMS . . . . .	25
IN A ROMAN PRIMARY SCHOOL . . . . .	26
A LESSON IN NUMBERS . . . . .	28
LIGHT AND COLOR . . . . .	30
THE MEASUREMENT OF TIME . . . . .	31
SPATIUM . . . . .	33
OTHER STUDIES . . . . .	34
HOURS AND WATCHES . . . . .	35
THE DAYS OF THE MONTH . . . . .	36
THE JULIAN CALENDAR . . . . .	37
MEASURES OF SPACE . . . . .	38
THE ROMAN MEASURES . . . . .	40
THE CIRCLE . . . . .	41
GRAVITY . . . . .	42
THE STUDY OF NUMBERS . . . . .	43
READING AND THE VALUE OF READING . . . . .	45
THE CARE OF THE EYES . . . . .	47
WRITING — ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS . . . . .	48
A ROMAN'S AMBITION . . . . .	50
ON THE PLANTATION . . . . .	51
A ROMAN HOUSE AND A ROMAN HOUSEHOLD . . . . .	52
THE RETURN FROM SCHOOL . . . . .	55
BROTHER AND SISTER . . . . .	57
THE FAMILY AT HOME . . . . .	58
AEMIUS RESCUES BRENNUS . . . . .	59
A BIRTHDAY REQUEST . . . . .	60

# Contents

xiii

	PAGE
AN INVITATION TO VISIT ROME . . . . .	61
ROMAN POLITICS . . . . .	63
ARRANGEMENTS FOR THE TRIP . . . . .	64
A VISIT TO CICERO . . . . .	65
THE CITY — WITH CRASSUS . . . . .	66
A FIRE IN ROME . . . . .	67
BRENNUS SAVES AEMILIUS . . . . .	68

## *Arminius a Suebian Boy*

THE GAULS AND THE GERMANS . . . . .	69
IN A GERMAN FOREST . . . . .	70
ARMINIUS GOES A-HUNTING . . . . .	71
NASUA RETURNS WITH CAPTIVES . . . . .	72
ARMINIUS BECOMES A SLAVE . . . . .	73
GIVEN TO THE KING'S SISTER . . . . .	74
NORICA IS SENT TO MARRY ARIOVISTUS . . . . .	75
WITH ARIOVISTUS IN GAUL . . . . .	76
THE GERMANS IN GAUL . . . . .	77
THE ROMAN PROVINCE OF GAUL . . . . .	78
LIFE IN THE GERMAN CAMP . . . . .	79
GUARDING THE HOSTAGES . . . . .	79
WHAT ARMINIUS LEARNS ABOUT THE GAULS . . . . .	81
THE ROMANS NAME ARIOVISTUS KING AND FRIEND . . . . .	81
RUMORS FROM HELVETIA . . . . .	82
GALLIC CHIEFS . . . . .	83
THE HELVETIAN NATION . . . . .	84
THE HARUDES CROSS THE RHINE . . . . .	85
THE FEARS OF ARIOVISTUS . . . . .	86
THE ARRIVAL OF THE ROMAN PROCONSUL . . . . .	87
THE HELVETIANS MIGRATE . . . . .	88
CAESAR AVENGES LUCIUS CASSIUS . . . . .	89

	PAGE
THE GRAIN DOES NOT ARRIVE . . . . .	90
THE PLOTS OF DUMNORIX . . . . .	91
THE HELVETIANS DEFEATED . . . . .	94
THE COUNCIL OF BIBRACTE . . . . .	96
AN EMBASSY FROM CAESAR . . . . .	97
A MESSAGE FROM CAESAR'S ENEMIES . . . . .	98
THE PARLEY WITH CAESAR . . . . .	100
ARIOVISTUS DEFEATED . . . . .	101
THE DEATH OF NORICA . . . . .	10
CRASSUS RESCUES ARMINIUS AND VELAEDA . . . . .	103
A LONG WINTER IN CAPTIVITY . . . . .	104
THE COUNCIL OF LUCA . . . . .	105
A VISIT TO ROME . . . . .	106
GIVEN TO QUINTUS CICERO . . . . .	106
ARMINIUS WARNS THE SUEBIANS . . . . .	107
THE SUGAMBRIANS ATTACK CICERO'S CAMP . . . . .	109
ARMINIUS AND VELAEDA ESCAPE . . . . .	110

### *Appendix*

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, AND ACCENT . . . . .	111
GENERAL VIEW OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES . . . . .	117
ENDINGS AND NON-ENDINGS . . . . .	118
OBSERVATIONS THAT COUNT . . . . .	124
GENDER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES . . . . .	127
ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES . . . . .	128
THE MEANING OF THE CASES . . . . .	130
LIST OF LATIN PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	131
PLACE, POSITION, SITUATION, AND CONDITION . . . . .	132
PERSONS AND THINGS . . . . .	133
INDEFINITE NUMBERS . . . . .	135
INDEFINITE OR UNDEFINED PERSONS . . . . .	136

# *Contents*

XV

	PAGE
CONNECTING WORDS . . . . .	136
AGREEMENT OF VERBS . . . . .	137
BIS, BĪDUUM, BIENNĪUM . . . . .	137
EXPRESSIONS OF MEASURE . . . . .	138
LIST OF COMMON ADVERBS . . . . .	138
INDEFINITE QUANTITIES AND VALUES . . . . .	140
INDEFINITE OR UNDEFINED THINGS . . . . .	141
CASES KNOWN BY THEIR USE IN SENTENCES . . . . .	143
PARADIGMS OF NOUNS . . . . .	146
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS — NOUNS . . . . .	152
PARADIGMS OF REGULAR ADJECTIVES . . . . .	154
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	158
WORDS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES . . . . .	160
APPOSITIVES . . . . .	162
TIME AND CIRCUMSTANCE . . . . .	163
ADJECTIVE FORMS OF VERBS . . . . .	164
DUTY, NECESSITY, ETC. . . . .	169
WHICH ONE (OF TWO)? . . . . .	170
GENITIVES AND POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES . . . . .	171
PRONOUNS — RELATIVE, INDEFINITE, ETC. . . . .	172
PRONOUNS — PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE . . . . .	176
PRONOUNS — DEMONSTRATIVE . . . . .	177
WHICH ONE (OF ANY NUMBER)? . . . . .	179
COMPOUND PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS . . . . .	180
ŪNUS, DUO, AND TRĒS . . . . .	184
NUMERALS . . . . .	185
INFINITIVES IN ENGLISH . . . . .	186
FINITE VERBS AND INFINITIVES . . . . .	187
INFINITIVES AND THEIR USES . . . . .	188
PRESENT INDICATIVE FORMS OF ALL CLASSES . . . . .	191
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVES OF ALL CLASSES . . . . .	196

	PAGE
INDIRECT STATEMENTS, QUESTIONS, ETC. . . . .	199
THE LATIN QUESTION MARKS . . . . .	200
SEQUENCE OF TENSES . . . . .	203
CLAUSES OF RESULT . . . . .	205
DESCRIPTIVE AND CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES . . . . .	206
SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN CLAUSES . . . . .	207
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	210
USES OF THE GERUNDIVE AND SUPINE . . . . .	211
SUMMARY OF FACTS ABOUT VERB FORMS . . . . .	211
ACTIVE, PASSIVE, AND DEPONENT FORMS . . . . .	218
PARADIGMS OF VERBS . . . . .	220-259
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS — VERBS . . . . .	260
THE OLDER MEANING OF WORDS . . . . .	263
WORD-BUILDING — PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOUNDS . . . . .	264
USE OF COMPOUND VERBS . . . . .	270
FREQUENTATIVE VERBS . . . . .	270
INCEPTIVE VERBS . . . . .	271
THE FRAMEWORK OF COMPLEX SENTENCES . . . . .	272
SENTENCE-BUILDING . . . . .	276
THE GOVERNING POWER OF WORDS . . . . .	280
ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES . . . . .	281
VOCABULARY . . . . .	315
INDEX . . . . .	345

# INTRODUCTION

## TO THE STUDENT<sup>1</sup>

THE educational value of Latin is undoubted. Those who hesitate about taking it make it only a question of sparing the time or taking the trouble. But no study ever gives greater returns for the time and labor spent upon it.

Faith in Latin remains firm. Never was there a time when more people were engaged in efforts to direct the beginner aright. The sincerity of these efforts, made by those who know, is evidence of its worth to students. Even those who do not care for the study for its own sake, find it the great *lubricator* and *time-saver* among their studies.

The reason is plain. Rome has been compared<sup>2</sup> to a great reservoir into which all the streams of ancient civilization flowed and in which all the growing streams of modern civilization have their source. All the hard-earned and priceless treasures of ancient knowledge and thought were gathered up by the Romans and passed on *expressed in the Latin way*, and the additions that represent the discoveries, advances and improvements of two thousand years *continue to find expression in Latin terms*.

It may be in order here to enumerate a few of the benefits you will derive from a careful study of your Latin.

One third of the words of your daily conversation and more than half the words you learn in school have been borrowed from the Romans; and fully four fifths of all the words you will ever use are related to Latin in one way or another.

Thousands of Modern English words have been built up out of Roman materials and on the Roman plan. Each Latin root word

<sup>1</sup> Read now. Re-read after the first month's work.

<sup>2</sup> By the English historian, Freeman.



you learn gives you the key to the meaning of several other Latin words and of from two to fifty English words.<sup>1</sup>

1. Two school years well spent on your Latin will save you five years searching the English Dictionary in after life.

2. English is a language of few forms; and is therefore most easily mastered by comparison with a language that has many forms.

3. Latin broadens your mind and widens your view by teaching you another and a simpler way of looking at things.

4. The study of Latin makes you look at words more closely and in a new light, and teaches you that accuracy and careful discrimination which is so necessary in all future work.

5. If a student of Mathematics, Science, Law, or Medicine has not already learned a few hundred Latin words in the proper way, he is obliged to learn thousands of technical terms the hardest way.

6. The turning of Latin into English gives you the best practice you will ever have in the choice and arrangement of English words and the best possible help toward becoming fluent and orderly in speaking and writing.

7. It opens up a personal acquaintance with the cradle of civilization through our nearest congenial neighbors in the past — the Romans, from whom we have drawn the beginnings at least of most that we cherish and appreciate in modern life.

These and many other advantages you will gain slowly and steadily, often indirectly and unconsciously; so that many, whose conversation and accomplishments show how largely they are due to the study of Latin, have not thought of attributing them to that source, and they are sometimes inclined to give the wrong advice to students.

### *How to Read Latin*

1. Latin words have no exact equivalents in English. They mean what the writer or speaker makes them mean or construes

<sup>1</sup> And still more in French, Spanish, Italian, etc.

them to mean. *Read each paragraph over and over in Latin* aloud, or at least in a whisper, before trying to translate it. The purpose of reading the Latin is threefold :

- a. to look it over, see what it says and get the meaning ;
- b. to accustom the eye, tongue, ear, and mind to Latin forms and phrases and to the Latin way of looking at things ;
- c. to have the assistance of *eye-impressions*, *ear-impressions*, *tongue-impressions*, and *mind-impressions* to help the memory retain the Latin forms, phrases, and order of words.

To get the greatest benefit from reading the Latin, we must put ourselves in the writer's place and try to say what he intended to say, as we endeavor to make his sentences live again on our lips by giving them the proper expression.

### *The Proper Time to Begin*

Begin with easy readings now and keep it up. Pupils who start to translate immediately without first reading the Latin make their work an unbearable burden later on, because they lose sight of the fact that *it is the Latin that they are studying* and not the English rendering of it.

With the proper start and practice of reading, Latin soon becomes "second nature" and the mind a veritable storehouse of familiar forms and phrases in the correct Latin order.

### *Translating Latin*

2. The purpose of translating is merely to show others that we understand what we read and to get practice in framing English sentences. It is a waste of time to try to translate without first reading the Latin over till we feel satisfied that we know the constructions, arrangements of phrases, and, in a general way, what the whole paragraph tells. Reading several paragraphs together often clears up the meaning of many words that we might otherwise be obliged to look up.

3. *How to Attack a Sentence*

First, *translate the subject, if there is one.* The subject is ordinarily omitted, whenever the verb does not end in -t, -nt, -tur, -ntur, and is often omitted even then.

Next, *go on to the verb.* (There may be two or more verbs.)

Then, *go back to the predicate noun* (or adjective) or object.

Many sentences have only a subject and verb with modifiers.

The skeleton of every sentence is like one of these *types*.

Type I. Subject and Predicate Verb. Nōs, we, is omitted.	In terrā habitāmus. Cf. 5 g. (On earth live-we.) We live on the earth.
Type II a. Subject and Predicate Verb and Predicate Adjective.	Terra magna est. Cf. 5 a. (Earth large is.) The earth is (a) large (body).
Type II b. Subject and Predicate Verb and Predicate Noun.	Ea globus magnus dicitur. Cf. 5 a. (It ball great spoken-of-is-it.) It is spoken of (as) a great ball.
Type III. Subject and Predicate Verb and Direct Object.	Nōs eam globum dicimus. Cf. 5 b. (We it sphere speak-of-we.) We call it a sphere.

4. Always *seek out and keep in mind the subject and verb* of the principal statement, arranging all other parts so as to give the best effect in English.

*Avoid changing active verbs to the passive*, as it causes too much confusion.

One of the most profitable exercises in *choice and arrangement* of words is the rendering of Latin sentences in smooth, forceful English, keeping as close to the original as possible.

*Relations of Words in Latin Sentences*

On the following page is a list of examples of the more common elements of Latin and English sentences.

## 5. (To be memorized one by one as referred to later.)

- a. **Puer Mārcus appellātur** *the boy is called Mark* § 74, 3  
(boy Mark named-is) Nom. Pred. — same person as subject.
- b. **Puerum Mārcum appellāmus** *we call the boy Mark*  
(boy Mark call-we) Acc. — Predicate of the object.
- c. **Is Mārcus est** *it is Mark* Nom. — Pred. of a subject Nom.  
**Eum Mārcum esse nōvimus** *we know it to be Mark*  
(it Mark to-be know-we) Acc. — Pred. of a subject Acc.
- d. **Puerī Mārcum vident** *the boys see Mark* Acc. — Direct object.  
**Mārcum annum aluimus** *we fed Mark (for) a year*  
(Mark year fed-we) Acc. used as a Measure of time. § 68
- e. **Mārcō librī sunt** *books belong to Mark* or *Mark has books*  
(Mark-to books are) Dat. of Possessor or Owner (asserted).  
**Librōs Mārcī habēmus** *we have Mark's books* § 105  
(books Mark's have-we) Gen. of Possessor or Owner (assumed).
- f. **Mārcō librum imperāmus** *we demand a book of Mark*  
(Mark a-book demand-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.  
**Mārcō librōs dedimus** *we (being near) gave Mark books*  
(Mark books gave-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.  
**Librōs ad Mārcum dedimus** *we sent Mark books (from afar)*  
(books to Mark sent-we) Ad w. Acc. — distance traveled.  
**Eius in Mārcum ōdium nōvimus** *we know his hatred for Mark*  
(his for Mark hate know-we) In w. Acc. — Person aimed at.
- g. **Mārcus in vicum it** *Mark is-going to the village.* § 60  
(Mark to hamlet goes) Nom. — Subj. of the *Finite* verb, it.  
**Mārcum in vicum ire videō** *I see Mark going to the hamlet*  
(Mark to hamlet go see-I) Acc. Subj. of the *Inf.* ire.
- h. **Dic, Mārcē!** *speak (thou), Mark!* Voc. of Person Addressed.
- i. **Puer cum Mārcō est** *the boy is (in-company-) with Mark*  
(boy with Mark is) Cum w. Abl. — denoting Association.  
**Puer librō ūtitur** *the boy makes-use-of-the book.* § 62  
(boy book-with helps-self) Abl. — Means of an Action. § 182 b
- j. **Minor nātū<sup>1</sup> est quam Mārcus (est)** *is younger than Mark*  
(less age-in is-he than Mark is) Nom. — Subject of est.  
**Annō<sup>2</sup> iunior est Mārcō** *he is a-year younger than-Mark*  
(year-by younger is Mark-than) Abl. — Measure of Difference  
and Person (or thing) compared.

<sup>1</sup> Abl. specifying *in what respect*.<sup>2</sup> Cf. *annum* in d. above.

## OUR TASK

*The Value of Sight Reading*

6. *a.* To be thoroughly acquainted with a piece of Latin is to know or readily recognize the form, meaning, and use of every word in it and get the author's message to us.

To be thoroughly acquainted with nouns is to know or readily recognize the meaning, the gender, and all the endings each has, to show its number and case. This is our task.

To relieve this huge task of some of its tediousness and length, nouns are divided into classes having the same or nearly the same endings; so that when the endings of a few nouns in each class are known, all one has to learn is the *nominative*, *genitive*, and *gender* as given in vocabularies.

*b.* If a student is a mere translator (not a sight-reader) and therefore a slave to the vocabulary, his task is still enormous and seemingly endless. The nominative, genitive, gender, and various meanings (or hints at the meaning) of hundreds of nouns and similar facts regarding hundreds of other words must be looked up (often repeatedly). This purely mechanical work occupies four fifths of his time, that is, uses his thumbs four times as much as his brains. And yet the means of lightening this dreary task is constantly before our very eyes, if we will only use it with intelligence. Cf. § 1.

*Sight reading* is reading (in the original) passages that contain many words whose forms, uses, and meanings are new.

*Sight translation* is turning the same into English with little or no referring to vocabularies. Here and there a word must be looked up or a hint given.

*c.* On the one hand, the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of every noun must be learned; the nominative, because it is so often irregular and because the vocative is generally the same; the genitive, in order to know the base and the declension; the gender, in order to know to which class it belongs; both genitive and gender, in order to know what the rest of the endings are.

*Brain Work and Thumb Work*

d. On the other hand, vocabularies are not the only source of these facts. An observing reader may gather many or even all these facts regarding the majority of Latin nouns as he goes, without the delay of using his thumbs or allowing the work to become the weary burden it so often proves to be; for modern English words betray the *ancestral roots*.

**Magnitude** (*bigness*) and **magnify** (*make large*) show that the Latin base, **magn-**, means *large* or *great*. The connection may reveal the meaning of the strangest looking word, as in:

*We heard the aes ring. Someone rang the tintinnābulum.*

It requires no effort and we have no choice. Both of these strange words mean "bell."

*A single ending may reveal all else we need to know; as in nātūrā.*  
Cf. Appendix § 50.

Its root **nā-** (sometimes **gnā-**) is the parent of our words, *nation*, *native*, *innate* (inborn), *cognate* (relative), *nature*, *naturally*, *unnatural*, etc.

But the ancient word (usually broader in meaning than ours) may include what we call the *universe*, *all nature*, *make up*, *character*, *build*, *shape*, *birth*, *kind*, and *disposition*. Cf. § 218.

e. Its case ending **-ā** tells all the rest.

**Nātūrā** is *ablative* (-ā occurs in no other case) § 55 g

**Nātūrā** is *singular* (-ā does not occur in the plural) § 55 d

Its nominative singular is **nātūra** and its genitive singular is **nātūrae**, for **-ā** occurs in no declension except the first. § 55 c

**Nātūrā** belongs to a class of nouns that are feminine, unless they denote male beings, as **poēta**, *poet*. See § 54.

**Nātūrā** does not denote a male being; therefore it is *feminine*.

**Nātūrā** has the same endings as **prōvincia**, **porta**, **puella**, etc. Cf. § 77 a.

*The Right Attitude*

7. The aim of introductory Latin work is to prepare students to read authors, many of whose words, forms, and usages are still unknown to them. In order that pupils may find themselves in

that situation now and be trained in the proper attitude for such work, they must meet with new words and strange forms mingled with those already familiar to them. Therefore this book is arranged for *sight reading*.

8. Side by side with the first readings should be studied the working principles by means of which the best readers of Latin consciously or unconsciously gather up the necessary facts, while they *read and re-read to impress the Latin words and phrases* and the *Latin order and constructions* on their memory, and enjoy the story without the constant interruption and drudgery of referring to the vocabulary. § 6 d, e.

9. The intelligent reader is always consciously or unconsciously asking himself :

(a) "What *must* this word mean?"

and is constantly aware that

(b) *Cases of nouns are easily known by their use.* App. § 74.

In the dictionary a word may be said to have many meanings, but in a sentence, it is a different matter. Every sentence states something very definite, and the meaning of each word is restricted by all the others.

10. Thus when the meaning of four words of a sentence is known, the meaning assigned by the author to the fifth word will always be found to fall within the limits of the possible and the likely. To illustrate that a word *must* mean what the other words of the sentence force it to mean :

*We habitāmus on the earth. The earth vidētur flat. Ea is not flat autem. The earth vocātur a globe. A globe is et spoken of as sphaera.*

*We see magnum lūmen in the sky. Id lūmen is dazzling bright. Id is spoken of as sōl. Sōl nōn vidētur flat. Is vidētur globōsus.*

# LATIN READER

## PRONUNCIATION

The alphabet we use is Roman all but our *w* and *j*.

To pronounce the Latin words below correctly, pronounce the familiar English words printed under each.

The vowels *ā, ē, ī, ō, ū* and diphthongs *ae, au, ei, oe, ui* are prolonged twice as much as the unmarked vowels.

CAUTION.—Utter the syllables that contain short *a* and short *o* quickly. These vowels are like the first *a* in *aha* and *o* in *omit*.

The meaning of the Latin words is given in parenthesis.

ad ( <i>up to</i> )	ā ( <i>away</i> )	aut ( <i>or</i> )	co'-lor ( <i>tint</i> )
odd	ah	out	coe lore
nōn ( <i>not</i> )	dat ( <i>gives</i> )	hāc ( <i>this</i> )	haec ( <i>this</i> )
known	dot	hock	hike
hoc ( <i>this, it</i> )	sōl ( <i>sun</i> )	vel ( <i>or</i> )	rēs ( <i>fact</i> )
hoke	sole	well	race
vir ( <i>man</i> )	sic ( <i>so</i> )	vul'-tū ( <i>face</i> )	in-fe'-ri-or ( <i>lower</i> )
we're	seek	wool' too	e'en fe' rry ore
dē ( <i>from</i> )	sī ( <i>if</i> )	fir'-mae ( <i>solid</i> )	ob-oe'-dī ( <i>obey thou</i> )
day	see	fear' my	oh boy' dee
hui! ( <i>ho</i> )	hei ( <i>alas</i> )	coe'-pit ( <i>began</i> )	
whee	hey	coy' pit	

Take great pains to learn the correct pronunciation of *c*, con-, *g*, *nc*, *ng*, *s*, *bs*, *bt*, *si*, *tī*, *tu*, *v*, and *x*.

cin'-get <sup>1</sup>	cin'-gō ( <i>I gird</i> )	ob-ten'-tō ( <i>held</i> )	vir-tū'-tī ( <i>valor</i> )
king' get	king' go	ope ten' toe	we're too' tea
cōn'-su-lēs <sup>2</sup>	cau'-sae ( <i>causes</i> )	vī'-si-ō ( <i>vision</i> )	fōr-tū'-nae ( <i>luck</i> )
cone' soo lace	cow' sigh	we' see oh	fore too' nigh

NOTE.—Learn to pronounce by imitating your teacher. Read pages 3, 4, and 5 over and over in Latin for pronunciation drill. See also § 23.

<sup>1</sup> will surround.

<sup>2</sup> consuls.



## LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

Every one has seen the effects of wear and tear on hats and shoes. The ravages of time have a similar effect on words. Some are lost, some worn and cut, and some escape with little use. Our words are from various sources. Many of them are scarred and tattered fragments of proud, sonorous parts of speech that once ran the streets of Ancient Rome.

Hard use has torn the -t- and -us from **rotundus**  
and left it **ro und**.  
With bruised and swollen eyes the ancient **inimicus**  
still survives in our humbler **enemy**.  
After varied treatment the Latin, **radius**  
is well preserved in our word, **radius**,  
but bent and torn in our word, **ra y**.

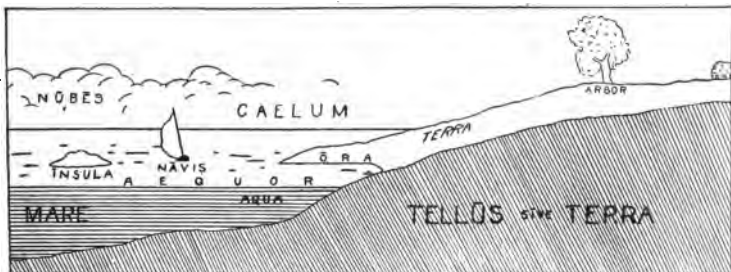
<b>multitūdinem</b>	<b>integrum</b>	<b>magister</b>	<b>pūctum</b>
<i>multitude</i>	<i>integer</i>	<i>ma ster</i>	<i>point, punctual</i>
<i>multitudinous</i>	<i>enti re</i>	<i>mi ster</i>	<i>punctuality</i>
<b>sēcūritātem</b>	<b>plānum</b> (flat)	<b>Aemiliam</b>	<b>ārdentem</b> (burning)
<i>security</i>	<i>plane, plan</i>	<i>Emily</i>	<i>ardent, arson</i>
<i>s urety</i>	<i>plain, llano</i>		<i>ardently</i>

Though lost so far as English is concerned, **liber** (*book*) still lives in its relative, **library** ; so also

<b>lūmen</b> ( <i>light</i> ) in <b>luminous</b>	<b>velle</b> ( <i>will</i> ) in <b>voluntary</b>
<b>puer</b> ( <i>boy</i> ) in <b>puerile</b> ( <i>boyish</i> )	<b>ferre</b> ( <i>bear</i> ) in <b>transfer</b> , <b>suffer</b>

From the various forms existing in English, we see that there must be *several classes* of nouns in Latin.

	2	1	2	3	3	3	5
<i>Sing.</i>	alumnus	fōrmula	strātum	index	genus	axis	speciēs
<i>Plu.</i>	alumni	fōrmulae	strāta	indicēs	genera	axēs	speciēs



## DĒ TELLŪRE

In tellūre **habitāmus**. Tellūs plāna **vidētur**. Ea autem nōn plāna **est**. Nātūrā rotunda **est**. Nōs tellūrem globum **vocāmus**. Globus et sphaera **vocātur**. Tellūs magna **est**. Ea globus magnus **est**. Tellūs et terra **vocātur**. 5

Dē quō vōs **legitis**, discipulī?

Nōs dē tellūre **legimus**, magister.

§§ 3, 10, 24

Quid dē eā **legitis**?

**Legimus**: nōs in tellūre **habitāre**; <sup>1</sup> tellūrem plānam **vidēri**; eam autem nōn plānam **esse**; nātūrā rotundam **esse**; 10 nōs tellūrem globum **vocāre**; eam globum magnum **esse**.

You must not only learn new words and new facts, but also take advantage of all you already know. See hints below.

habitation = *dwelling*  
 legible = *readable*  
 disciple = *learner, pupil*  
 magnitude = *largeness*  
 telluric = *earthy*  
 terrestrial = *earthly*  
 invoke = *call upon*  
 spherical = *globular*

autem *however, but* dē *from, about*  
 ea (N.) *it, she*; eam (Ac.) *it, her*  
 est (Ind.) *is*; esse (Inf.) *be, being*  
 et *also, and* nātūrā *in shape*  
 vidē-re (Inf.) *see*; vidēri *be seen, seem*  
 vidē-tur (Ind.) *is seen, looks* evident  
 vocā-tur (Ind.) *is called* vocation  
 -mus (*we*) nōs *we, us* -tis, vōs *you*

<sup>1</sup> Nōs . . . **habitāre** (we read . . . about) *us living* or (that) *we live*, etc. The same statements as above are repeated here in another form.

## DĒ SŌLE

Lūmen magnum in caelō vidēmus. Id lūmen candidum est. Id sōl vocātur. Sōl nōn plānus vidētur. Is globōsus vidētur. Sōl nātūrā rotundus est. Is quoque globus vocātur. Sōl parvus vidētur. Magnus autem est. Sphaera magna est. Terra et sōl globī magnī sunt.

Dē quō tū legis, puer?

Ego dē sōle legō, magister.

§§ 4, 5 a-d, 21, 27

Quae dē eō legis?

- 10 Legō: nōs lūmen magnum in caelō vidēre; id lūmen candidum esse; id sōlem vocārī; sōlem globōsum vidērī; eum parvum vidērī; magnum autem esse; terram et sōlem globōs esse magnōs.

is (N. mas.) *he, it* eum (Ac. mas.) *him, it* id (N. Ac. neut.) *this, it*  
 lūmen Int. § 10 parvus *small* quid (N. Ac. sing.) *what?*  
 quoque *too, also* sunt (they) *are* quae (N. Ac.) *what things?*  
 ego I -ō (I) tū thou -s (thou) -t (he, it, she) -nt (they)

Former declarations are often made a part of new statements.

Latin has *only one* way. English has *several* ways.

Ea globus dicitur. § 125

*It is called a globe.*

Eam globum dīcī audiō.

*I hear it (be) called a globe;*

Int. § 5 a and c

*it being called a globe;*

*that-it is called a globe.*

Ego eam globum vocō.

*I call it a globe;*

(I it globe call-I)

*I am-calling it a globe;*

Int. § 5 b

Mē eam globum vocāre audit.

*He hears me call it a globe.*

Int. § 5 g

*hears-of my calling it a globe;*

*hears that-I call it a globe.*

## DE LŪNĀ

Aliud lūmen in caelō videō. Id lūmen quoque **magnum** est. Id nōn **candidum** est. **Suāve** est. Id lūmen **lūna** dicitur. Lūna nōn **plāna** vidētur. Ea **globōsa** vidētur. Lūna **rotunda** est. Ea quoque **globus** dicitur. Lūna **magna** est. Ea **globus** est **magnum**. Terra et lūna **magnae** sunt. Eae **globi magni** sunt.

Dē quō puer legit, discipulī? §§ 1 and 2

Is dē aliō lūmine legit, magister. § 74, 7

Quās rēs dē eō lūmine legit? 10

Legit: mē aliud lūmen in caelō vidēre; id nōn **candidum** esse; **suāve** esse; id lūmen **lūnam** dīci; eam **globōsam** vidēri; **rotundam** esse; eam quoque **globum** dīci; **lūnam globum** esse **magnum**; terram et **lūnam magnās** esse; eās **globōs** esse **magnōs**. 15

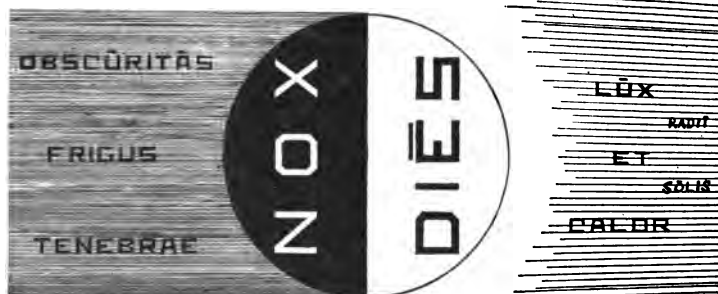
(a) The nouns, **globus** and **discipulī** (cf. **inimicus** § 75) are *masculine* like the English nouns, *Julius* and *alumnus* (pl. *alumni*). The nouns, **nātūra**, **sphaera**, **terra**, **lūna** (like *Julia*) are *feminine*. So also **caelum** (Nom. of **caelō**) is *neuter* like *stratum* (pl. *strata*).

(b) "Lūmen magnum" (p. 4). Int 5 d and § 82 e.

"Id lūmen," *this light* (line 2), must be *nominative*, since it is the subject of the *finite* verb, *est*; but "id lūmen" (line 10, p. 4) must be *accusative*, as it is the subject of the *infinitive*, *esse*.

NOTE.—The *accusative* of *neuters* is always like the *nominative*, while the *accusative singular* of *masculines* and *feminines* always differs from the *nominative*. §§ 78–79

(c) *Masculine* forms, **plānus** (*flat*), is (*this, he, it*), **rotundus**, **parvus**, are used referring to **sōl**, p. 4. **Sōl** must, therefore, be a *masculine* noun. So also, the *feminine* forms, **plāna** (*flat*), **ea** (*this, she, it*), **rotunda**, etc., prove **tellūs**, p. 3, to be *feminine* and the *neuter* forms, **aliud** (*other*), **magnum** (Nom.), etc., prove **lūmen** *neuter*.



## DĒ LŪCE ET TENEBRĪS

Lūx<sup>1</sup> diēs<sup>2</sup> dīcitur. Nox<sup>1</sup> tenebrae<sup>2</sup> vocātur. Tellūs nōn lūcida est. Ea<sup>1</sup> obscūra est. Lūcem<sup>3</sup> ab sōle accipit. Lūcem quoque ā lūnā accipit. Sōl interdiū terrae<sup>4</sup> lūmen dat. 5 Lūna noctū ei lūmen<sup>3</sup> dat. Is interdiū, ea noctū terram illūminat. Lūmen sōlis<sup>5</sup> candidum et ārdēns est. Lūmen lūnae suāve est.

Quam multis dē rēbus hodiē legimus?

Dē duābus rēbus, magister.

§§ 23, 30, 31

10 Quae<sup>2</sup> rēs sunt, discipulī?

§§ 6, 8, 38, 137

Rēs duae sunt lūx ac tenebrae.

Legimus: lūcem<sup>1</sup> diem<sup>2</sup> dicī; noctem tenebrās appellārī; tellūrem obscuram esse; eam<sup>1</sup> ab sōle et ā lūnā lūcem<sup>3</sup> accipere; eum interdiū, eam<sup>1</sup> noctū tellūrem illūmināre; 15 lūmen sōlis candidum atque ārdēns, lūnae suāve esse.

avert = turn (away) from

abstain = keep (away) from

diary = daily (record)

intervene = come between

lucid = having light

rebus = (shown) by things

ā, ab, abs (away) from absent

accipit gets, receives

dat gives hodiē this-day, to-day

diēs day interdiū during the day

lūx lūcem light nox noctem night

tenebrae shadows, darkness

<sup>1</sup> § 74, 1, 2.

<sup>2</sup> § 74, 3.

<sup>3</sup> § 74, 4.

<sup>4</sup> § 74, 6.

<sup>5</sup> Possession assumed.

DĒ LŪMINE TELLŪRIS

Terra lūmen nōn ēdit. Altera pars illūmināta, altera pars in tenebris est. Terra nōn lūcida est. Ea nātūrā obscūra est. Radiūs sōlis illūminātur. Sōl terrae lūmen dat. Is autem ab eā lūmen nōn accipit. Lūna quoque terrae lūmen dat. Sōl lūnaque eam illūminant. (See p. 2.)

DĒ LŪMINE LŪNAE

Lūna lūmen nōn ēdit. Altera pars lūnae clāra, altera in tenebris est. Ea quoque nātūrā obscūra, nōn lūcida est. Lūx eius aliēna est. Ea lūce aliēnā lūcet. Sōl eī lūcem 10 dat. Is eam accendit. Ab eā lūcem aliēnam accipimus.

Sōl terrae lūmen dat *the sun gives the earth light.* Int. § 5 f. Sōl must be a *nominative* form, since it is the *subject* of dat; terrae must be *dative* form, as it is the *indirect object* of dat; lūmen must be *accusative* form, as it is the *direct object* of dat.

Dē lūmine tellūris *about the earth's light.* Int. § 5 e. Lūmine must be an *ablative* form, as dē always takes the ablative.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
N. is he, it, this, that	ea this, she, it	id this, that, it
G. eius his, its, of it	eius her, of her	eius its, of that
D. eī (to) him, it, that	eī (to) her, it, that	eī it, (to) that
Ac. eum him, it, this	eam her, it, this	id it, this, that
V. —	—	—
Ab. eō him, by it, this	eā her, by it, that	eō by it, that
alien = of-another (land) § 109 c	accendit sets aglow or afire	
clarify = make clear, bright	altera the one — altera the other	
data = things given	ēdit gives out, sends forth	
apart = to one side, aside	lūcet shines	-que and § 21

## DĒ LŪMINE TERRAE LŪNAEQUE

Et terra et lūna nātūrā obscūrae sunt. Eae lūmen nōn ēdunt. Neque terra nec lūna lūcida est. Lūx eārum aliēna est. Sōl eīs lūmen dat. Hic eās illūminat. Sōl ab eīs nōn illūminātur. Lūna nātūrā atque obscūritāte terrae similis est. Lūna **terrae** lūmen suāve dat. Terra item **lūnae** lūmen suāve dat. Lūmen suāve inter sē dant.

Quam multīs dē rēbus hodiē legimus? § 74, 7, 9

Dē ūnā rē sōlā, magister; dē lūmine. §§ 37, 40, 23

10 Quās rēs dē eō legimus?

Legimus: et terram et lūnam obscūrās esse; eās neque lūmen ēdere neque nātūrā lūcidās esse; lūcem autem eārum esse aliēnam; sōlem eīs lūmen dare; hunc eās illūmināre neque ab eīs illūminārī; et lūnam **terrae** et terram **lūnae** 15 lūmen dare; eās suāve inter sē lūmen dare.

Make a list of all subjects of finite verbs. They are all nominative. Also subjects of infinitives. They are accusative. § 125

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
N. eī, iī <i>they, those</i>	cae <i>they, these</i>	ea <i>these (things)</i>
G. eōrum <i>their, of these</i>	eārum <i>their, etc.</i>	eōrum <i>their, etc.</i>
D. eīs (to) <i>them, those</i>	eīs (to) <i>them, etc.</i>	eīs (to) <i>them</i>
Ac. eōs <i>them, these</i>	eās <i>them, those</i>	ea <i>them</i>
Ab. eīs (by) <i>them, these</i>	eīs (by) <i>them, etc.</i>	eīs <i>with them</i>

neither = *not... either* §§ 65, 118b et both . . . et and § 66

none = *not one, not any* § 118 -que and neque and . . . not § 24

obscurity = *darkness* § 45 hic *he, it, this (I mention)* § 117

similarity = *likeness* § 91 inter sē *between themselves, to*

sole (owner) = *only (owner)* § 40 each other, to one another

unity = *oneness* § 120 quam multis? *how many?* § 64

## DE CANDORE SÖLIS

Söl **nüllā** ex **parte** obscūrus.<sup>1</sup> Is **nātūrā** candidus est. Söl ex **omnibus partibus** clārus ārdēnsque. Is lūmen in omnis partis ēdit. Lūmen eius nōn aliēnum est. Lūna eī lūmen nōn dat. Haec ab **eō** illūminātur, neque eum illūminat. Söl **lūce suā** lūcet. Lūna **lūce aliēnā** lūcet. § 109 c.

**Hesternō diē** quid lēgimus, discipulī?

Multum dē **lūmine** terrae lūnaeque lēgimus, magister.

Hodiē quid legimus?

Hodiē multum legimus dē **candōre** sölis.

10

Crās quid legēmus?

Crās dē **stellis** multum legēmus.

§§ 9, 10

Hodiē legimus: sōlem **nüllā** ex **parte** obscūrum; eum **nātūrā** candidum esse; sōlem ex **omnibus partibus** clārum ārdentemque; lūmen eius nōn aliēnum esse; lūnam eī lūmen 15 nōn dare; hanc ab **eō** illūminārī neque eum illūmināre; sōlem suā, lūnam **aliēnā** **lūce** lūcēre; sōlem et terrae et lūnae lūmen dare.

Select the predicate adjectives and predicate nouns in several of the preceding lessons while they are being read aloud in Latin.

Predicate adjectives and predicate nouns are nominative, if the subject is nominative; accusative if the subject is accusative.

procrastinate = <i>let go till to-morrow</i>	<b>ārdēns</b> burning, hot	§ 84
examine = <i>view from all sides</i>	<b>ē, ex</b> out of, (viewed) from	
multiloquent = <i>talking much</i>	§ 70 <b>haec</b> she, it, the latter	
omnibus = <i>for all, everybody</i>	§ 38 <b>hesternō</b> yester-	
annul = <i>make as nothing</i>	<b>multum</b> much, a great deal	
stellar = <i>of stars, starry</i>	<b>nüllā</b> no, not any <b>üllā</b> any	
suicide = <i>killing one's self</i>	§ 116 c <b>suā lūce</b> with his own light	

<sup>1</sup> The verb *est*, and other forms of *esse*, are occasionally omitted.



## DE STELLIS

Alia lūmina in caelō vidēmus. Ea lūmina solum noctū vidēmus. Ea crēbra sunt et innumerābilia. Pūcta parva videntur. Ea lūmina stellae vocantur. Stellae nōn plānae videntur. Eae globōsae videntur. Stellae nātūrā rotundae sunt. Eae quoque sphaerae dicuntur. Stellae et sīdera appellantur. Eae longē ā terrā absunt. Eae quoque magnae sunt. Parvae videntur, quod tantum spatium absunt.

Quās rēs vōs hesternō diē lēgistis, discipuli?

10 Herī multa dē sōlis candōre lēgimus, magister.

Quibus dē rēbus hodiē legitis?

Hodiē nōs dē stellis legimus.

§§ 58, 140 -se

Crās dē quō vōs legētis?

74, 11, 18

Crās dē stellārum candōre legēmus.

15 Hodiē legimus: nōs alia lūmina noctū vidēre; ea crēbra et innumerābilia esse; ea stellās vocārī; stellās et sīdera dīcī; eās longē ā terrā abesse; parvās vidērī, quod tantum spatium ā nōbīs absint; magnās autem permagnās esse.

As a review exercise, re-read several of the preceding lessons aloud in Latin and select and write down all indirect objects of verbs (they are all dative); direct objects (they are accusative).

absent = *being away*

§ 185

crēbra (n. pl.) *thick, close*

alibi = *elsewhere*

§ 117 a

herī = hesternō diē § 68 c

alias = *at another time*

longē *far, at a distance*

appeal = *to call (upon)*

multa (n.) *many (things)*

multiform = *of many shapes*

parva (n. pl.) *small, little*

innumerable = *countless* § 220, 7

per- *very* § 64

punctual = *on the dot*

quod *because, that, in that*

sidereal = *of the stars*

§ 78 b

sīdera (n. pl.) *stars* § 78 b

solitary = *being alone*

§ 66

spatium *space, distance*

spacious = *roomy*

§ 74, 17

tantum *so great, so large*

## DĒ CANDŌRE SĪDERUM

Sīdera nullā ex parte obscūra sunt. Ea nātūrā **candida atque ārdentia**. Ex omnibus partibus **clāra** sunt. Sīdera lūmen in omnīs partīs radiant. Lūna sīderibus lūmen nōn dat. Ab sōle lūmen nōn accipiunt. Neque sōl neque lūna sīdera illūminat. Nam lūce suā lūcent. Sōl enim **sīdus** est. Sīdera **aliī sōlēs** sunt. Sōl propius adest. Sīdera longius absunt. Terra lūnaque lūcem ab sīderibus accipiunt. Eae lūmine aliēnō illūmantur. Sōl et alia sīdera lūce suā lūcent. Lūx enim eōrum nōn **aliēna** est. 10

Dē quō legit Iūlia, discipulī? § 109 c

Ea dē candōre sīderum legit, magister. § 74, 11

Quae dē eōrum candōre legit?

Ea legit: sīdera nullā ex parte **obscura** esse; ea nātūrā **candida atque ārdentia**; ex omnibus partibus esse **clāra**; 15 sīdera lūmen in omnīs partīs radiāre; lūnam sīderibus lūmen nōn dare; neque ea ab sōle lūmen accipere; neque sōlem nec lūnam sīdera illūmināre; et terram et lūnam lūcem ā sīderibus accipere; ea autem **sōlēs** esse et lūce suā lūcere; itemque sōlem **sīdus** esse; eum propius adesse; ea longius 20 abesse; terram lūnamque lūmine aliēnō illūminārī.

Select all nouns denoting the means of an action or used with the prepositions, **ā, ab, dē, ē, ex**. They are all ablative.

**acceptance** = *act of receiving*  
**alien** = *of another (land)* 109 c

**partial** = *favoring one side*  
**radiate** = *send out rays*

**ea** (n.) *they, them*. See p. 8  
**longius** *too far, farther* § 69  
**nam for enim** (*for*) *indeed* § 66  
**propius** *rather near, nearer*

**sīdus** (n. sing.) *a star, a sun*  
**sīder-um** *of the stars* § 78 b  
**-t-ur** *he, she, it (acted upon)*  
**-nt-ur** *they (acted upon)* § 180

## DE DIĒ AC NOCTE

Lūx diēs vocātur. Obscūrītās nox appellātur. **Māne** aurōra rubēscit. Stellae ēvānēscunt. Lūcēscit. Diēs fit. Sōl oritur. Illam partem caeli Orientem appellāmus. Diēs  
 5 ad labōrem datur. Sōl **tōtō diē** in caelō lūcet. **Mediō diē** sōl altus in caelō vidētur. Illam partem caeli Meridiem vocāmus. Medius diēs et meridiēs dicitur. **Multō diē** advesperāscit. Sōl occidit. Illam partem caeli Occidentem dicimus. Post occāsum sōlis obscūrēscit. Stellae iterum  
 10 lūcēscunt. Nox fit. Nox ad quiētem datur. **Vesperī** lūna plēna ab oriente oritur. Haec **tōtā nocte** in caelō lūcet. **Mediā nocte** alta in caelō vidētur. **Māne** ab occidente occidit. Stellae quoque ab oriente orīrī videntur. Hae aut ab occidente cadunt, aut **ortū** sōlis ēvānēscunt.

Select all nouns used to denote time *at which, in which, or during which*. They are all ablative, except **vesperī** (Loc.).

Select all nouns used with the prepositions, **ā**, **ab**, and **dē**. They are all ablative. Select all nouns used with the prepositions, **ad**, **post**, and **circum**. They are all accusative.

decadent = *falling down* § 219

evanescent = *growing dim*

nocturnal = *nightly*

occasional = *falling at times*

occidental = *western* § 219, 3

oriental = *eastern* § 84

ad (w. Ac.) *toward, to, for*

aurōra *eastern sky, dawn*

fi-t *become-s, is made or done*

māne *in the morning, early*

meridiēs *midday, south, noon*

postpone = *leave till afterward*

plenty = *fulness*

convalesce = *get well, improve*

reiterate = *go over again*

rubescent = *growing red*

vespers = *evening services* § 76

multō diē *late in the day*

occidi-t *settle-s, set-s* § 180

oriri *raise-self, rise* §§ 6, 123

-tās, -tātem -ty, -ness §§ 37-9

-sce- *become, grow, get* § 223

Quās rēs vōs in nātūrā vidētis? Multās rēs vidēmus.

Quae dē nātūrā discitis? Multa discimus, magister.

Nam lūcem diem vocārī audīmus. Obscūrītātem noctem appellārī intellegimus. Māne enim aurōram rubēscere, stellās ēvānēscere, lūcēscere, diem fierī, sōlem orīrī vidēmus. 5 Illam partem caeli Orientem dicī audīmus. Sōlem tōtō diē in caelō lūcēre vidēmus. Mediō diē eum altum in caelō esse cernimus. Illam partem caeli merīdiem appellārī audīmus. Medium quoque diem merīdiem dicī intellegimus. Multō diē advesperāscere nōvimus. Sōlem occidere vidēmus. 10 Illam partem Occidentem sive sōlis occāsum dicī audīmus. Post sōlis occāsum obscūrēscere, stellās iterum lūcēscere, noctem fierī vidēmus. Discimus diem ad labōrem, noctem autem ad quiētem darī. Nōbīs vidētur lūnam et stellās ab oriente orīrī, ab occidente cadere. Discimus ita nōn fierī; 15 terram autem movērī et circum axem suum volvī.

Make a list of all nouns used as predicate of the subject or as predicate of the object. See § 74, 3, 5; Int. 5 b

	Sōlem	orīrī	vidēmus.
<i>We see</i>	<i>the sun</i>	<i>rise.</i>	Int. § 5 g
<i>We see</i>	<i>the sun</i>	<i>[be] rising.</i>	§ 142
<i>We observe</i>	<i>(that) the sun</i>	<i>rises.</i>	
		Lūcēscere	nōvimus.
<i>We know</i>	<i>(it)</i>	<i>to get light.</i>	
<i>We have learned</i>	<i>(that 'it)</i>	<i>gets light.</i>	
<b>auditor</b> = <i>hearer, listener</i>	<b>axis, axem</b> <i>axis, axle</i>		
<b>discern</b> = <i>see clearly, distinguish</i>	<b>cerni-mus</b> <i>we see, notice</i>		
<b>disciple</b> = <i>learner, follower</i>	<b>disci-mus</b> <i>we learn</i>		
<b>intelligent</b> = <i>understanding</i>	<b>fieri</b> <i>be done, happen</i> § 215		
<b>noble</b> = <i>deserving to be known</i>	<b>movērī</b> <i>move-self</i> §§ 180-2		



### DĒ SEPTENTRIONIBUS

Nocte signum magnum in caelō vidēmus. Signum illud ex stellis septem cōstat. Id Septentriō vocātur. Septentriō et Arctos dicitur. Duās eius signī stellās ‘indicēs’ appellāmus, quod Polum indicant. Stella illa et Polāris vocātur. Ūnus ex stellis polus immōbilis manēre vidētur. Cēterae enim stellae circum polum volvi videntur. Nōs illam partem caeli Septentriōnem appellāmus. Duo sunt septentriōnēs, quōrum alter Septentriō maior, alter minor 10 dicitur. Stella Polāris septentriōnis minōris est.

**Signum illud** means that (well-known) figure or constellation; **illud signum** means simply that figure or constellation (yonder).

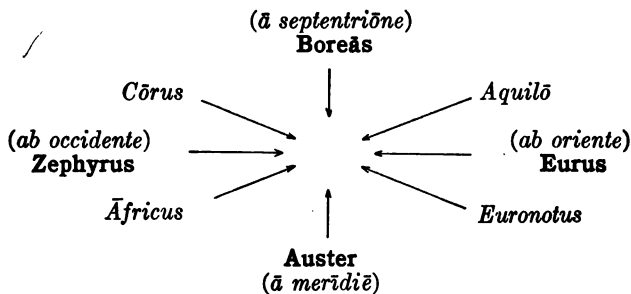
**Septentriō** [minor], *Smaller Bear* or *Little Dipper*, is nominative and has no ending; -ō is a part of the stem; Acc. **septentriōnem**; stem or base **septentriōn-**. See § 42, 2.

**Septentriōnis** — est is of or belongs to the “*Smaller Dipper*.”

<b>alternate</b> = <i>the one or the other</i>	<b>cōsta-t</b> consist-s, is made
<b>arctic</b> = <i>under the (Great) Bear</i>	<b>maior</b> larger <b>minor</b> smaller
<b>et cetera</b> = <i>and all the rest</i>	<b>quōrum</b> of which, and-of-them
<b>index finger</b> = <i>pointer finger</i> § 46	<b>Septentriō</b> <i>seven-ox-team</i>
<b>permanent</b> = <i>remaining fixed</i>	<b>ūnus</b> only (one), alone § 118 b
<b>September</b> = <i>seventh (month)</i>	<b>volvi</b> turn-self, revolve § 182
<b>constellation</b> = <i>group of stars</i>	<b>polus</b> <i>pole (-star), sky (above)</i>

## DE VENTIS

Quattuor partēs vel regiōnēs caeli sunt Septentriōnēs, Meridiēs, Oriēs, Occidēs. Quattuor item ventī principēs sunt Boreās, Auster, Eurus, Zephyrus. Hōrum primus, Boreās, ab septentriōnibus oritur. Is ita semper frigidus est. Boreās nūbīs fugat, caelum serēnat, frīgus facit. Alter est Auster, quī et Notus vocātur. Hic ventus ā meridiē oritur. Tepidus igitur madēnsque est. Saepe caelum nūbibus obscūrat et **pluviam** fert. Tertius, quī Eurus nōminātur, ab oriente venit. **Quārtum** Zephyrum nōmināmus. 10 Hic ventus ab occidente spirat. Neque madēns nec frigidus, semper nōbis grātus est. Zephyrus saepe nūbīs candidās fert.



aurora borealis = northern dawn	fer-t bring-s fuga-t rout-s
Australia = southland	h-ōrum of-these, of-them § 117 b
fact = a thing made, done, caused	igitur therefore item § 66 a
frigid = cooling, chilling	madēns damp nōbīs (to) us
nominate = mention the name of	nūbēs cloud pluvia rain § 79
tepid = lukewarm	quī which, that, who, as § 115
convene = come together § 220, 4	regiō, regiōnem part, quarter
ventilate = let in draft of air	saepe often semper always
Zephyr = west wind § 26	serēna-t clear-s vel or

## DE TELLŪRE IPSĀ

Multa adhūc lēgimus dē sōle, dē lūnā, dē stellis; multa quoque dē tellūre cum illis comparātā. Nunc autem plūra dē ipsā tellūre lēctūrī sumus. Dē interiōre tellūre pauca nōta sunt. Nēmō penitus in terram vidit aut inspexit. Nēmō in intima terrae penetrāvit aut ea nōvit. Solum terrae alibi molle alibi firmum. Interior terra firma ac solida est. Quō penitius in eam penetrātur, eō firmior ac solidior fit.

## Useful Observations

(a) **Pauca** (line 4) must be plural, as it is the subject of **sunt**. Plurals ending in **-a** are neuter.

(b) **Multa** (direct obj. of **lēgimus** in line 2) must be accusative. Native Latin (not Greek) accusatives in **-a** are *neuter* and *plural*.

(c) Prepositions govern *either* the *Accusative* or the *Ablative*. The word **intima** must be accusative, for there is no such ablative ending as **-a**. Therefore **intima** must be a *plural* form and mean *inmost* (*things* or *parts*) since it must also be *neuter*.

**comparable** = *to be compared*

**firmness** = *solidity, hardness*

**inspect** = *look-into*      § 220, 7

**intimate** = *knowing the inmost*

**mollify** = *make soft, soften*

**noted** = *well known, marked*

**alibi** in one place . . . **alibi** in another (place)      § 117

**adhūc** up to this (point) so far

**inspexit** has looked into

**-ior, -ius -er, more, rather, too**

**lēctūrī** going to read      **sumus** are

**multa** many (things)      **pauca** few

**nēmō** no one      **nunc** now

**nōvit** has learned, knows

**plūra** more (things)      § 150

**penitus** deep (into)

**penitius** deeper, farther (into)

**quō** the      **eō** the (Int. 5 j)

**solum** ground      **vidit** has seen

## DE TERRA ET AQUA

Tellūris trīs partīs aqua cingit. Reliqua pars ex aquā ēdita est. Haec terra firma dicitur. Terra et aqua omnibus rēbus **inter sē** differunt. Haec liquida et fluēns, illa firma ac solida. Haec nātūrā ipsā ubique aequa est. Illa alibi aequa ac plāna, alibi aspera atque infōrmis. Haec ubique **ad tellūris rotunditātem** accommodāta atque cōnfōrmis aequor aequitāte dicitur. Illa alibi plānitiēs, campī immēnsī, alibi collēs, vallēs et montēs asperī.

Select from the reading lesson above :

1. Words that are connected by conjunctions meaning *and*:  
(a) Five pairs of adjectives; (b) Three groups of nouns.
2. Six nouns with adjectives. Which show gender? (p. 5, obs.; §§ 54, 55 f).
3. Three predicate nouns (§ 74, 3); six predicate adjectives.

Select the following from the reading lesson (p. 16) :

- |                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Neuter plurals.                | 4. Feminine adjectives.        |
| 2. Neuter singulars (p. 5, obs.). | 5. (pp. 7, 11) Ablative cases. |
| 3. Feminine nouns (p. 5, obs. c). | 6. Accusative cases.           |

<b>accommodated</b> = <i>adjusted, fitted</i>	<b>fluent</b> = <i>flowing, running</i>
<b>aquatic</b> = <i>fond of water</i>	<b>immense</b> = <i>unmeasured</i>
<b>asperity</b> = <i>ruggedness</i>	<b>informal</b> = <i>not of regular form</i>
<b>conforming</b> = <i>adapting-self</i>	<b>relic</b> = <i>remaining, the rest (of)</i>

<b>aequor</b> <i>even expanse, sea (level)</i>	<b>illa</b> <i>that, former</i> <b>haec</b> <i>latter</i>
<b>campus</b> <i>plain, level surface</i>	<b>inter sē</b> <i>from each other</i> § 74, 9
<b>coll-ēs</b> <i>hill-s</i> <b>ex</b> <i>up-out-of</i>	<b>ubi-</b> <i>-where</i> <b>-que</b> <i>every-</i> § 119



## DE AERE ET AETHERE

Āēr fluēns terram et aequor ex omnibus partibus cingit atque amplectitur. Āēr tenuis ac fluidus. Āerī tamen pondus est. **Pondere** suō terram et aequor petit, atque terram et aequor, nōs et omnia<sup>1</sup> premit. Īnferior āēr<sup>3</sup> crassus ac dēnsus, superior rārus et magis tenuis. Quō altius ex aequore itur, eō magis āēr rārēscit et tenuis fit. Quō magis ad aequor<sup>2</sup> dēscenditur eō dēnsior ac magis crassus fit. Quantam in altitūdinem āēr ē terrā patēscat, 10 nōtum nōn est. Restat ultimus, omnia cingēns, Aethēr. Hic rārissimus est ac tenuissimus.<sup>3</sup> Immēnsus aethēr<sup>3</sup> āerem et omnia<sup>1</sup> amplectitur. § 152

Āerī pondus est      *There is weight to air.*      §§ 51, 105  
(to-air weight belongs) *Air has weight.*      See Int. § 5 e  
Omnia cingēns, embracing (surrounding) everything.

Quō altius ex aequore itur, eō rārīor fit. § 74, 19  
*The higher up-from sea-level you-go, the rarer it becomes.*

fluent = flowing      § 97      ponderous = weighty      §§ 41, 42  
omnipotent = all-powerful      attenuate = make-thin  
appetite = a seeking-for      § 220      ultimatum = last offer

amplecti-tur surround-s      patēscat extends, spreads out  
crassus thick, dense      premi-t press-es, weighs down  
ē, ex up from      inferior lower      re-sta-t stand-s back, remain-s  
-ior, -ius -er      magis more      tamen yet, nevertheless

<sup>1</sup> Study the following examples carefully.

*Castra capī videt he sees the camp (be) taken.*

§ 40 b

*Imperāta faciunt they do the (things that are) commanded.*

*Propter vulnera militum because of the soldiers' wounds.*

NOTE. — If a native Latin (not Greek) noun ending in -a is used as the subject of an infinitive, as the object of a verb or preposition, it is instantly known to be neuter and plural. § 82 d

<sup>2</sup> How may the case of aequor be known?

<sup>3</sup> The gender of āēr and aethēr?

## DE POLIS CAELI AC TELLURIS

Stella Polāris ūnō in locō fixa vidētur. Regiōnem illam polum **caeli** dicimus. Cēterae stellae circum eam volvi videntur, quod tellūs circum axem suum volvitur. Tellūs volvitur ab occidente orientem versus. Stellae igitur ab oriente ad occidentem volvi videntur. Polum **tellūris** vocāmus eam partem quae sub stellā polārī posita est. Polus ipse terminus est **axis terrae**. Terminī **axis** sunt duo. Duo igitur sunt poli **tellūris**, ē quibus alter Polus Septentrionālis, alter Austrālis appellātur. Eae regiōnēs semper frigidae sunt. Omnia ibi frigore rigent. Tōtō annō nix alta et glaciēs humi iacent.

Select the following from the readings, pp. 14, 18, 19.

1. Ablatives (w. prep.).      2. Ablatives (without prep.).
3. Accusatives (w. prep.).      4. Accusatives (without prep.).
5. Direct objects.      6. Predicates nominative.
7. Predicates accusative attached to direct objects.
8. All genitives.      9. All pronouns.      10. All adverbs.
11. Adjectives (comp.).      12. Adjectives (superl.).
13. Prepositions (w. Acc.).      14. Prep. (w. Abl.).
15. Verbs and pronouns understood (pp. 9, 11, 18).

**annual** = *yearly, of a year*  
**biennially** = *every two years*  
**glacier** = *stream of ice*  
**exhume** = *unearth*      § 220, 6  
**adjacent** = *that lie near*  
**(Sierra) Nevada** = *snow-capped*  
**rigidity** = *stiffness*  
**postpositive** = *placed after*  
**subscribe** = *write (name) under*  
**exterminate** = *put an end to*

**humi** (Loc.) = *on the ground* § 76  
**ibi** = *in it, there, among them*  
**igitur** = *therefore, then*  
**ipse** (emphatic) = *himself, itself*  
**nix, nive** = *snow*      § 78  
**omn-ia** = *all (things), every-thing*  
**quae, quem, quibus** = *which, that*  
**rigent** = *are rigid, stiff, frozen*  
**posit-a** = *situated, placed, put*  
**versus, versum** = *-ward, toward*

## DE IV. ANNĪ TEMPORIBUS

Aliās sōl ad septentriōnem scandit. Tum altus in caelō vidētur. Plūs lūcis atque calōris nōbīs ministrat. Hoc diēs longōs facit. Noctis item brevis facit. Tum terra  
 5 calēscit. Tempestās calida fit. Aliās sōl ad austrum dēscendit. Nōbīs minus calōris lūcisque ministrat. Haec rēs brevis diēs, noctis longās facit. Terra frigēscit. Tempestās frīgida fit. Quā dē causā quattuor annī tempora sunt. Eōrum ūnum tempus est Vēr. Aliud tempus Aestās  
 10 vocātur. Tertium Autumnus, quārtum Hiems dicitur. § 150

## DE VĒRE

Vēre sōl in caelō scandit. Singulī diēs longiōrēs fiunt. Singulae noctēs breviōrēs fiunt. Sōl vērīs calēscit. Nix  
 hiemis liquēscit. Auster pluviā fert. Herba ē terrā  
 15 nāscitur. Nūdī agrī iterum viridēs fiunt. Arborēs folia prōdūcunt. Avēs ex austrō revertuntur. Silvae cantū sonant. Flōrēs aperiuntur. Iuvat in agrōs silvāsque exīre. Iuvat loca hieme dēserta vidēre. Bovēs iterum per collis et vallis herbā pāscuntur. Virī et puerī cum equīs exeunt.  
 20 In agrīs labōrant. Agrōs arant. Sēmina et arborēs serunt. Arborēs serit diligēns agricola, quārum adspiciet fructum ipse numquam. Serit arborēs, quae alterī saeculō prōsint. § 140

arable (land) = *tillable* (land)aviator = *birdman*bovine = *of cows* §§ 80, 219, 2calorie = *measure of heat*ad-spici-e-t *shall-look-upon*iuvat *it helps, is pleasant*nude = *bare* pastor = *feeder*sonorous = *loud, sounding*tempest = *(rough) weather* § 78verdure = *green, green things*prōsint *may be useful* § 220, 12seru-nt *they sow or plant*

## DĒ AESTĀTE

Aestāte sōl altus in caelō est. Sōl **aestātis** calidus. Nōs calōre suō ūrit. Terra calida est. Caelum serēnum atque caeruleum. Diēs longissimī, noctēs brevissimae sunt. Primā aestāte rūra flōrea sunt. Omnia flōrent. Apēs per 5 agrōs vagantur. Mel dulce ē flōribus legunt. Cōpiam **mellis** sibi faciunt atque in hiemem servant. Cōpia **pābuli** esse incipit. Frūctūs mātūrēscere incipiunt. Hominēs pābulum metere incipiunt. Cōpiam **pābuli** equis et bōbus cōnficiunt atque in hiemem servant. Frūctūs mātūrōs legere 10 incipiunt. Cōpiam **frūctuum** sibi cōnficiunt atque in hiemem servant. Mediā aestāte frūmenta mātūrēscunt. Agrīs color est aureus. Frūmentum mātūrum metitur. Cōpia **frūmenti** cōnficitur atque in reliquum annum servātur. Extrēmā aestāte omnia calōre ūruntur. Agrī āridī sunt. Flōrēs 15 ārēscunt. Herba ārēscit. Bovēs inopiā **aquae** labōrant. Omnia siti labōrant. Omnia umbrās **arborū** et frigus petunt.

Make a list of the genitives (pp. 9–11, 14, 20–1; cf. p. 7, obs.).

apiary = <i>bee farm</i>	arid = <i>dried</i>	incipient = <i>beginning</i>	§ 130
auri-ferous = <i>gold-bearing</i>		pervade = <i>go through</i>	§ 220, 10
copiously = <i>with a good supply</i>		reserve = <i>keep back, stow away,</i>	
extremity = <i>last part, end</i>	§ 92	<i>store up, save up</i>	§ 220, 13
flourish = <i>bloom, blossom</i>		rural = <i>of the (country), fields</i>	
fructiferous = <i>fruit-bearing</i>		umbrella = <i>little shade</i>	
hibernate = <i>sleep over winter</i>		combustible = <i>easily burned</i>	
aureus <i>golden, of gold</i>	§ 109 c	meti-tur <i>is reaped</i>	§ 136
caeruleum <i>blue, azure</i>		pābulum <i>fodder</i>	
dulce <i>sweet, pleasant</i>		siti <i>on account of thirst</i>	§ 74, 15
labōra-nt <i>suffer, toil</i>	§ 136	ūri-t <i>burn-s, scorch-es</i>	§ 220, 4

## DE AUTUMNŌ

Autumnō sōl paulātim ad austrum dēscendit. Singuli diēs **breviōrēs** fiunt. Singulae item noctēs **longiōrēs** sunt. Tempestās **frigidior** esse incipit. Primō autumnō arborēs 5 fructibus curvant. Zephyrus lēniter spirat. Sōl autumnī iam nōn ūrit. Autumnus omnibus **grātus** est.

Frigus autem in diēs singulōs crēscit. Folia arborum paulātim variōs trahunt colōrēs. Terra frigēscit. Iam agrī māne pruīnā albēscere incipiunt. Herba paulātim 10 moritur. Tum dēmum folia ārēscunt, moriuntur, cadunt. Hinc atque hinc pinūs **nigrae** stant. Reliquae arborēs **nūdae** foliis sunt. Avēs in austrum migrant. Hominēs mātūrant ultimōs fructūs legere, bovēs ex agris cōgere, omnia in hiemein parāre. § 127

15 Extrēmō autumnō caelum nūbibus obscurēscit. Ventus saevit atque arboribus sonat. Madēns auster gelidum imbrem fert. Omnēs hominēs tēctum petunt et circum focum suum congregantur. § 182

Select from the readings (pp. 20-23). (See obs., pp. 5, 16, 18.)

1. Neuters in **-um** (Nom.), **-a** (Acc.), or **-a** (pl.).
2. Nouns shown by adjectives to be feminine. § 55 f.
3. Masculine and feminine nouns having the same ending.
4. Ablative of (a) time, (b) means, (c) with preposition.

decadent = *falling down* § 220, 5  
 crescent (moon) = *growing* —  
 emigrate = *move out* § 220, 6  
 respiration = *breathing*  
 attract = *draw to-self, take on*  
 detecting = *uncovering*

dēmum *finally* focum *hearth*  
 gelidum *icy, cold, chilly*  
 imbrem *rain* lēn-iter *soft-ly*  
 mātūra-nt *hasten* nigrae *dark*  
 paulātim *by degrees* pinūs *pinetrees*  
 saevi-t *rave-s* stant *stand (out)*

## DE HIEME

Hieme **sōl** humilis ab austrō vidētur. Meridiē vix calēscit. Brevisimī **diēs**, **noctēs** longissimae sunt. Nam ad occāsum properat **sōl hibernus**; **nox hiberna** morātur ac tardātur. In diēs frīgēscit. Terra frīgore et pruīnā rigēscit. **Tem-**<sup>5</sup>  
**pestās** perfrīgida fit.

Primā hieme nix in altis montibus esse incipit. Cōpia nivis in diēs crēscit. **Omnia loca superiōra** paulātim nive albēscunt. **Flūmina et lacūs** rigent gelū. Post paulō **inferiōra** quoque loca nive alba sunt. **Caelum** iam serēnum<sup>10</sup> iam nūbibus obscurum est.

Tum dēnm̄ **summa hiems** in terram ruit. **Ventī** per terrās turbine flant. **Omnia** furōre tempestātis miscentur. **Nox ātra** terrae impendet. **Hiems** omnia nive cingit. Multōs diēs **tempestās** furit. Posteā **fragor** ventōrum cadit.<sup>15</sup> **Boreās** nūbīs fugat atque caelum serēnat. **Omnia** silent. Tum **sōl, lūna et lūcida sīdera** omnis agrōs silvāsque nive candidās dēspiciunt.

Select from the readings, pp. 20-23, nouns and adjectives whose declension is known by endings, viz.: §§ 52, 55 c

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. -a (sing.), -ās (Ac.), -ae, -ā, or -ārum      | First Declension.  |
| 2. -um (N.), -ī (G.), -ō (D. Ab.), -ī (pl.), -ōs | Second Declension. |
| 3. -e (Ac.), -ī (Ab.), -īs (Ac.), or -is         | Third Declension.  |
| 4. -ū, -ūs (G.), -ūs (pl.), -uum (G.)            | Fourth Declension. |

<b>album</b> = <i>white</i> (paged book)	<b>ātra</b> <i>black</i>	<b>in diēs</b> <i>daily</i>
<b>hibernate</b> = <i>sleep during winter</i>	<b>impendet</b> <i>over-hangs, hovers over</i>	
<b>promiscuous</b> = <i>mixed up</i>	<b>ruī-t</b> <i>fall-s, burst-s upon</i>	§ 136 e
<b>summit</b> = <i>highest point</i>	<b>sile-nt</b> <i>are still, are silent</i>	
<b>tardiness</b> = <i>slowness</i>	§ 182	<b>turbine</b> <i>in a whirl</i> <b>vix</b> <i>hardly</i>

## LIFE IN ANCIENT ITALY

Let us take a peep into Central Italy of two thousand years ago. What shall we see in the land of those neighbors of ours, who lived out their lives under that famous old "Republic," which had gathered up and was still gathering the fruits of the many civilizations that had gone before, and whose lofty aims and all-embracing power were already showing signs of decline when Christ was born? Where shall we look first? (p. xviii, 7.)

In Ītaliā sumus. Longē ā Rōmā absumus. Nam nōbīs est in animō circum Arpīnum paululum errāre. Arpīnum oppidum est Latī. Oppidānī Latīnī sunt et latīnē loquuntur.  
 5 Sed cīvēs Rōmānī dicuntur, proptereā quod sub imperiō Rōmānō versantur. Iam diū civitāte dōnātī sunt.

Apud Arpīnum stāmus. Ibi multōs ire et venīre vidēmus. Aliī ex oppidō, aliī ex agrīs veniunt. Hī Arpīnum eunt; illī Arpīnō exeunt. Aliī oppidānī, aliī agricolae sunt.  
 10 Servi cum puerīs veniunt. Hī equīs, illī pedibus eunt. Puerōs legimus; nam eōs maximē amāmus. Duōs ē multis eligimus. Ii nōn longē ab nōbīs absunt; nam eōs latīnē loquī audīmus. §§ 185, 212

Select (pp. 10, 24-5) a. Neuters; b. Genitives; c. Ablatives.

Nōbīs es-t in animō errāre we have in mind to stray;  
 (to-us is-it in mind to-wander) we intend to wander.

auditor = hearer § 207 versatile = able to turn the  
 erratic = wandering hands to many things, lively

dōnātī sunt (are having-been- imperiō government, rule § 77 b  
 presented) have been or were Latī of Latium Latīnī Latins  
 presented § 101 latīnē in (the) Latin (manner)

iam now iam diū long since oppidānī town's people

Hī puerī amīcī sunt. Alterum Theodōrum, alterum Aemilium appellāmus. Theodōrus male loquitur. Aemilius bene et latīnē loquitur. Nam hic Rōmānus, ille Graecus est. Aemilius filius est cīvis Rōmānī quī nōn longē ab oppidō in fundō habitat. Theodōrus filius est magistrī quī 5 Arpinī habitat.

Saepe māne puerōs ā fundō venīre et Arpinum īre vidēmus. Saepe vesperī eōs ex oppidō in fundum proficisci vidēmus. Equō semper eunt. Aliās et Theodōrus et Aemilius ex oppidō exīre videntur et posterō diē in oppidum 10 revertī; aliās Aemilius sōlus vesperī domum redit sōlusque māne in oppidum venīt.

Quid agunt? Discipulī sunt. In lūdum cotīdiē eunt. Pater Theodōrī lūdī magister est. Is Appolonius appellātur. Aemilius autem filius est Paulī. Paulus appellātur Lūcius 15 Aemilius Paulus. Plērique enim Rōmānī tribus nōminibus vocantur. Plērisque Graecis ūnum tantum nōmen. § 105

Diē (p. 12) shows diēs to be of the *fifth* declension.

Select *two forms each* of nouns to show their declension.

-em and -e (pp. 3, 11, 13); and	-is and -ēs (pp. 11, 20, 23) Third
-em and -ē (p. 13); and	-ēs and -ē or -ēbus (p. 8) Fifth
-is and -ī, -ōs (pp. 21, 24-5)	-is and -a, -ī (pp. 20, 22) Second
-is and -ae (pp. 8, 10) First	-ibus and -ūs (p. 22) Fourth
-ibus and -a (p. 11); and	-ēs and -ibus (pp. 21-2) Third

benevolent = *wishing well* § 69

elude = *play out of reach of*

malcontent = *ill satisfied*

cotīdiē *every day, daily*

fundus *river bottom, farm, plan-*  
*tation, estate*

paternal = *fatherly, father's*

solitary = *alone, lonely*

revert = *turn back* § 220, 13

in lūdum *to school* § 74, 10, 12

posterō diē *on the following day*

red-i-t *go-es back* § 220, 13



## IN LŪDŌ LITTERÁRIO

Lūdus Arpinī est. Summī eius regiōnis virī filiōs eō mittunt. Ibi puerī legunt, scribunt, numeris operam dant. Ibi et Graeca et Latīna discunt. Romānī enim hōc tempore  
 5 maximam litteris Graecis operam dant. Philosophōs Graecōs sequuntur. (Omnēs adhūc maximī poētae, ōrātōrēs, philosophī Graecī sunt.) Nūllus adhūc Rōmānus aut summus poēta aut philosophus est. Itaque Rōmānī et graecē et latīnē loquuntur. Magistrīs Graecis ūtuntur. Primō domī  
 10 his studiis operam dant. Postea Rōmam, Athēnās, Rhodum eius rei causā proficiscuntur.

Appoloniū pūrē et graecē loquitur. (Hic nōn est Appoloniū ille, quī multōs annōs Rhodī magister artis dicendī erat. Ille Appoloniū Molō appellātus est. Noster Appoloniū Sardibus in Ītaliā vēnit.) Theodōrus latīnē loquī discit. Cēterī discipuli bene et latīnē loquuntur. Aemiliū bene et graecē loquī vult. Et eius rei causā sociū sibi Theodōrum asciscit.

Quid hodiē agunt? Nōs cum pueris in lūdum ingredimur.  
 20 Hī primō numeris operam dant. Eōs numerāre audimus. Ūnā cum eis numerāmus. Nam nōbīs quoque discendī sunt numerī Latīnī. Ita eōs discere cupimus. Cum Aemiliō et Theodōrō numerōs et mēnsūrās discimus atque eōdem tempore cum nostris numeris et mēnsūris comparāmus. § 104

consequent = *following up*

cupidity = *eagerness, desire*

discipline = *learning, training*

in-gredients = *things going in*

a-scisci-t take-s, accept-s § 220

eō to it § 119 d ita so, therefore

mensuration = *measuring*

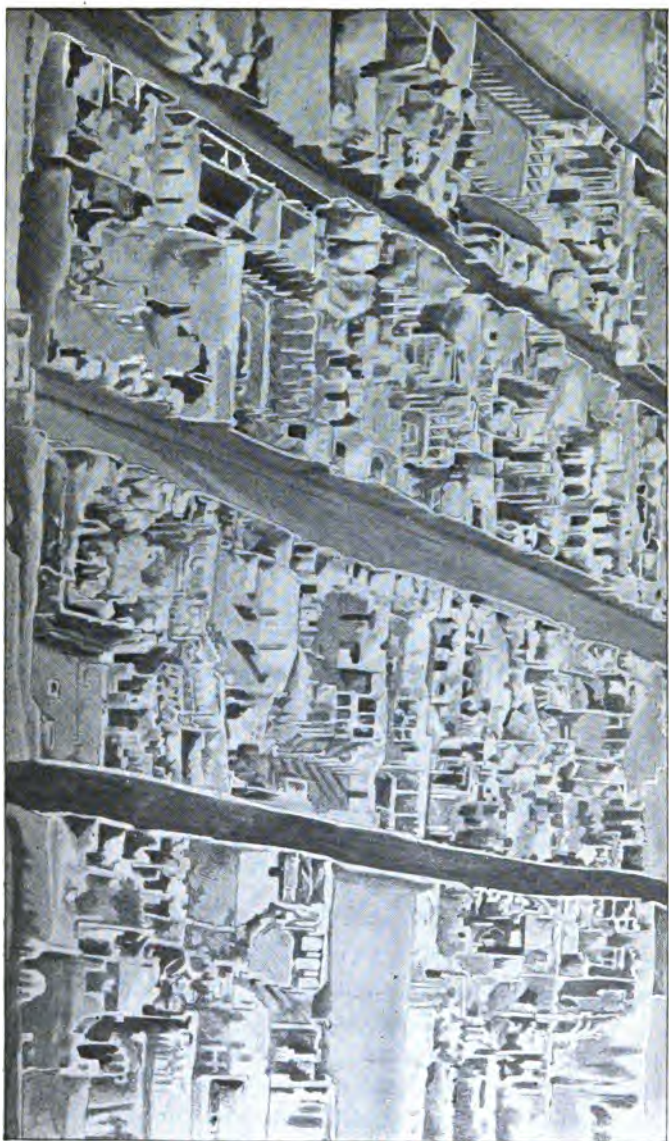
enumerate = *count out* § 220, 6

society = *companionship*

utilize = *make use of, employ*

operam dant *pay heed, study*

summī *prominent, great* § 92



POMPEII AS SEEN FROM AN AÉROPLANE

## DE NUMERIS

Numerōrum quīnque genera sunt. Ūnum genus est eōrum quī ipsūm numerum indicant. Huius generis sunt ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex et cētera. Hi indicant dē quot numerō rēbus agātur. Numerī *cardinālēs* appellantur. Paucī ex hīs dēclīnantur; plērique semper idem scribuntur.

Alterum genus est eōrum quibus ōrdō indicātur. Huius generis sunt primus, alter, tertius, quārtus, quintus, sextus, 10 et cētera. Hīs indicātur nōn vērū numerus sed dē quōtā ōrdīne rē agātur. Hi omnēs dēclīnantur primā et secundā dēclīnātiōne. Numerī *ordinālēs* dicuntur, quod tantum ōrdīnem nōtant.

Tertium genus est eōrum quī singulis totidem numerō 15 rēs attribuunt. Huius generis sunt singulī, bīnī, ternī, quaternī, quīnī, sēnī, et cētera. Hīs indicātur quōtēnae rēs singulis tribuantur. Omnēs primae et secundae dēclīnātiōnis sunt, plērumque plūrālēs. Hi numerī *distribuentēs* appellantur.

**Quārtum genus** (Nom.) is neuter. See note, p. 5, and §§ 42, 54. What is the acc. sing. and pl. of **genus**? **tempus** (p. 20)? **aliud lūmen**. id lūmen (pp. 5, 10)? **sīdus** (p. 11)? **nōmen** (p. 29)?

<b>general</b> = relating to a class	<b>inscribe</b> = write upon § 220, 7
<b>identity</b> = sameness § 112 b	<b>tribute</b> = what is given
<b>agātur</b> it is treated, account is taken, one speaks, discusses	<b>dē quōtā (ōrdīne) rē</b> about which thing (in order)
<b>est eōrum</b> consists of those	<b>quōtēnae . . . singulis</b> , how many . . . (to) each
<b>tot so many quot as many</b> § 64	
<b>totidem</b> just as many § 119 b	<b>tribuant</b> assign, give cf. § 139

Quārtum genus est eōrum quī dē duplicandō, dē triplīcandō, dē multiplicandō agunt. Huius generis sunt **simplex**, **duplex**, **triplex**, **quadruplex**, **quīncuplex**, et cētera. Hī indicant quam multae sint rei plicātūrae. Omnēs dēclīnātiōne tertiā dēclīnantur. Omnēs adhūc numerī nōmina ad-5 iectīva sunt.

Quintum genus est adverbiorum numerālium. Huius generis sunt **semel**, **bis**, **ter**, **quater**, **quīnquiēns**, **sexiēns**, et cētera. Haec indicant quotiēns fiat, quotiēns numerētur, quotiēns repetātur aut capiātur. Adverbia nōn dēclīnan-10 tur sed eadem ubique scribuntur.

Maximus numerus Latinus est **mille**. “Mille librī” scribere licet. Suprā hunc numerum necesse est duo **mīlia** librōrum, centum **mīlia** librōrum, bis centēna **mīlia** librōrum scribere. **Mīlia** nōmen est substantivum. Quā dē causā 15 cāsus genitīvus eī ubique succēdit.

Find the bases of nouns (pp. 28–9) by comparing forms (§ 54).

<b>adjective</b> = <i>added name denoting quality</i>	<b>duplicate</b> = <i>the double of substantive = (name) standing out by itself</i>
<b>biscuit</b> = <i>twice cooked</i> § 83	
<b>capiātur</b> ( <i>a thing</i> ) <i>is taken</i>	<b>plicātūrae</b> <i>folds, repetitions</i>
<b>fiat</b> ( <i>something</i> ) <i>is done</i> § 213	<b>sim-plex</b> <i>one-fold, simple</i>
<b>-iēns, -iēs</b> <i>times</i> § 120 g	<b>suc-cēdi-t</b> <i>come-s up or after</i>
<b>lice-t</b> <i>it is lawful, permitted</i>	<b>ubi-</b> <i>-where -que every-</i> § 119 e

**Indeclinable Numerals.** (Many numerals are declined, § 120.)

<b>quīnque</b> <i>five</i>	<b>quīnquiēns</b> <i>5-times</i>	<b>decem</b> <i>ten</i>	<b>deciēs</b> <i>10-times</i>
<b>quīndecim</b> <i>fifteen</i>	<b>quīndeciēs</b> <i>15-times</i>	<b>vīginti</b> <i>twenty</i>	
<b>viciēs</b> <i>20-times</i>	<b>viciēs quīnquiēs</b> <i>25-times</i>	<b>vīginti quīnque</b> <i>25</i>	
<b>quīnquāgintā</b> <i>fifty</i>	<b>quīnquāgiēs</b> <i>50-times</i>	<b>centum</b> <i>hundred</i>	
<b>centiēs</b> <i>100-times</i>	<b>quīngentiēs</b> <i>5-hundred times</i>	<b>mille</b> <i>1000</i>	

## DE COLÖRIBUS

Colörēs radiis lūcis fiunt. Nocte obscūrā nūllus cernitur color. Absente lūce, color abest. Cum primum lūcēscit, omnia colörēs propriōs trahunt. Suus quidem cuique color est. Tenebrae ātrae vel nigrae dicuntur, quod colōrem habent nūllum.

Lūx clāra candida est. Sed lūcī sunt radii variī. Omnēs coniūctī atque iūstīs modīs mixtī albam vel candidam faciunt lūcem. Dispersī ac sēparātī aliī aliō sunt colōre.  
 10 Nōnnūllī oculis cernī nōn possunt. § 62 g

Colōrum infinita varietās. Dē paucīs ac summīs breviter dicendum est. Nix alba vel candida est. Sanguis ruber. Rosae variae sunt. Aliae albō colōre; aliae vīvō, aliae suāvī rubrō; nōnnūllae etiam flāvō. Aurō color est flāvus.  
 15 Herbae arborumque foliīs viridis. Caelō ac marī caeruleus. Violae violāceus. Inter caeruleum autem et violāceum est color caeruleus obscūrus, quī Indicus vocātur. Summī igitur colörēs sunt **ruber, luteus, flāvus, viridis, caeruleus, indicus, violāceus.**

Select (pp. 28–9, 30): *a.* Indicatives; *b.* Subjunctives (§ 216); *c.* Datives; *d.* Ablatives; *e.* Masculine nouns. See § 55 f.

**Suus** cui-que color est, *every thing has its* § 105  
 (its-own to-each-thing color is) *particular color.* Int. § 5 e

**Omnēs coniūctī** (*when or if*) *all (are) taken together* (§ 95): **et iūstīs modīs mixtī** *and (if) mixed in the right proportions.* **Dispersī ac sēparātī** (*if or when*) *scattered and separated.* **Dicendum est** *it is to-be-spoken, we must speak.*

**indigo** = *Indian blue*

**property** = *what is one's own*

**sanguinary** = *bloody*

**cum primum** *when first, as soon as*

**possunt can quidem** *indeed* § 69

**summī** *most important*

## DE MĒNSŪRĀ TEMPORIS

Tempus hōris, diēbus, mēnsibus, annis, saeculis mētimur. Brevissimum spatium pūctum temporis dicimus. Modi igitur temporis sunt pūctum, hōra, diēs, mēnsis, annus, saeculum. Quā ratiōne tempora nōtāmus, dē eā nunc legē-  
mus.

Apud nōs diēs initium capit ā mediā nocte. Pertinet ad mediam noctem proximam. Tempus diēi aut noctis hōrā nōtāmus, ut sextā hōrā Ante Merīdiem [6 A.M.] vel decimā hōrā Post Merīdiem [10 P. M.]. Ā mediā nocte ad merīdiem 10 hōrās duodecim numerāmus. Ā merīdiē ad mediam noctem posteram hōrās duodecim numerāmus. Diēs igitur in vīginti quattuor hōrās dīvisus est.

Trīgintā diērum spatium vulgō mēnsis habētur. Tempora mēnsis numerō vērō diēi indicāmus, ut primō diē, secundō 15 diē, tertiō diē, quārtō diē, reliquisque ōrdine diēbus ūsque ad ultimum diem mēnsis.

Annus est in duodecim mēnsis dīvisus. Quōrum primus est Ianuārius, ultimus December. Septembrī sunt diēs trīgintā; Aprili, Iūniō, Novembrī totidem. Reliquis omni-  
bus prāter Februārium sunt diēs trīgintā ūnus. Huic mēnsi sōli sunt diēs duodētrīgintā.

Omnibus ita complētis mēnsibus, vērū annus exāctus nōn est. Quārta ferē pars diēi reliqua est. Semel igitur quattuor annōrum spatiō ūnus addendus est diēs. Is diēs 25 mēnsi brevissimō additur Februāriō. Hoc quadriennium

<b>addendus est</b>	<i>is to be added,</i>	<b>mēnsi sunt</b>	<i>they measured</i>	§ 101
	<i>has to be added</i>	§ 104	<b>mēti-mur</b>	<i>we measure</i>
<b>initium capi-</b>	<i>t take-s its start</i>		<b>modus</b>	<i>limit, measure</i>

paulō longius facit. Is igitur diēs omittendus interdum est. Quod accidit ter annōrum quadringentum spatiō. Tempus annī mēnsī et diē nōtātur, ut diē septimō mēnsis Mārti [March 7] aut diē vicēsimō septimō mēnsis Maī.

5 Spatium centum annōrum saeculum dicitur. Tempus saeculi annō indicāmus, ut annō nōnāgēsimō octāvō [98]. Omnēs ferē gentēs tempus hodiē indicant numerō annī post Christum nātum aut ante Christum nātum. Ita dīcimus Annō Domīni millēsimō quadringentēsimō nōnāgēsimō  
10 secundō Columbum Americam invēnisse et annō quadrāgēsimō quārtō ante Christum Caesarem interfectum. § 182 b

Omnēs ferē gentēs tempus hodiē mētiuntur atque indicant, ita utī suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Rōmānī quidem tempus mēnsī sunt eīdem ferē modīs quibus nōs ūtimur. Addenda  
15 sunt autem biduum, trīdium, quadrīdium. Nam prō duobus diēbus illi **biduum** dixēre. Ad hōs quōs suprā diximus modōs accēdēbant biennium, triennium, quadriennium, et cētera. Spatium annōrum duōrum **biennium** dixerunt.

Sed longē aliā ratiōne hōrās diēi et diēs mēnsis nōtāvēre  
20 ac numerāvēre. Annī autem apud Rōmānōs cōsulibus nōtātī sunt. Temporibus enim rei pūblicae Rōmānae Christus nōndum nātus est. Et trecentīs post annīs imperātōribus principibusque populi Rōmānī ille vix nōtus fuit. Quid plūra? Hae rēs in longiōrem diem cōferendae sunt. § 67

**ac-cēdē-ba-nt** were add-ed

**cōferendae sunt** are to be

put off, must be put off

**eīdem** by the same — **quibus** as

**fu-it** he-was, has been § 115 b

**inter-dum** between whiles, at times

**nōn-dum** not yet

**nātus est** was born

§ 101 a

**quod** and this, which, that

**spatium** period, lapse

§ 77 b

## DE SPATIO

Intervāllum temporis Rōmānī spatium vocant. Intervāllum loci apud eōs et spatium vocātur. Saepius autem dē locō quam dē tempore dicitur. Omnia suum loci modum occupant. Omnia suum spatī modum continent. Omnia 5 in spatiō sunt ibique continentur. §§ 62 *b*, 74, 3, 5

Spatiō omnī nūllus est modus aut terminus, nūllum initium aut finis. Sine fine in longitudinem pertinet. Sine finibus in longitudinem et in lātitudinem patet. Sine terminō in altitudinem pertinet. Nūllā ex parte finibus coërcetur aut continetur. Atque praeter finis in omnīs partis patēscit. Spatium immēsum, infinītum, interminātum. Id tamen vacuum nōn nōvimus. Spatium omne terrā aut aquā, āere aut aethere plēnum.

Ratiōne, dēclinātiōnis, aestās, aestāte, altitūdinem are feminine. Select feminine nouns (pp. 12, 17, 20–21, 23, 28, 30, 33).

Select (pp. 23, 29, 31–32): *a*. Nominative forms; *b*. Ablatives.

Write out the declension: p. 33, **modus** (§ 75); **omnia** (§ 79 *b*); **nūllā** (like **ūna**, § 120); **terrā** (§ 77 *a*); **initium**, **intervāllum** (§ 77 *b*); p. 32, **bīduum** and **biennium** (sing. only, § 77 *b*); **trecentis** (pl. § 120 *d*); p. 29, **duplicandō** (§ 129); **librōrum** (§ 76); **mīlia** (§ 120 *c*); **generis** (like **vulnus**, § 78 *b*); **hī** (*these, they*, like pl. §§ 75, 117 *b*); p. 20, **tempus** (**tempor-**) sing. only (cf. § 78 *b*); **loci** (pl. like **castra**, § 77 *b*); **locus** (§ 75).

<b>con-tine-nt</b> <i>with-hold, hold in,</i>	<b>nōvimus</b> <i>we have found out, know</i>
<b>con-tain,</b> <i>bound, occupy</i>	<b>omnī</b> <i>all, as-a-whole</i> § 88
<b>in-fini-tum</b> <i>un-end-ed</i> § 98	<b>pate-t</b> <i>lie-s open, extend-s</i>
<b>in-mēn-sum</b> <i>un-measure-d</i>	<b>per-tine-t</b> <i>reach-es, extend-s</i>
<b>ibi in it</b> <i>loci of space, room</i>	<b>praeter</b> ( <i>w. Acc.</i> ) <i>beyond, past</i>



## ALIA STUDIA

In lūdō Rōmānō omnia diligenter in studiis versantur. Hi legunt, hi scribunt. Nōnnūlli mēnsūris spatī, circuli, ponderis operam dant. Alii arithmetica discunt. Appoloni-  
 5 nius eōs multa dē gravitāte, dē spatiō, dē mōtibus sīderum docet. Longum est omnia studia magistrī puerōrumque perspicere. Sed pauca ac summa nōtābimus, quae iam nōbīs magnō erunt ūsuī ad librōs Caesaris, Cicerōnis, Vergili aliorumque scriptōrum Rōmānōrum legendōs. § 159 *b, g*  
 10 Theodōrus, ut iam ante diximus, Graecus est et latinē loquī discit. Audit reliquōs dicere: proximā nocte dē tertiā hōrā lūnam oriri; servum primā vigiliā venire.

Ille rem difficilem habet hōrās diēi ac noctis rēctē et latinē dicere. Etiam nunc multa dē eā rē ex Aemiliō quaerit.  
 15 Aemilius haec omnia, ut potest, explicat atque prōpōnere cōnātur. Haec rēs nōbīs tantum negōtī quantum Theodōrō facit. Quā dē causā, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrī fuimus, repraesentābimus; et hodiē discēmus, quā ratiōne Rōmānī hōrās diēi numerent et quō modō diēs mēnsis dicant.  
 20 Deinde quōsdam labōrēs cotidiānōs sequēmur nōtābimusque quantum differant ab nostrā cōsuētūdine. § 119 *b*

**explicit** = *well explained*

**ponderous** = *having great weight*

**-bi-, -ē-** *shall-, will-* § 164

**collāt-ūr-** *I going to put off*

**habe-t** *ha-s, hold-s, regard-s*

**iam** *now, soon, already*

**et-iam** *even, also* **nunc** *now*

**in** (w. Acc.) *till, for, unto*

**nōtā-bi-mus** *we shall notice*

**per-spicere** *look through, over*

**prō-pōnere** *set forth, explain*

**re-praesentā-bi-mus** *shall bring back to the present, do now*

**scrip-tor** *writ-er*

**sequ-ē-mur** *we shall follow*

**tantum** *as-much* . . . **quantum** *as*

## DE HÔRIS DIËI ET VIGILIIS NOCTIS

Apud illōs diēs initium capit ab ortū sōlis; pertinet ad occāsum sōlis. Sed singulī diēs semper aut longiōrēs aut breviōrēs fiunt. Vēre, cum longiōrēs fiunt, sōl in diēs oritur mātūrius paulō, paulō tardius occidit. Itemque autumnō, 5 cum noctēs longiōrēs fiunt, ortum retardat, occāsum mātūrat. Numquam duōs continuōs diēs eādem longitudine invenimus neque duās umquam continuās eādem longitudine noctis.

Rōmānī quemque diē sive longum sive brevem in hōrās duodecim dividunt. Quā rē fit, utī, longiōre diē, quaeque 10 hōra paulō longior sit; item, breviōre diē, quaeque hōra paulō brevior sit. Sexta hōra circiter meridiem est; occidēns hōrae duodecimae sōl finem dat.

Noctem nōnumquam in hōrās duodecim, saepius autem in quattuor vigiliās dividunt, quod urbis et castrōrum vigiliae 15 quārtam partem noctis vigilant et per noctem quater mūtantur. Ita vigilia est quārtā pars noctis. Spatium vigiliae aestimātur hōrārum circiter trium. Sed noctēs nōnumquam longiōrēs, aliās breviōrēs sunt. Quā dē causā fit, utī mediā aestāte propter noctium brevitatē vigiliae brevis- 20 simae sint; itemque summā hieme propter brevitatē diērum vigiliae longissimae sint.

Select (pp. 31, 32, 33, 35) -ā-, -ē-, -e- verb forms (§§ 187-201);

Irregular verbs (§ 212); -ī- verb forms; e.g. mētīmur (§ 207).

**cum** (quon-, um-) *when, at* -que and **item-que** and *like-  
which time, at what time* wise. Cf. § 119 a, b

**um-quam** *at any time, ever* **quem-que, quae-que** *every (one)*

**n-umquam** *at no time, n-ever* **sit** (Sub.) *be, is, shall be* § 183

**nōn-numquam** *sometimes* § 119 b **utī** (w. Sub.) *that; (w. Ind.) as*

## DE DIEBUS MĒNSIS

Apud Rōmānōs principēs mēnsium diēs erant Kalendae et Īdūs. Primus diēs mēnsis ā pontifice calābātur et Calendae sive Kalendae dicēbātur. Īdūs Mārtiae erant diēs  
 5 quīntus decimus mēnsis Mārti. Itemque Īdūs Maiiae, Iūliae, Octōbrēs diēs quīntus decimus. Cēterōrum mēnsium Īdūs dicēbātur tertius decimus diēs. Nōnae cuiusque mēnsis vocābātur diēs nōnus ante Īdūs.

Diēbus numerandis nōs respicimus. Rōmānī autem sem-  
 10 per prōspexēre. Illi enim dicēbant nōn ipsum diēi numerum vel quot diēbus post Kalendās mēnsis fieret sed quot diēbus ante posterās Nōnās vel Īdūs vel proximās Kalendās. Si quid accidit primō diē mēnsis Mārti, illi dixēre id Kalendis Mārtiis fieri. Si quis secundō diē Mārti vēnit, dixērunt eum  
 15 ante diem sextum Nōnās Mārtiās (a. d. vi. Nōn. Mārt.) venīre; si tertiō diē Mārti, ante diem quīntum Nōnās Mārtiās (a. d. v. Nōn. Mārt.). Et quod nōbīs plūs negōti facit, apud illōs mōs erat numerāre et Nōnās aut Īdūs aut Kalendās, ante quās fieri dicerent, et diem, quō rēs fieret.  
 20 Quā dē causā fit, uti apud eōs numerus semper ūnō māior sit quam apud nōs.

Select: a. First and Third Declension *noun* forms

b. First and Second Declension *adjective* forms

Calends = <i>days to be called out</i>	approximate = <i>next to, close to</i>
moral = <i>conforming to custom</i>	pontifical = <i>priestly</i> § 220, 2
faci-t <i>make-s, cause-s, do-es</i>	Nōnae <i>Nones, 9th day before Ides</i>
fie-rī <i>be done, become, happen</i>	cuius-que <i>of each, of every</i>
Īd-ūs <i>Ide-s</i> Īd-ibus <i>on the Ides</i>	sī <i>if</i> quid <i>any(thing)</i> § 71 b
Mārti, Mārtiae (Adj.) <i>of March</i>	quot <i>how many</i> § 64

# KALENDĀRIUM

	Dates given in full	Abbreviated
On Dec. 1.	<b>Kalendis Decembris.</b>	<b>Kal. Dec.</b>
On Dec. 2.	quārtō (diē ante) Nōnās Decembris. or ante diem quārtum Nōnās Decembris.	IV. Nōn. Dec. a.d. IV. Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 3.	tertiō (diē ante) Nōnās Decembris. or ante diem tertium Nōnās Decembris.	III. Nōn. Dec. a.d. III. Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 4.	pridiē Nōnās Decembris.	prid. Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 5.	<b>Nōnis Decembris.</b>	<b>Nōn. Dec.</b>
On Dec. 6.	octāvō (diē ante) Īdūs Decembris. or ante diem octāvum Īdūs Decembris.	VIII. Īd. Dec. a.d. VIII. Īd. Dec.
On Dec. 13.	<b>Īdibus Decembris.</b>	<b>Īd. Dec.</b>
On Dec. 14.	ūndēvicēsīmō Kalendās Ianuāriās. or ante diem XIX. Kalendās Ianuāriās.	XIX. Kal. Ian. a.d. XIX. Kal. Ian.
On Dec. 15.	duodēvicēsīmō Kalendās Ianuāriās.	XVIII. Kal. Ian.

## Kalendārium Iuliānum

Our Days	March, May, July, October	January, August, December	September, April, June, November	February
1	<b>Kal.</b>	<b>Kal.</b>	<b>Kal.</b>	<b>Kal.</b>
2	a.d. VI. Nōn.	a.d. IV. Nōn.	a.d. IV. Nōn.	a.d. IV. Nōn.
3	a.d. V. Nōn.	a.d. III. Nōn.	a.d. III. Nōn.	a.d. III. Nōn.
4	a.d. IV. Nōn.	prid. Nōn.	prid. Nōn.	prid. Nōn.
5	a.d. III. Nōn.	<b>Nōn.</b>	<b>Nōn.</b>	<b>Nōn.</b>
6	prid. Nōn.	a.d. VIII. Īd.	a.d. VIII. Īd.	a.d. VIII. Īd.
7	<b>Nōn.</b>	a.d. VII. Īd.	a.d. VII. Īd.	a.d. VII. Īd.
8	a.d. VIII. Īd.	a.d. VI. Īd.	a.d. VI. Īd.	a.d. VI. Īd.
9	a.d. VII. Īd.	a.d. V. Īd.	a.d. V. Īd.	a.d. V. Īd.
10	a.d. VI. Īd.	a.d. IV. Īd.	a.d. IV. Īd.	a.d. IV. Īd.
11	a.d. V. Īd.	a.d. III. Īd.	a.d. III. Īd.	a.d. III. Īd.
12	a.d. IV. Īd.	prid. Īd.	prid. Īd.	prid. Īd.
13	a.d. III. Īd.	<b>Īd.</b>	<b>Īd.</b>	<b>Īd.</b>
14	prid. Īd.	a.d. XIX. Kal.	a.d. XVIII. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.
15	<b>Īd.</b>	a.d. XVIII. Kal.	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.
16	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.
17	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.
18	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.
19	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.
20	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.
21	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.
22	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.
23	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.
24	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.
25	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal. <sup>1</sup>
26	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal. <sup>2</sup>
27	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal. <sup>3</sup>
28	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.	prid. Kal. <sup>4</sup>
29	a.d. IV. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.	— <sup>5</sup>
30	a.d. III. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.	prid. Kal.	
31	prid. Kal.	prid. Kal.		

For leap years, viz. : <sup>1</sup> VI. Kal. <sup>2</sup> V. Kal. <sup>3</sup> IV. Kal. <sup>4</sup> III. Kal.  
<sup>5</sup> prid. Kal.

## DE SPATII MENSURA

Montēs altī sunt. Mūrī altī aut humilēs dicuntur. Pēs modus est altitudinis. Altitudinem mūrōrum pedibus mētimur. Montis humiliōrēs collis vocāmus. Altitudinem 5 collium pedibus aestimāmus. Alius modus altitudinis est pedēs mille. Altitudō montium milibus pedum aestimātur.

Iter aut longum aut breve dicimus. Lineae aut longae aut brevēs dicuntur. Linea solum in longitudinem pertinet. Modī longitudinis sunt pēs et passus. Modus itineris est 10 passūs mille. Lineārum longitudō pedibus vel passibus, longitudō itinerum milibus passuum aestimātur.

Finis aut lātōs aut angustōs arbitrāmur. Agrī aut lātī aut angustī exīstimantur. Finēs in longitudinem et in lātitudinem patent. Agrōs in longitudinem et lātitudinem 15 mētimur. Pēs et passus modī sunt longitudinis lātitudinisque. Longitudō et lātitudō pedibus, passibus, milibus passuum aestimantur.

Modus agrī apud Rōmānōs iugerum fuit. Nōs quoque agrum iugeribus mētimur. Sed iugera quibus illī sunt ūsī 20 multō minōra fuēre quam quibus nōs ūtimur. Apud illōs iugerum in longitudinem pedum ducentum quadrāgintā et in lātitudinem pedum centum vīgintī patēbat. § 74, 19

For the form of *iter* (line 1), see § 82 *e*. Find the bases of *pēs*, *iter*, *lātitudō* (p. 38); *arborum*, *tenue*, *vada* (p. 39); *sīdus*, *lūmen* (p. 11); *mel*, *color*, *hiemem* (p. 21); *genus*, *ōrdō* (p. 28). What is the nom. and acc. sing. of each? (p. 5, note.)

*itinerary* = list of routes

*linear* = of lines

*finis* ends, limits, boundaries

*sunt ūsī* (are having-used) have

*iugerum* (Roman) acre

*used, used, did use*

*Aliae arborēs altae, aliae humilēs sunt. Trunci arborum magnarum crassi dicuntur. Truncus arboris parvae et gracilis tenuis est. Folium arboris tenue est. Pēs modus crassitudinis est. Crassitudō truncōrum magnōrum saepe est pedum circiter trium; saepius pedum circiter duōrum; saepissimē ūnius pedis.*

*Aquam aut altam aut brevem dicimus. Flūmen alibi angustum et altum, alibi lātum est et breve. Lacūs plērumque lātiōrēs et altiōrēs sunt. Mare vāstissimū est atque altissimū. Altitūdō multōrum flūminum alibi nōn est amplius pedum trium aut quattuor, alibi amplius pedum quadrāgintā. Loca, quā altitūdō flūminis minima est, saepe vada dicuntur.*

§§ 64, 70, 212

*Flūmina nōn nullis locis vadō trānseuntur, sed aliās nāvibus vel pontibus trānseunda sunt. Ā ripīs flūmina plērumque minus alta sunt. Plērīque lacūs secundum ōram brevissimī, ā mediō autem sunt altissimī. Pauci lacūs sunt in altitūdinem pedum amplius mille. Mare secundum ōram plērumque breve, per medium autem est in altitūdinem multōrum milium pedum.*

20

**Nōmen, lūmina; sīdus, sīdera, tempus, tempore** are neuter.

Select all neuter noun and adjective forms on pp. 8, 10, 18, 29, 33, 38–9. Make a list of the adverbs on pp. 24–5, 28, 31–2, 33–4.

**navy = fleet of ships** § 79 **attenuate = make thin** § 88

<b>alibi in one place . . . alibi in another place</b>	§ 117 a	<b>minus alta not so deep</b>
<b>amplius more crassi thick</b>		<b>secundum (w. Acc.) along</b>
<b>gracilis slender, thin</b>		<b>trānseunda su-nt are to be or have to be crossed</b>
<b>ab initio from (at) the start</b>		§ 215
		<b>vada wading places, fords</b>

Ab initiō omnēs hominēs ferī erant. Omnia ad corpus suum referēbant, quod aliōs modōs habēbant nullōs. (Idem faciunt hodiē hominēs barbari ac ferī.) Omnia digitis numerābant. Digiti aut palmae lātitudīne, pedis, gradūs  
 5 aut passūs longitūdīne omnia mētiēbantur. Ex his pristinīs modis paulatim orti sunt illi modi, quibus plēraeque gentēs hodiē ūtuntur. § 182 a, b

Rōmānī omnia his modis pristinīs mēnsi sunt. Hi modi multum ā nostris differēbant. Passus apud nōs est trēs  
 10 pedēs; apud illōs pedēs aequābat quīnque. Pēs autem, quō Rōmānī ūsi sunt, paulō brevior erat quam quō nōs ūtimur. Illi enim erant corpore paulō minōre quam nōs itemque breviorē statūrā. Ita brevius gressi sunt quam nōs gradimur. Gradus apud illōs fuit dīmidia pars passūs. Apud nōs autem  
 15 gradus et passus dicitur. §§ 62 g, 89

Digiti lātitudō *digitus* dicēbātur. Palmus erat lātitudō palmae vel manūs passae, digitōsque quattuor aequābat. Pedis erat longitūdō palmōrum quattuor, digitōrum sēdecim. Modi igitur spatī apud Rōmānōs fuēre digitus, palmus, pēs,  
 20 gradus, passus, passūs mille, centum mīlia passuum, bis centēna mīlia passuum.

For the form of **corpus** (line 9) see § 82 b. Select all accusatives used with prepositions (pp. 13, 16, 18, 19, 22, 31, 34, 40).

-bā- was-, were-, did-, -ed		manūs passae of the open or	
digitus finger, toe	§ 23	spread-out hand	§ 81
gradus a step	§§ 180-2	ā nostris from ours	[§ 161
gressi sunt (are having-walked)		orti sunt are having-arisen	
have walked, walked	§ 22	palma palm (of the hand)	

## DE CIRCULI MĒNSŪRĀ

Globus rotundus est. Circulus quoque rotundus est. Ex solidis globus, ex planis circulus. Hic et orbis appellatur, ille et sphaera dicitur. Circulus verus circum punctum circinō circumducitur. Quod punctum centrum est. Circinātiō circuli verī ex omnibus partibus aequo spatio ā centrō abest. § 221 b

Solida in longitudinem, in latitudinem, et in crassitudinem mētimur. Circulī in diametrum et in circinātiōnem sunt mētiendī. Pedibus, passibus, milibus passuum mētirī licet. 10 Alia autem ratiō circulōrum mētiendōrum est. Hāc ratiōne modus circuli est pars. Omnis circulōs sive magnōs seu parvōs in trecentās sexāgintā partis dīvidimus. Dīmidium circuli partis centum octōgintā aequat. Quadrāns partis nōnāgintā aequat. Globis quoque haec ratiō mētiendī 15 accommodāta est. § 129

Select all feminine forms (p. 41). Note ratiō, ratiōne f.

**Librī legendī sunt** *books are to be read, ought to be read* § 106

**Librōs legendōs cūrō** *I take care of the books to be read,*

*I oversee the reading of the books*

**Haec ratiō librōrum legendōrum** *this plan of reading books*

**Diēs librīs legendīs dictus est** *a day was set for the books to be read, a day was set for reading the books* § 158 c

**Eī est liber** *a book belongs to him, he has a book*

**Liber eī est legendus** *for him there is a book to be read,* § 104

*he has a book (that is) to be read, he has to read a book*

**Eī legendum est** *for him there is reading to be done,*

*he has reading (that is) to be done,*

*he has reading to do, has to do reading*

**circinō** *with compasses* **in diametrum** *for diameter* **orbis** *ring*



## DE GRAVITATE

Aliās rēs levīs, aliās gravīs esse dicimus. Omnibus rēbus, quās nōvimus, pondus est. Suum cuique pondus est. Montēs in interiōra terrae nītuntur. Ōceanus pondere suō in terram nītitur. Idem facit aēr et omnia terrestria. § 111

Sī qua rēs ē terrā ēmittitur, in terram nūtat atque eōdem gravitatē fertur. Nix et pluvia ē caelō cadunt. In terram incidunt. Aqua flūminum ē montibus fluit et in mare labitur. Eius rei causa quae sit, mirāmur. Ex nōbīs quaerimus.  
10 Causam gravitatē esse dicimus. § 221 b

Aqua cadēns sē in globulōs fōrmat. Terra sē in globum fōrmāvit. Lūna sibi fōrmam globōsam suscēpit. Sōl sibi eandem fōrmam sūmpsit. Idem fēcēre sīdera. Idem faciunt omnia, quibus nihil est impedimētō ad eam rem faciendam.  
15 Omnia terrestria sē in vicem trahunt. Altera alterīs cōpiam ponderis faciunt. Omnia gravitatē inter sē dant. In centrum terrae feruntur. In terram ex omnibus partibus nītuntur. Ea rēs terram globōsam fēcit. Sed quae vīs pondus vel gravitatē faciat ignōrāmus. § 220, 14

Select all accusatives with prepositions. **Marī** is Abl.

<b>gravity</b> = <i>heaviness</i>	<b>alleviate</b> = <i>lighten up</i>	§ 220, 2
<b>ignorant</b> = <i>not knowing</i>	§ 220, 7	<b>ponderous</b> = <i>weighty</i> § 42, 1
<b>cadē-ns</b> (when) <i>fall-ing</i>	<b>mirā-mur</b> <i>we-wonder</i>	<i>admire</i>
<b>ē-mitti-tur</b> <i>is thrown up</i>	§ 220, 6	<b>nīti-t-ur</b> <i>rest-s (itself)</i> § 180
<b>eō-dem</b> <i>to the same, back to it</i>	<b>nūta-t</b> <i>nod-s, droop-s, settle-s</i>	
<b>fer-t-ur</b> <i>bear-s itself, is borne, carried</i>	§ 212	<b>terrestr-ia</b> <i>earthly things</i>
<b>in centrum</b> <i>toward the center</i>	<b>sūmps-it</b> <i>has taken on</i>	§ 219, 4
<b>labi-t-ur</b> <i>glide-s</i>	§ 182	<b>trahu-nt</b> <i>draw, pull upon</i>
<b>lapse</b>		<b>in vicem</b> <i>in turn</i> <b>vīs</b> <i>force</i> § 80

## DE ARITHMETICIS

Arithmetica dē numeris agunt. Primum numerōs scribere et scriptōs legere discendum est. Eōs et arabicē et rōmānē discimus. Quō factō, summās arithmeticōrum artis ordine dōcēmur. Primum instituimur ad summam aliquot numerōrum cōficiendam; deinde ad alium alii numerum dētrahendum; tertium ad singulōs numerōs aliquotiēns dūcendōs; quārtum ad reperiendum quotiēns alius aliō numerus contineātur.

§§ 119 b, 120 f

Sī quot numerōrum summa quaeritur, inter sē addendī sunt. Exempli grātiā: quot sunt vigintī quinque et quīndecim. Respondētur quadrāgintā esse.

§§ 59, 142

Cum dētrahitur, maior numerus minuendus, minor ei dētrahendus est. Exempli grātiā: sī ducenta quīngentis dētrahuntur, quot sunt reliqua? Respondētur trecenta reliqua esse. Sī tria tribus dētrahuntur, quid est reliquī? Respondētur nihil esse reliquī.

§§ 64, 70-2, 104

Exempli grātiā: Quot sunt bis bīna? Bis bīna sunt quattuor. Quaerō quot sint quater quaterna. Respondēs quater quaterna sēdecim esse.

20

Sī quī numerus dividendus est, in aequās partis dividimus. Exempli grātiā: sī quaeris quotiēns centum quīnquāgintā nōngentis contineantur; respondeō centum quīnquāgintā nōngentis sexiēns continērī. Quaeritur quotiēns quaterna sēdecim cōficiant. Respondētur quater quaterna sēdecim cōficere. Quaeritur quotiēns bīna in decem insint. Respondētur quīnquiēns bīna in decem inesse.

§ 67

minuend = (number) to be lessened    bis bīna twice two §§ 67, 120 e

## DE PARTITIÖNE

Multa adhuc de integris numeris dicta sunt. De integris enim rebus agebatur. Saepe autem in aequas partis dividendum est. Haec res partitiō dicitur. § 220, 5

- 5 Si qua res integra in duas partis aequas divisa est, utraque pars dimidium dicitur. Dimidium et dimidia pars vocatur. Si quam rem in tres partis aequas divisimus, quaeque pars triens vocatur. Trientem et tertiam partem dicimus. Si cuius rei duae ablatae sunt partes, tertia pars reliqua est.
- 10 Si quid in quattuor partis partitur, quaeque pars quadrans vocatur. Quadrantem et quartam partem dicimus. Si cui rei tres partes detractae sunt, quarta pars reliqua est. Item dicitur quinta pars, sexta pars, septima pars, et cetera. Duodecima pars uncia appellatur.<sup>1</sup> § 113

addenda = *things to be added*  
 equalize = *make even or equal*  
 detraction<sup>1</sup> = *taking from*  
 dividend = *to be divided* § 106  
 integrity<sup>1</sup> = *wholeness*

legends = *things to be read*  
 annihilate<sup>1</sup> = *reduce to nothing*  
 partition = *separation*<sup>1</sup>  
 quadrant = *quarter*  
 subtrahend<sup>1</sup> = *to be taken away*

actum est *discussion took place*  
 ab-latae sunt (*are having-been-taken away*) *have been taken*  
 de-tractae sunt *have been taken away*  
 dicta<sup>1</sup> sunt (*are having-been-said*) *have been said, were said*  
 dividendum est *division has to be made, one must divide*

divis-imus *we have divided*  
 si cui *if to any (from any)*  
 si qua, si quam *if any* § 113  
 si cuius *if of any* §§ 110-3  
 quae- one -que every- § 119 b  
 utra- one (of two) -que each  
 parti-tur<sup>1</sup> *is parted, divided*  
 triens *a third*  
 uncia *inch, ounce, etc.*

<sup>1</sup> Write a list of words having the same root (§ 47). Define each. Make other lists. Consult *Etymological Dictionary* of W. W. Skeat.

## DE ARTE LEGENDI

Parvuli audiendō loquī discimus. Postea legere docēmur. Primum vōcēs nōscimus; vōcēs legimus. Deinde litterarum figurās nōtāmus, litterāsque discimus. Ab initio rem difficilem habēmus. Aliās ab aliis litterās vix discernimus. 5 Sed cotidiē plūs possumus. Cotidiē amplius prōgredimur. Paulātim prō diligentia nostrā facilius fit. Iam omnia legere possumus. §§ 73 e, 150

Omnēs legere docendī sunt. Omnis legere posse oportet. Primum ars legendi nōbis est ornāmentō, nōbis ūsuī est. 10 Priōrēs bona et pulchra scrīpsere. Quod boni aut pulchri scriptum est, id legendō accipere licet. Legenti aditus est ad ea, quae libris scripta sunt. His rēbus hūmāniōrēs fimus. Legentibus aditus est ad ea, quae ad cultum atque hūmānitatem spectant, quae ad animōs omnium hominum meliōrēs 15 faciendōs pertinent. §§ 56, 3; 72; 159 g

**Omnis posse oportet** (that) *all be able is necessary* § 152

**Ars nōbis** (Dat.) **ūsuī est** *the art . . . is (for) use to us*

**Quod boni aut pulchri** *what (of) good or (of) beautiful* § 72

**Id . . . accipere licet** *gaining that is permitted; one may gain that*

**Legenti** *for (a) reading (man), for (one) who reads* § 94

**Ad animōs hominum meliōrēs faciendōs pertinent** *tend to make men's minds better, tend to improve men's minds* § 158

**ad-itus** *access* . **amplius** *more* **parvuli** (when) *small* §§ 94, 95

**bon-a** *a good (things)* **plērumque** *most* § 70

**ea, quae** *those (things), which* **paulātim** *gradually* **plūs** *more*

**figur-ās** *shape-s, form-s* **primum** *first* **priōrēs** *former men*

**habē-mus** *regard* § 219, 3 **scrīps-ēre** *(they) have written*

**hūmānitās** *refinement* **spectant** *look, face, tend*

**iam** *soon* **nōsci-mus** *we learn* **vix** *hardly* **vōc-ēs** *phrase-s*

Deinde nōbīs disciplinae est. In scholā, multum audiendō, multum videndō, plērumque autem legendō accipimus. Plēraeque rēs legendae sunt. Ita multa et magna accipimus ac discimus. Item parātī sumus ad plūra et maiōra accipi-  
15 enda. Hīs omnibus rēbus parātiōrēs exīmus ad omnis labōrēs vitāe subeundōs. §§ 129, 135, 158

Tertium, aliquid novī cotīdiē accidit. Aliquid pulchri semper scribitur. Aliquid bonī cotīdiē cognitum est. Summae rēs interdum geruntur. Salūs rei pūblicae omnī tempore  
10 agitur. Hae rēs nōbīs cognōscendae sunt. Hās omnis rēs legendō accipere licet. § 131

Quārtum, omnibus sunt sociī atque amīcī. Omnibus aliquid negōtī est. Aliī amīcitiae causā nōs sequuntur; alii negōtī grātiā ad nōs veniunt. Sī quis ad nōs ventūrus est,  
15 lītteris nōs certiōrēs facit. Lītteris dē amīcōrum adventū certiōrēs fimus. Item dē negōtīō sociōs certiōrēs facimus. Quid igitur miserius est quam quī alium, utī lītterās sibi praelegat, roget? § 59

**Ad maiōra accipiēda** *for learning greater things* § 159 b

**Hae rēs nōbīs cognōscendae sunt** *for us these things are to be investigated, we ought to find out about these things*

**Nōbīs sunt amīcī** *to us there are friends, we have friends* Int. 5 e

**Hoc nōbīs cognōscendum est** *we have this to investigate*

**Eum certiōrem facimus** *we make him rather-certain, we inform him*

**Nēmō est, quī accipiat** *there is no one that receives or gets* § 151 b

**Nēmō est, quīn accipiat** *there is no one but gets (who doesn't get)*

**adventus** *coming* **agitur** *is at* **quam quī** *than (one) who*

**stake** **ali-quis** *some-thing*

**rēs** *-wealth* **pūblica** *common-*

**prae-leg-a-t** *(that) he read-to*

**ad sub-eundōs** *for under-going*

**parāt-iōr-ēs** *better prepared*

**vent-ūr-us** *going to come* § 103

Multi sunt, quī ūnās aut bīnās litterās, ūnam aut duās epistulās cotīdiē accipiant. Nēmō est, quī litterās interdum accipiat. (Litterae plērumque brevēs sunt, epistula longior et maiōre cūrā scripta.)

Nōs litterās **a, b, c** vocāmus. Apud Rōmānōs litterae **l, m, n**, vel elementa (**el-em-en-ta**) dictae sunt. Graeci litterās **alpha, bēta**, et cētera dixēre. Hinc saepe litterās cūntās alphabētum dicimus. § 137 b

Hic pauca praeciendi sunt. Cum legitur, sinistrā manū tenendus est liber. Dextra manus libera esse dēbet. 10 Folia enim librī dextrā vertuntur. Ad lūcem vertendum est tergum, ut lūx in folium incidat. Oculi ā lūce āvertendi sunt, nē in oculōs incidat. Cavendum est nē qua umbra in librum incidat. §§ 139, 221

Apud nōs folia ab alterā parte libera sunt, utī manū ver- 15 tantur. Apud Rōmānōs folia librī neutrā ex parte libera erant. Illi folia nōn vertēre sed tōtum librum volvērunt. Hāc rē fiēbat, ut liber et volūmen vocārētur. § 147 g

**Hoc praeciendum est** *this ought to be directed, this ought to be given as a precept, this should be taught*

<b>debt</b> = <i>that which is owed</i>	<b>manual</b> = <i>handbook</i>	§ 81
<b>dexterity</b> = <i>skilfulness</i>	<b>oculist</b> = <i>eye specialist</i>	§ 75
<b>incident</b> = <i>falling upon</i> § 220, 7	<b>paucity</b> = <i>fewness, scarcity</i> § 64	
<b>liberty</b> = <i>freedom</i> § 91	<b>umbrella</b> = <i>little shade</i>	
<b>cūntās (coniūntās)</b> <i>all taken together, all</i>	<b>qua umbra</b> <i>any shadow</i>	§ 113
<b>dēbe-t</b> <i>owe-s, ought, should</i> § 219	<b>nē</b> (w. Sub.) <i>not, that not</i>	
<b>foli-a</b> <i>leave-s</i> p. 18, note	<b>sinistra</b> <i>awkward, left, unlucky</i>	
<b>hic</b> <i>here</i> <b>hinc</b> <i>hence, from this</i>	<b>tergum</b> <i>the back</i>	§ 77 b
<b>legi-tur</b> <i>reading is done</i> § 106 c	<b>ut, utī</b> (w. Sub.) <i>(in order) that</i>	
	<b>volv-ērunt</b> <i>they rolled</i>	

## DE ARTE SCRIBENDI

Parvī legere discimus. Eōdem tempore scribere docēmur. Primō litterārum figurās aegrē dūcimus. Tardē ac magnā cūrā nōbīs scribendum est. Paulātim prō cotidiānō ūsū et  
 5 prō diligentīā nostrā facilius fit. Iam omnia celeriter scribere possumus. §§ 130-2, 155

Scribere magnō nōbīs est ūsuī. Nēmō est enim quī omnia memoriā tenēre possit. Nēmō est, quīn quid memorandum interdum habeat. Multō facilius est memoranda scriptis  
 10 mandāre quam omnia memoriā tenēre cōnārī. §§ 113, 151 b

Nōbīs omnibus sunt amīcī sociique. Nēmō est, quīn ad amīcōs scribere interdum velit; nēmō cui ad sociōs interdum scribendum nōn sit. Multī sunt quī cotidiē scribant. Nōnnūllī plūris epistulās cotidiānās aut scribunt ipsī aut  
 15 scribendās cūrant. Hīs enim negōtium est cum multīs.

Ita, sī quid novī est, litterās ad amīcōs dant. Item dē negōtiō suō sociōs certiōrēs faciunt. Sī quis iter factūrus est, litterās ante sē mittit. Ita dē eius adventū sociī certiōrēs fiunt. § 102

**Nōbīs scribendum est for us there is writing to be done, we have writing** (that is) *to be done, we have to write, must write*

**accelerate** = *quicken* § 69

**conative** = *inclined to try* § 127

**docile** = *teachable*

**induce** = *draw into* § 220, 7

**identify** = *prove to be the same*

**aegrē** with difficulty, hardly

**cotidiānus** daily **cui** for whom

**fact-ūr-us** going to make § 102

**inter-dum** at times, sometimes

**commend** = *entrust, give over*

**negotiation** = *business dealing*

**novelty** = *new thing* [§ 220, 9

**plural** = *more than one*

**unused** = *inexperienced*

**parvī** (when) small §§ 92, 94

**quī** who **quī-n** who-not, but

**scriptis** to (things) written

**vel-i-t** wish-es, will-wish § 140

Plērique dextrā manū scribunt. Perpauci dextrā bene ūti nōn possunt. Hī sinistrā manū scribere cōguntur. Ubi scriptūri sumus, primum cūrāmus oculōs ā lūmine āvertendōs, tergum aut latus ad lūmen vertendum. Dextrā scribentibus lūx ā latere sinistrō lūcēre dēbet, nē umbra manūs in scriptum cadat. Sinistrā scribentibus eādem dē causā lūcem ā latere dextrō lūcēre oportet. §§ 148, 152

Apud nōs scribitur pēnicillis aut pennīs aut māchinātiōnibus. Librī māchinātiōnibus celerrimē imprimuntur. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad scribendum ūsui sunt, summam 10 facultātem habēmus. Sed longē aliter apud Rōmānōs rēs sēsē habēbat. Nam omnia ferē, quae tantō nōbīs ūsui ad scribendum sunt, illis ignōta fuēre. §§ 92, 159 g

Illī vulgō epistulās stilō tabulis cērātis scripsērunt, librōs autem calamīs papyrō. Stilus erat ferrum ab alterō extrēmō 15 ad scribendum praeacūtum, ab alterō lātum ad cērā scripta dēlenda. Librī apud illōs manū scripti sunt. Ars imprimendi iam omnīnō ignōta fuit. Quod librī servus Rōmānus aegerrimē multis diēbus scribere potuisset, id hodiē pūctō temporis māchinātiōne cōnficitur. 20

**Scribent-ibus** *for* (those) *writing, for those who write* § 97  
**Rēs aliter sē habet** *the matter stands* (holds itself) *otherwise*

**cogent** = *compelling, forcing*      **lateral** = *of the side*      § 78 b  
**indelible** = *not to be erased*      **utility** = *usefulness*      § 201

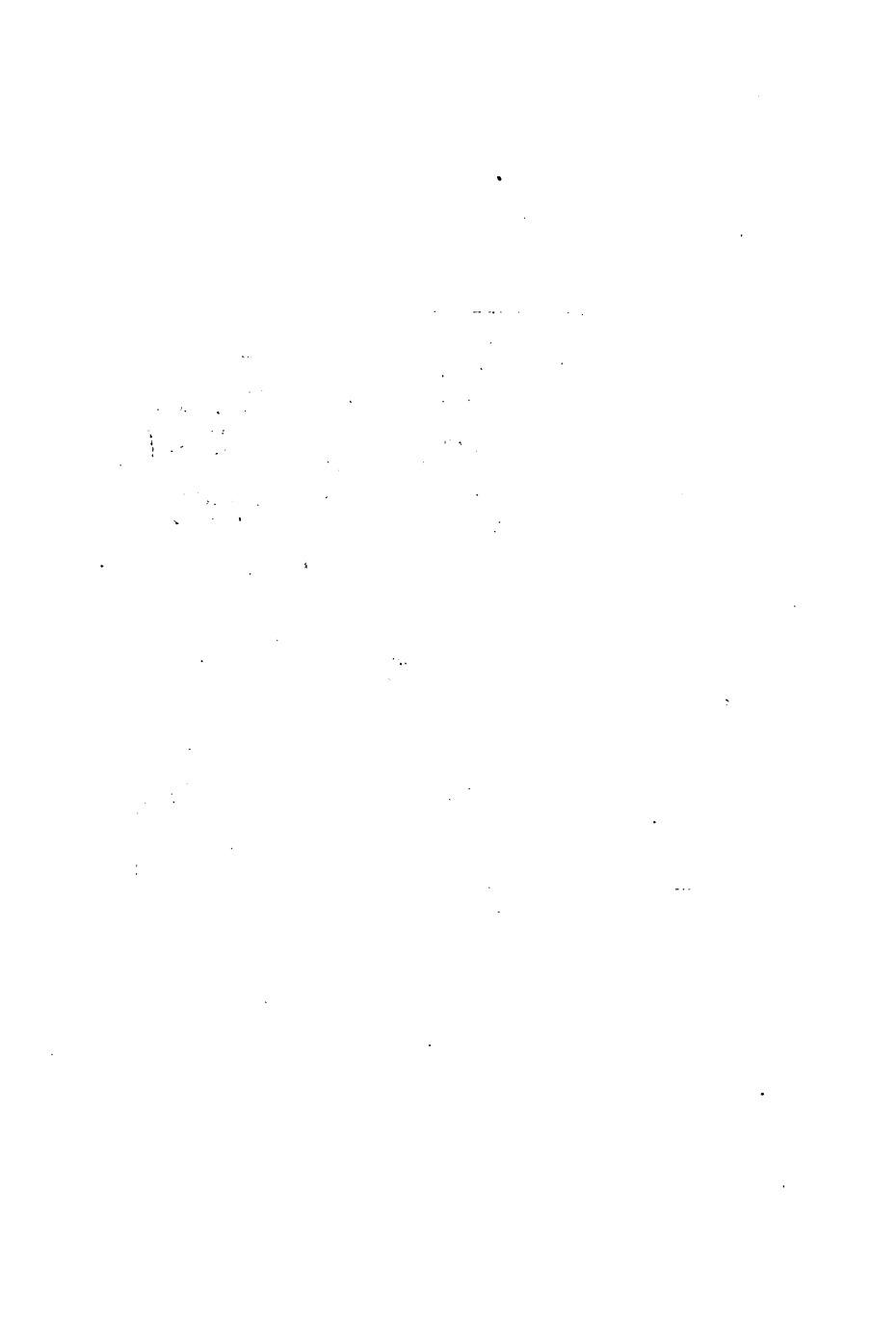
**aeger-rimē** *with great trouble*      **nōta** *known*      **ignōta** *unknown*  
**calam-is** *with reed pens* § 74, 12      **potuisset** *would have been able*  
**cērā in wax**      **cērātis** *waxed*      **quod librī** *what of a book* § 72  
**im-primu-ntur** *are printed*      **script-um** (thing) *written* § 77 b  
**nam- for -que** *at any rate* § 119      **ūsui ad** *for use for, useful for*



## EXTRĀ LŪDUM

- Multa iam in lūdō Rōmānō vīdimus, multa mōre ac ratiōne populi Rōmānī didicimus et cum nostris rēbus comparāvimus. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre, sed hoc ūnum satis erit dictum.
- 5 Puer Aemilius studiis libenter operam dat. Multum legit; scribit multum; graecē multum cum Theodōrō colloquitur; nam memoriā tenet summum Rōmānōrum ōrātōrem philosophumque, Cicerōnem, etiam Arpinī esse nātum; eum literarum Graecarum studiōsum fuisse, itemque Gaium Caesarem. Eōs quoque adulēscentis Rhodī apud alterum Apolonium, quem suprā diximus Mōlōnem, artī dicendī operam dedisse. Puer sē quoque ōrātōrem fieri cupit. Hodiē diligenter studiis operam dedit. Iam hōra nōna fit. Et iam finis est. § 221 b
- 15 Puerī ē lūdō ēgressī sunt. Aemilius iam domum in fundum est profectūrus. Hodiē amicum Theodōrum sēcum dūcere in animō est. Eōs in fundum secūtūrī sumus. Mātūrāmus Arpinō proficīscī. Nam ante puerōs pervenire eōrumque adventum vidēre volumus.
- 20 Itaque in fundum proficīscimur et magnō itinere eō ire contendimus atque nōn amplius quinque aut sex milibus passuum prōgressī fundum ante nōs cōspicimus. Ibi complūris servōs laborāre vidēmus. Alii ex his agrōs arant,
- ad-olescent** = *growing up* § 223    **native** = *born in, arising in*  
**ad-ult** = *grown up (person)*    **satisfy** = *do enough (for)* § 70
- didic-imus** *we have learned*    **liben-ter** *glad-ly (is glad to)*  
**ē-gressī sunt** *are having walked*    **per-venire** *come over, arrive* § 220  
*out, have come out*    **profect-ūr-us** *going to set out*  
**fu-isse** *(to) have been, was* § 127    **secūt-ūr-ī** *going to accompany*

This map illustrates the region around Rome, highlighting the extensive Roman road network and the locations of many ancient cities. The Tyrrhenian Sea is to the west and south, with the Gulf of Gaeta visible. Major roads like the Via Appia and Via Ardea are shown. The map also depicts the surrounding regions of Latium, Samnium, and Campania, as well as the Pontine Islands and the Gulf of Naples.



alii equōs, bovēs, ovīs cūrant atque cūstōdiunt. Eōrum ūnus bovēs ad villam agit. Fīdī canēs ā tergō sequuntur eīque magnō sunt auxiliō ad bovēs ex agrīs cōgendōs.

Villa ipsa nōn longē abest ā flūmine Fibrēnō, quod in Lirim influit. In eō flūmine pōns est, idque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsītur. Paulus ad utramque partem eius flūminis possessiōnēs habet. Hominēs cum carrīs ponte trānseunt. Bovēs autem trādūcunt vadīs Fibrēnī, quā altitudō flūminis minima est. § 220, 15

Ad villam accēdimus. Exterior domus nōbīs parum placet. 10 Rōmānī enim exteriōribus rēbus nōn student. At domus interior satis bona et ampla omnibus rēbus ōrnāta est. Ad portam accēdimus. In limine legimus CAVE CANEM. Canis autem abest. Prīmum in vestibulum ingredimur. Post hoc in ātriō sedet dominus ipse Paulus. Chilō magister 15 servōrum cum eō colloquitur.

Prīmum dominus, quid novī sit, ex eō quaerit. Ille dicit bōbus iam minus aquae in agrīs esse; ad flūmen cotidiē agendōs; quendam ex servīs Gallīs paulō ante effūgis; hūc accēdere quod certā dē causā alius Gallus nōmine Bren- 20 nus poenās dare dēbeat. Deinde dominus Chilōnem laudat, quod bovēs ad flūmen agendōs cūret. Mandāta eī in proximum diem dat; operis labōrēs partibus iūstīs aequat; statuit, quō quisque proficiscātur, quid crās faciat; cuique iūstam partem labōris tribuit. § 111 25

laudable = *praiseworthy*

eliminate = *push from doorstep*

ātrium-ī (reception) room

parum little § 70 pōns bridge

auxiliō (for) help canis dog

place-t please-s, suit-s 3 § 230

cavē beware dēbeat ought

statui-t decide-s, settle-s

Iam exitūrus Chilō iterum dē Brennō mentiōnem facit. Dominum rogat, quid dē eō faciendum putet. Hic primō recūsāt quō minus magistrum dē eō supplicium sūmere iubeat. Chilō quidem Graecus nōn bonō animō in Gallōs vidētur.  
 5 Postea autem instanti Chilōnī cēdit. §§ 102, 154

Dominum in ātriō relinquimus. Inde in peristylum prōgredimur. Ibi flōribus, pictūris, statuīs ōrnātum est. Ibi apertum caelum suspicimus. Fōns in mediō fluit. Ab utrāque parte columnae tēctum domūs sustinent. Volitant  
 10 per āera columbae. Piscēs aquis nātant. Ignis perpetuus in ārā Vestae lūcet. Sōl occidēns summās iam columnās suāvibus illūminat radiis. Ad focum congregantur domina, filiae, servae. § 51

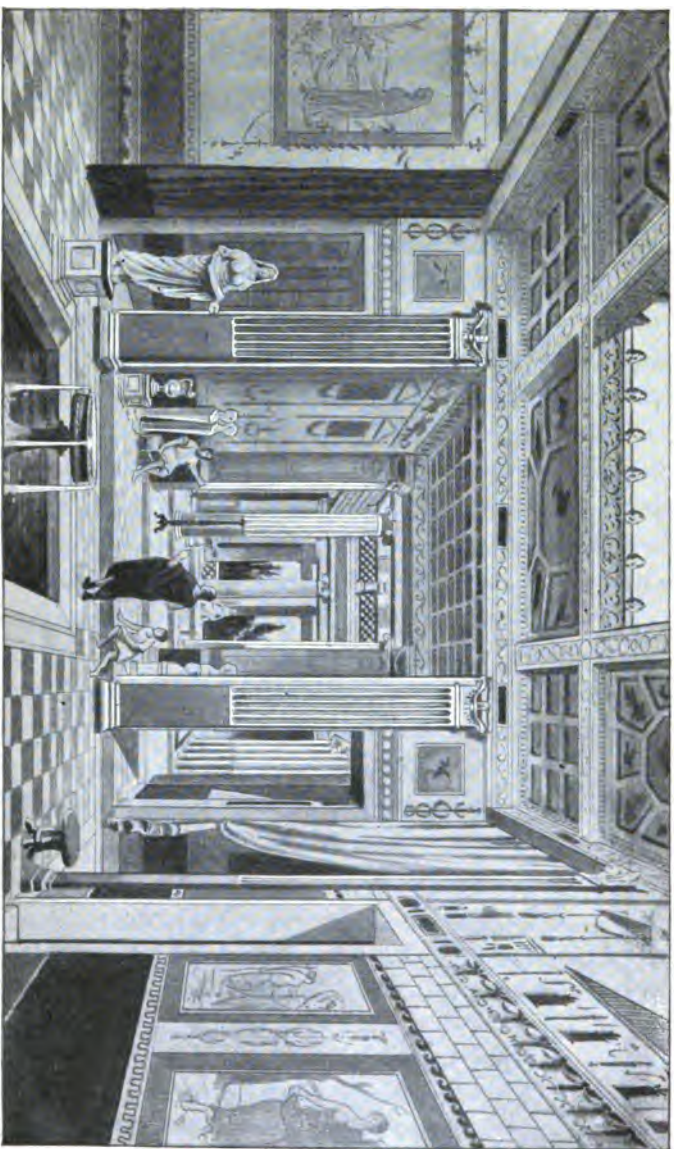
In familiā Rōmānā sunt pater, māter, filii, famuli. Quō-  
 15 rum famuli et servi vocantur. Pater domum regit. Dominus dicitur. Vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem. Patri domus omnis est cūrae. Patris est domicilium sibi suisque parāre, domum aedificāre aut aedificātam cōservāre, omnia, quibus ad vīvendum opus est, prōvidēre. Pater  
 20 patris avus est. Patrēs et avī maiōrēs dicuntur. § 98

Māter domina est. Mātrōna quoque dicitur. Mātri cūra domūs est. Mātris est liberōs ēducāre, rēs domesticās prōvidēre, domum cūrāre atque omnia domestica perspicere.

**Patri . . . est cūrae** is (for) a care to the father **Ei . . . est auxiliō** is (for) a help to him **Patris est** it is the father's (duty)  
**Bonō animō in** (with or) of good mind toward §§ 57, 62 g

columba dove ignis fire  
 peristylum -ī open court  
 piscēs fish put-e-t think-s

sūmere take (from), inflict (on)  
 summās tops of focum hearth  
 tēctum -ī roof vīta -ae life



DOMŪS RŌMĀNAE PERISTYLIUM

Servae quidem liberōs cūrant, molita cibāria cōservant, panem faciunt, victum parant, omnia in ōrdine servant, dominae auxilium ferunt, huic oboediunt, eius voluntātī obtemperant, eī cēdunt. Māterfamiliās liberōs vestiendōs, 5 victum parandum, omnia in ōrdine servanda cūrat.

Rōmānī bellō captōs in servitūtem abdūcunt. Sed hīs licet aliquot annōs serviendō libertātem redimere. Tum manū mittuntur ac liberātī sive libertī dicuntur. Servi dominō, dominae, magistrō oboediunt. Hīs cēdunt, eis fidī 10 sunt atque auxilium ferunt. Servōrum est audire, cēdere obtemperāre, servire, fidī esse. Servi agrōs arant et sēmentis faciunt. Frūctūs legunt frūmentumque metunt. Dominō hortus, agrī, animālia, opera omnia cūrae sunt. Ille agrōs arandōs, sēmentis faciendās, frūmenta metenda, pābulum 15 colligendum servandumque, frūctūs legendōs cūrat. Dominum prūdentem esse oportet. Hinc prōverbium illud habēmus: “ Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita et metēs.” § 147 b

Liberī aut filiī aut filiae sunt. Filī filius nepōs dicitur. Filīi et nepōtēs minōrēs sive posterī dicuntur. Filīi puerī, 20 filiae puellae vocantur. Servi quoque nōnnumquam puerī appellantur. Liberī inter sē frātrēs dicuntur. Filīi sē frātrēs appellant. Filiae sē sorōrēs vocant. Frāter mā-

belli-gerent = *war-making*

horticulture = *gardening*

molar = *grinding (tooth)*

conservation = *keeping together*

service = *drudgery, toil*

vestibule = *hall for clothing*

victuals = *prepared food*

voluntary = *willing* § 137

ab-dūcu-nt *they carry off (away)*

audire, ob-oedire *hear (to)*

cibāria *food stuffs*    cibus *food*

capt-ōs (*men who are*) *taken* § 94

met-ē-s *thou shalt reap* § 197

manū mitte-re *let out of hand*

obtemperant *conform, agree (to)*

panis *bread*    red-imere *buy*

ternus liberis est avunculus. Frater paternus eis patruus est. Liberi Romani patribus maioribusque oboediunt, cedunt et eorum voluntati obtemperant. Liberos semper patribus maioribusque oboedire oportet. Hinc mandamentum illud: "Patrem et matrem honoratote."

5

Dum omnia in peristylō lustramus subito foris clamatur. Paulus clamorem audit. Exit. Exeunt mater filiaeque. Nos quoque eximus. Cum Theodorō reversum videmus Aemilium. Quem servi magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū excipiunt, equosque in stabula deducunt. Simul et raucis et suavibus linguis salutatur. Nam in his servis sunt Afri, Galli, Germani, Graeci. Hi plerique ambobus pueris cupiunt atque amici sunt. Graeci principēs Theodorō salutem dicere contendunt. Sperant enim per eius auctoritatem sese olim libertatem consequi posse, quod vident Aemilium bono in eum animo esse.

§ 157 b

Statim progrediuntur pater et mater pueros salutatum. Primae puellae Theodorō salutem dicunt et, cum Aemilia maior eum ad domum comitatur, Aemilia minor, puella novem annorum, manum fratris prendit et secum gaudens se vocat. Tum leni voce, ne audiatur: "hodie," inquit, "est ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias." Cui frater:

**Salutatum** to greet. **Salutem** dicere wish good health.

**ambiguous** = driving at both **apprehend** = seize upon § 220, 2

**gaudy** = showing joy, rejoicing **secede** = go apart § 220, 13

**leniency** = gentleness, mildness **simultaneous** = at once with

**com-itā-tur** ac-com-pani-es **quem** = et eum and . . . him

**ex-cipiunt** take up, welcome **raucus -a -um** hoarse, guttural

**honoratōte** ye shall honor § 189 **re-versum** (who has) come back

**inquit** says she **olim** one day **strepitus -ūs** noise, din, uproar





**TOGA VIRILIS**  
(ă fronte vîsa)



**TOGA VIRILIS**  
(vîsa ă tergō)



**MILES LEGIŌNĀRIUS**



**TOGA PRAETEXTA**  
(puerilis)

Et quibus cōsulibus? Dic mihi rēctē. § 96 b

Iterum tibi dicō. Tertiō diē ante Kalendās Maiās Gaiō Iūliō Caesare et Mārcō Bibulō cōsulibus. Satin dictum?

Et quid novī aut mīri est? Quā rē commōvērīs?

Num Nōnārum Maiārum oblivisceris? Nihilne memi-  
nistī? § 145 b, c

Nōnne, soror cāra, oblita ipsa es mē cotidiē Arpinum in lūdum ire ibique tōtō diē summīs rēbus operam dare?

Mīnimē, frāter cāre. Eās omnis rēs memoriā teneō. Sed hodiē gaudeō maximē. 10

Quā rē gaudēs? Dic mihi.

Nōn tibi dicō. Cōgitā tantum, quid rei sit. § 72

Numquam cōgitāre possim. Nihil rem intellegō. § 141

Quī vocāris? Nōnne suspicere coepisti?

Nunc puer suspicit aliquid dē suā diē nātālī esse. Sed 15  
ut sorōrem vexet, dissimulat atque ita respondet:

Aemilius vocor. Quid novī in eō est?

Quem ad modum vestitus? Ecquid intellegis?

Togā vestitus sum, ut mōs est Rōmānīs.

Nōnne togā praetextā? Tuā causā gaudeō. 20.

Certē. Sed cūr meā causā gaudēs? § 59

Mihi dicendum esse putō. Nōnīs Maiīs annōs sēdecim complēveris. Tum vir esse incipiēs; togā virilī vestiēre. Tibi praenōmen dabitur itemque cognōmen. §§ 164 -ē-, 184

**Satin dictum?** = **satis-ne dictum (est)?** *has enough been said?*  
**Nōn-ne oblita ipsa es?** *Art thou not become forgetful thyself?*

**cogitation** = *act of thinking*      **commotion** = *'excitement* § 192

**certē** *yes*    **coep-istī** *hast begun*    **nātālī** *birth-*    **pos-si-m** *I could*  
**cūr?** *why?*    **incipi-ē-s** *will begin*    **praetexta** *bordered*    **quī?** *how?*

Subitō ā domū “Age Aemilia” vocātur. Puer manum sorōris prēndit. Iūctis manibus ad portam currunt et cum reliquīs in domum ingrediuntur. In peristylum itur. Tum Claudia cēnam parandam cūrat. Māter enim Claudiae  
 5 gentis est eīque nōmen Claudiae. Aemilia maior cum eā manet et eī auxilium fert. Aemilia minor patrem in ātrium sequitur. Aemilius, absentem sorōrem utī effugiat, Theodōrum sē sequī iubet atque in hortum prōcurrit. Inde casās servōrum petunt. Theodōrus cum Graecīs colloquitur.  
 10 Aemilius interim dē Brennō dicī exaudit. Ea rēs quae sit, mirātur neque tum quaerere potest, quod eōdem ferē tempore servus accurrit puerōs petītum atque ad cēnam vocātum.

Cum hōc servō in domum revertuntur, ubi exspectantī patri et sorōribus in ātriō occurrunt. Inde in triclinium itur.  
 15 Toris discumbitur. Theodōrō licet ad socium Aemilium accumbere. Lentē apud Rōmānōs cēnārī mōs est. Victus in pane, lacte, olivīs cōnsistit. Paulus et Claudia vīnum aquā miscent sed eius rei parcī sunt. Liberī nūllum omnīnō vīnum ad sē adferri patiuntur. §§ 137 a, 224

• 20 Dum cēnātur, Aemilia minor iterum mentiōnem facit dē Nōnis Maiīs. Frāter autem, cum exaudiat, dissimulat; cum Theodōrō graecē colloquitur. Pater filium laudat, quod tam bene loquitur tantamque operam studiīs dat.

current = *running, rushing*

parsimonious = *sparing*

casa -ae *hut* cēna -ae *dinner*

discumbitur *reclining is done,*  
*they take places* § 220, 5

ex-audi-t *over-hear-s*

ex-specta-nt-i (who is) *waiting*

iube-t *bid-s* lentē *slowly*

oc-curru-nt *come or run upon*

petu-nt *go to* torus *couch*

triclinium -i *dining couch(room)*

vocātum *to invite, summon* § 157



## A DINING ROOM

From a Pompeian wall painting



**A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE**

Vatican Museum, Rome

Portrait sculpture from a tombstone

Post cēnam omnēs ad focum congregantur. Aemilius autem commovēri vidētur; nam paululum temporis ibi morātus discēdit. Theodōrus sequitur. Domō ēgressī ad flūmen casāsque servōrum proficiscuntur. (Interim secunda ferē hōra noctis facta est.) Iam apud servōs movēri atque 5 ad flūmen concurrī cōspiciunt. Puerī nē videantur, umbrā sēsē tenent atque eō pervenire mātūrant. §§ 100, 137 b

Sunt in ripā flūminis laurī duae, quae arborēs tantum inter sē distant, quantum locī longitūdō hominis iacentis occupāre potest. Ubi eō ventum est, Aemilius videt Brennum, Gallum 10 dē quō suprā dictum est, humī iacēre, manibus ad alteram arborem, ad alteram pedibus vinctis. Duo Thraeces ingentī magnitūdine corporum eī verbera parant. §§ 62 g, 95 b

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Theodōrō signum dat atque eum ad sē vocat. Quid rei sit, ostendit. Quid suī cōsili sit, ēdocet. 15 Tum puerī sēsē recipiunt. Alter in alteram partem circuitū iter facit atque utrimque ad laurōs per tenebrās accēdunt. Primō verbere, quod tempus inter eōs rei agendaē convēnit, vincula Brennō laxant. Quī liberātus subitō praeter omnium opiniōnem ex humō exsilit. Thraeces timōre perterriti dif- 20 fugiunt.

**Morāt-us** (after) *having delayed*, (after he) *has delayed, waited*  
**ē-gress-ī** (after) *having stepped out*, (as soon as they) *get out*  
**tantum distant** *are as far (apart) — quantum locī as (can occupy)*  
*of space* **homin-is iacent-is** *of a man (who is) lying (down)* § 94  
**ēo ventum est** *arrival has been made or they have come there* § 106 c  
**quod tempus . . . convēnit** *which was agreed upon (as) the time*  
*rei agendaē of doing the thing, to act* **liberātus** (when) *set free*

**concurrī** *a rush (be) being made* **umbrā** *shadow* **verber-a** *lashes*  
**ex-silit** *leaps up, springs up* **utrimque** *from either side* § 119 f

Tum vērō puer nōn expectandum sibi statuit, dum, hāc rē Chilōnī nūntiātā, apud patrem causam dīcere cōgātur. Itaque, Brennō quam celerrimē potest ad sē vocātō, domum ire contendit Brennum sibi servum postulātūrus. Sed ubi 5 eō ventum est, verētur, nē patrī suā sponte persuādere nōn possit. Itaque Gallō foris relictō, sorōrem minōrem Aemiliam petit. Quid suī cōnsilī sit, celeriter ēdocet, eamque sēcum ad patrem dūcit. §§ 153, 196

Liberī in ātrium ingressī primum patrī subridēt neque 10 ēloquī audent; deinde quid rei gerātur, quaerentī Aemilia dīcit: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ab eō petere velint. Eā rē permissā, sorōrcula petit, utī hōc tempore frāter summā apud patrem gratiā sit; ipse, quam fidem postulet, eam frātrī det memor proximārum Nōnārum. § 107 c

15 Eā rē impetrātā, Aemilius ipse loquitur: sē proximīs Nōnis annōs sēdecim complētūrum; sī quā eō tempore apud patrem grātiā sit, illud ūnum sibi cōnfēstim concēdātur et Brennus Gallus sibi in servitūtem trādātur. Tum pater duōs filiōs amplexus sē eam rem libenter concēdere dicit. 20 Brennum ad sē vocārī iubet. Gallus Aemiliō trādītur et manūs novō dominō dare iussus libenter facit.

nōn expectandum (esse) that waiting ought not to be done § 106 d  
hāc rē nūntiātā (as soon as) this affair (had been) reported § 96  
dum . . . cōgātur (while he *be* compelled) till he is compelled § 224  
postulāt-ūr-us *intending to ask* sibi servum as a slave for him  
verētur nē possit *fears that he can* suā sponte of his own efforts  
verētur ut possit, verētur nē nōn possit *fears that he cannot*  
quaere-nt-ī to (him when he is) asking, to (him as he) asks (them)  
com-plēt-ūr-um (esse) (is) going to complete libenter gladly

foris outside geri be done, go on sub-ridēt stand smiling

Paulō post Chilō dominum petit: Brennum quoque, superbis Thraecibus, effūgisse. Cui Paulus respondet eum nō abesse atque filiō Aemiliō esse novāsque tabulās habēre. Aemilius statim Chilōnem apud patrem accūsāt, quod Graecus superbē et crudēliter servīs Gallis imperet. Tum dēnique pater sē ā filiis circumventum sentit; sed, quod eō tempore domi nihil molestiae fieri vult, filium tacēre iubet. Chilōnī autem suādet, ut praeterita condōnet atque monet ut in reliquum tempus omnis suspiciōnēs vitet. § 147 *a, e*

Postera nocte, dum cēnātur, tabellārius Rōmā venit. 10 Dicit sē ā M. Crassō vēnisse; sibi ad Paulum esse datās litterās, quās ipsi in manūs daret. Paulus litterās ad sē ferri iubet. Libenter accipit. Tabellāriō grātiās agit eumque respōsum exspectāre iubet. Tum linum incidit. Litterās aperit, apertāsque suis exspectantibus praelegit. 15 Crassī manū scriptae eiusdemque signum Paulus cognōscit. Sunt autem sine nōmine sed ita:

“S. v. b. e. e. v. Libentissimē lēgi tuās litterās in quibus dixisti Aemilium tuum iam sēdecim annōs proximīs Nōnīs complētūrum. Hodiē tam multa habeo quae scribam, 20 ut mihi exspectandus videatur adventus tuus. Licēbit, Aemilium, cum vir sit, ad mē dūcās.

D. Rōmae iv. Kal. Maiās, Iuliō et Caesare cōs.”

**filiō esse belongs to his son novās tabulās a clean sheet**

**S. v. b. e. e. v. = si valēs, bene est, ego valeō D. = datae § 98**

**unmolested = unannoyed**

**signet = ring, ring for sealing**

**preterit = gone by, past**

**inevitable = unavoidable**

**in (l. 9) for in-cidi-t cut-s**

**superb-ē haughti-ly si §§ 224-5**

**linum string, cord (of linen)**

**tabellārius letter carrier**



Suis subridēns Paulus tabulās cōnfestim ad sē ferrī iubet.  
Quibus lātis scribit ita :

“ L. Paulus Crassō suō S. D.

Nōs cotidiē tabellārīos dē Tusculānō expectāmus, quī  
5 sī vēnerint, erimus certiōrēs quandō nōbīs domō proficis-  
cendum sit. Quod spērō fore VIII. Īd. Mai. aut postridiē.  
Nisi quid accidit, in Tusculānum nōs ventūrōs prō certō  
putāmus a. d. iv. Īd. Sī quid erit impedimentī, faciēmus  
tē statim certiōrem. Ita postridiē eius diēi sub vesperum  
10 apud tē fore spērāmus. Datae Arpinō prīd. Kal.” § 113

His litterīs datīs atque profectō tabellārīō, Aemilia minor  
ex patre quaerit, quā dē causā Crassus scripserit litterās suās  
esse datās iv. K. Mai., Iūliō et Caesare cōsulis; num  
Bibulum esse mortuum? Cui pater: id per iocum factum.  
15 Quoniam ad hanc rem perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse  
vidētur dē eā breviter, quā rē facta sit, prōpōnere. Eō  
quidem tempore apud Rōmānōs longē nōbilissimus fuit  
Gnaeus Pompeius, ditissimus Mārcus Licinius Crassus, cuius  
ad Paulum litterās modo lēgimus, prūdentissimus autem  
20 Gaius Iūlius Caesar. §§ 114, 143

S. D. = salūtem dicit      quī sī vēnerint and if they come  
Num Bibulum esse mortuum Bibulus hasn't died (has he) § 145 c  
id per iocum factum (that) this was done by-way-of joking

accident = happening, befalling      imprudent = not looking ahead  
Dives = the rich man      ridiculous = causing laughter

aliēnum strange, out-of-order      profectō (as soon as he) set out  
cōnfestim, statim straightway      sub toward suis to his family  
fore = futūrum (esse) will be      tabulae wooden writing tablets  
lātus -a -um (when) brought      Tusculānum Tusculan villa

Priore annō cōsulātum petēns Caesar Lūcium Lucceium collegam sibi satis amicum fore spērāverat. Id sī fieret, optimātēs intellegēbant magnō cum periculō sibi futurum, ut ambō cōsulēs populāribus favērent. Itaque nē agrōs tōtius Ītaliae paulātim occupāre aut agrum pūblicum sibi colere aut prōvinciās spoliāre prohibērentur, M. Bibulum collegam Caesarī creārent. § 62 g

Interim Caesar societātem cum Pompeiō et Crassō fēcit, nē quid fieret in rē pūblicā, nisi quod hīs tribus viris placuisset. Ipse autem summā erat apud populum propter liberālitātem grātiā. Lēgem tulit, quā magna pars agri pūblicī populō distribuerētur. Huic lēgī optimātēs per M. Bibulum et. M. Catōnem resistēbant. Tum dēmum Caesar lēgem ad populum tulit. Et cum Bibulus iterum resistendī causā in forum vēnisset, ita expulsus est, utī reliquam annī partem domō sē tenēret. Postea Caesar sōlus omnia in rē pūblicā ad suum arbitrium administrāvit. 10 15

Paulus, hīs rēbus expositis, pollicētur filium Rōmam sēcum ductūrum. Hāc rē cōstitutā, Aemilius dicit sibi esse in animō socium Theodōrum ūnā dēducere. Rogat, utī patris voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Paulus respondet sibi placēre, sī Appolonī pāce fieri possit. § 220, 12

**nē occupāre prohibērentur** *that they might not be prevented from seizing* **ne quid fieret** *that nothing might take place (be done)*

**arbitrary** = *to one man's notion*

**pact** = *agreement*

**administrator** = *manager*

**legal** = *lawful*

**constitution** = *settled law*

**resistance** = *standing against*

**license** = *permission, allowing*

**spoliation** = *plundering, robbing*

**optimātēs** *aristocrats*

Cf. § 91

**populārēs** *popular party*

Kalendis Maiis mātūrius paulō quam necessitās temporis postulat, pueri Arpinum in lūdum proficiscuntur. Patri Appoloniō sēsē persuāsūrōs exīstimant, utī filium Rōmam ire patiātur. Primus Theodōrus patrem adit. Is ita cum  
 5 Appoloniō agit: paucis diēbus amicum suum Aemilium togam virilem esse sūmptūrum; quō factō, Rōmam in urbem iter cum patre Paulō esse factūrum; magnō sibi ūsuī fore, si ūnā cum eis iter fēcerit; itaque sē rogāre, utī patris voluntāte sibi iter unā facere liceat; id nōn suā sponte petere sed  
 10 rogātum atque sollicitātum ab Aemiliō. §§ 56, 3; 159 g

Ita puer instat. Prō hōc Aemilius facit verba: puerum multa latinē discere posse; magnō nōn solum huic sed sibi ipsi ūsuī fore, si puer ūnā iter fēcerit, quod tantō sibi auxiliō ad Graeca discenda sit; praetereā in itinere tam longō sēsē  
 15 amicum Theodōrum magnopere dēsiderātūrum. § 226

Appoloniū rem concēdendam putat, sed ut spatium intercēdere possit diemque utī ad dēliberandum sūmat, negat sē mōre Graecōrum posse id filiō dare. Dicit quamquam sibi grātissimum sit, ut Theodōrus Rōmam videat, tamen neque  
 20 sē velle neque mōrem Graecōrum pati ut suī molestiae cuiquam aut impedimētō sint. § 159 g

Huic cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possint, ad Paulum eunt ut eō dēprecātore ab Appoloniō inpetrent: Theodōrum patre invitō Rōmam iter facere nōn posse.

cui- to one	-quam any-	§ 119 c	invitus unwilling	iter trip
dēprecātor	(as an) intercessor		rogātus	(because he was) asked
dēsiderāre	miss	diēs time	suā sponte	of their own efforts
im-petr-e-nt	they may obtain		sūmat	may take § 159 e
in-stat	stands on, persists		suī	his (people)
inter-cēdere	inter-vene	§ 220, 8	sūmptūrum	(esse) will put on

Itaque Paulus rem suscipit atque ā magistrō impetrat, utī filium ūnā proficīscī patiātur. Eā rē cōstitutā, diem dicunt, quā diē Theodōrus ea, quae ad profectiōnem pertinent, in fundum ferat. Is diēs erat III. N. Mai. § 225

Pridiē Nōnās Maiās tabellārius Formiis venit, quī sē ā 5 M. Cicerōne cōsulārī missum esse dicit. Paulō trādit epistulam, in quā clārus ille Arpīnās scripsit sēsē IV. Nōn. Mai. in Tusculānum profectum; diē, quō dictum erat, amīcum Paulum filiumque libentissimē ibi exceptūrum.

Nōnis Maiis in peristylō domūs magna fit grātulātiō. 10 Familia omnis eō convenit iuvenem Lūcium Aemilium Paulum grātulātum, quod togam virilem sūmpserit. Et quoniam est eōdem praenōmine, quō pater, appellātus, licet appellētur L. Aemilius Paulus iunior; pater L. Paulus senior.

Servī omnēs dominō futūrō salutem dicunt. Chilōnī, 15 petente Aemiliō, mandātur, eō diē utī servīs quiēs ab labōre dētur. Idōneīs verbīs adulēscēns omnibūs grātiās agit, quod bonō in sē animō sint. Et cum advesperāscit Brennum ad sē vocat atque ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinent, comparārī iubet. § 57, "in" 20

Primā lūce domō proficīscuntur Paulus, Aemilius, Theodōrus, Brennus. Bīduō post, cum iter nōn intermittat, hōrā diēi circiter duodecimā Tusculum perveniunt. Inde in Tusculānum contendunt, ubi Cicerōnem eōs in hortīs exspectantem inveniunt. Ille Arpīnātis libentissimē suscipit. Pauli 25

diē, quō *on the day, on which* eōdem *by the same* . . . quō as § 115

juvenile = of young people

verbosity = wordiness

Arpīnās -ātis son of Arpinum § 45 profectum (esse) had started

iuniōris manum prēndit. In ātrium itur. Orātor adulēscem ad Quīntum frātre dēdūcit. Terentia coniūnx et filia Tullia Paulum salūtant. Dē Arpinātibus quaeritur. Dē Claudiā et filiabus exquiritur. § 137

5 Cicerō diū cum Paulō colloquitur. Fāta sua queritur. Rei pūblicae statum miserātur: Sēsē omninō ā rē pūblicā abesse; Graecis litteris operam dare; scripta sua pūblicāre. Aemilius sermōnem orātōris vōcēsque mirātur. Longum est omnia enārrāre. Illud ūnum satis erit dictum. Adulēs-  
10 centi librum orātiōnum, quās in Lūcium Catilinam habuerit, sēsē datūrum esse pollicētur. § 225

Posterō diē dē hōrā tertiā ē Tusculānō profecti viā Latinā ad urbem accēdunt et circiter merīdiem nōta moenia cōnspiciunt. Portā Capēnā urbem ingrediuntur. Aemiliō  
15 multa mīranda videntur. § 100

“Mirātur portās strepitumque et strāta viārum.”

In forum itur. Hinc tabernae, ubi librī, pictūrae, statuae exposita sunt; hinc servī et servae vēneunt. Ibi morātur ignōbile vulgus. Nam frūmentum pūblicum exspectant.  
20 Nihil agunt. Nihil student, nisi lūdīs et circō. Sēcūrī fātōrum rei pūblicae commūnisque salūtis praetereunt equitēs Rōmāni et patrēs cōnscripti; aliōrum enim obliti, suī memorēs sunt. Ūnus ex omnibus Gaius Caesar omnia

patrēs cōnscripti *enrolled fathers, senators (heads of families)*

commiserate = *take pity on*

sermon = *a talk, a speech*

con-iūnx *wife, husband*

porta *gate*

ex-quiri-tur *inquiries are made*

sēcūrī *careless, regardless*

lūd-i *game-s* memor *mindful*

strāt-a *pavement-s*

moen-ia *wall-s (of a city)*

taberna *shop* vēnīre *be sold*

nōn modo videt sed etiam perspicit plānēque sentit. Reliqui  
omnēs clārissimam fortunātissimamque rem publicam in  
exitium ruere patiuntur. §§ 107 c, 223 b

Inde mātūrius paulō, quam litteris dictum est, in Mārci  
Crassī domum veniunt. Ibi amīcē excipiuntur. Omnia ibi  
mīranda videntur; nam Crassus, cum multās domūs pos-  
sideat, ūnam sibi et eam magnificentissimam aedificāvit,  
eaeque rēgālī lūxū ōrnāta est. Paulus diū cum Crassō et  
Pūbliō filiō adulēscēte colloquitur. Ibi Aemilius dīcī audit  
Caesarem proximō annō Galliae prōvinciae prōcōsulem sē  
fore spērāre; Pūblium velle ūnā cum eō in prōvinciam ire;  
nihil omnīnō in senātū Caesarī impedimētō esse, ex quō  
M. Catōnem in carcerem dūcī iusserit; Bibulum semper ā  
senātū abesse; iam nōn Catōnem eō cōsiliō tōtum diem  
dicendō cōsumere, ut alicui lēgī resistat. 15

Postridiē eius diē Aemilius cum patre et M. Crassō in  
cūriam venit. Ibi patrēs cōscriptōs, summōs rei publi-  
cae virōs, videt atque loquī audit. Dē summā rē publicā  
dēliberātur. Multae ā Caesariānis dicuntur sententiae,  
quae optimātibus displicēre videntur. Hī saepe inter sēsē  
aspiciunt; plērumque silent; sibi expectandum statuunt,  
dum peractō cōsulātū Caesar in prōvinciam abierit. Hūc  
accēdit, quod lēgātī ab Ariovistō rēge Germānōrum Rōmam  
vērē societātem postulātum. Senātus hortante Caesare  
dēcernit, cōsulēs videant, utī ad Ariovistum mūnera amplē  
remittantur, ipse rēx atque amicus appellētur. § 137 b

Inde in M. Crassī domum proficiscuntur. Iam strepitum  
ac tumultum in viīs audiunt. Accelerant, ut quid rei sit

**cūria** -ae senate house

**ruere** rush

**sentire** understand

cognōscant. Incendium fieri sentiunt. Aedificium magnum  
 ārdet. Cuius sit, quaeritur. Crassus dominum arcessit.  
 Ārdēns parvō emit pretiō. Proxima quoque ab utrāque parte  
 aedificia parvō coëmit. Servōs suōs arcessit, ut ignis re-  
 5 stinguant aedificiumque reficiant, ut quam primum sibi  
 ūsui sit ad suam rem familiārem augendam. Nam Crassus  
 ab nōn nūllis dicitur avārus esse et pecūniae cupidus.

Miseri habitantēs correpta sua ex aedificiō in omnīs  
 partis efferunt aut fugā sibi salūtem petunt. Brevi tempore  
 10 servi arcessitī adsunt et magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū  
 operi ignis restinguendī instant.

Atque in eā rē omnium intentis animis, aliā ex parte latrō  
 impetum in Aemilium facit, sive spoliandī causā seu quod  
 magis vērī simile est abdūcendī et retinendī, dum pater  
 15 magnā redimat pecūniā. At Brennus celeriter latrōnem  
 brachiō arripit ac longē per terram sternit. Quod nisi  
 fidissimus adfuisset Gallus neque eum prōpulsasset, nēquā-  
 quam facile dicī potest, quid dē Aemiliō factum esset. § 119 b

Posterō diē Paulus, quod ipse paucōs diēs apud Crassum  
 20 morātūrus erat, Theodōrum et Aemilium cum Brennō domum  
 remittit, nē plūs temporis studiōrum dīmittant. Illi autem,  
 multis rēbus et in itinere et in urbe cognitis, libenter Arpinum  
 ad studia sua revertuntur.

avarice = *greediness*

edification = *up-building*

arcessere *summon*

bracchium *arm*

ārdē-ns (while it is) *burn-ing*

cor-repta (that were) *snatched*

coëmere *buy up* instāre *be at*

incendiary = *starter of fires*

pecuniary = *of money, monetary*

latrō *brigand* morārī *stay* § 191

quam primum *as soon as possible*

rēs familiāris *estate, property*

red-imere *ransom* §§ 219, 4; 220,

sternere *lay low*

[13

## ARMINIUS PUER SUĒBUS

Rhēnus antiquitus Gallōs ā Germānis dividēbat. Galli cis Rhēnum, plērique Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Hōrum magna pars finium ex silvis ac palūdibus cōnstābat; illi agrōs ferācis possidēbant. Antīquī Galli hūmāniō-<sup>5</sup> rēs erant; nam privātōs ac sēparātōs agrōs habēbant. Frūmentō, lacte, pecore vivēbant. Maximam partem agricultūrā, parum vēnātiōne ad vivendum nītēbantur.

Germānī antīquī ferī ac barbarī erant neque multum frūmentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivēbant. 10 Parum agricultūrae studēbant multumque erant in vēnātiōnibus. Privāti ac sēparāti agrī apud eōs nihil erat. Ita sēdis fixās nōn habēbant. Lātē quotannis vagābantur. Meliōra semper petēbant loca, ubi ovēs, iūmenta, bovēs pāscerentur. Potentiōrēs gentēs optimum occupābant 15 agrum. Īnfirmiōrēs finibus expellēbantur. §§ 84, 97

His rēbus factum est, utī paucis annis ante Caesaris in Galliam adventum quaedam Suēbōrum nātiōnēs ad superiōrem partem flūminis Dānubī accēderent. (Eōrum gēns erat longē maxima et potentissima Germānōrum omnium.) Paucī 20 ex Suēbis id flūmen trānsiēre nōn longē ab eō locō ubi ex monte Abnobā prōfluit. In his erat princeps Nasua nōmine.

**ameliorate** = *make better*

**antiquity** = *ancientness, oldness*

**optimistic** = *expecting the best*

**sediment** = *settlings*

**ferāx** *rich* **factum est** *happened*

**ferus** *wild* **gēns, gentis** *tribe*

**hūmānus -a -um** *civilized*

**iūmenta** *yoke animals* **-itus -ly**

**lac, lactis** *milk* **lāt-ē** *wide-ly*

**nītē-ba-ntur** *depend-ed, lean-ed*

**ovis** *sheep* **palūs** *marsh* § 43

**pāsce-re-nt-ur** *might feed* § 181 b

**quotannis** *every year, yearly*

**vēnātiō -ōnis** *a hunt, hunting*



Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum Nasua domiciliō sibi ac sēdibus suis dēlēgerat. Flūmen est Isāra, quod ex Alpibus ā merīdiē in Dānubium influit. Collis ā mediō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Isāram vergēbat. Ab eō 5 flūmine, nōn magnā interiectā plānitīē, pariter acclivis collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius. Uterque collis ab superiōre parte silvestris. Hic tōtus locus altissimīs montibus undique continēbātur. Hinc atque hinc secundum flūmen loca erant aperta, quō pāstōrēs bovēs et iūmenta 10 agerent. §§ 119 *d, f*, 159 *g*

In ripā eius flūminis in umbrā arborum magnārum Nasua casam aedificārat humilem, proximō annō relinquendam, quod nōn longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licēbat sēdēsque quotannis erant mūtandae.

15 Eō quī secūtus est autumnō, quī fuit annus Mārcō Mes-sālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus, paulō post merīdiem diēi clārī atque serēnī, puer ūndecim annōrum, flāvō capillō, oculis caeruleis, cervi pelle vestītus prō casā Nasuae stābat. Paulō robustior prō aetāte erat; namque nōbīs quīndecim 20 esse annōrum vīsus esset; tantā enim statūrā, tantīs membris, tantāque erat magnitūdine corporis.

Pater in vēnātiōne aberat. Servus aderat nūllus. Māter intrā casam versābātur. Puer in aliquam rem intentus vidētur. Omnia paulisper apud casam lūstrat. Patris vēstigia 25 in harēnā cōspicit. Cupit ipse vēnātum ire.

de-clivity = *down-sloping*

nascent = *being born, rising*

aequāl-iter *even-ly* aetās *age*

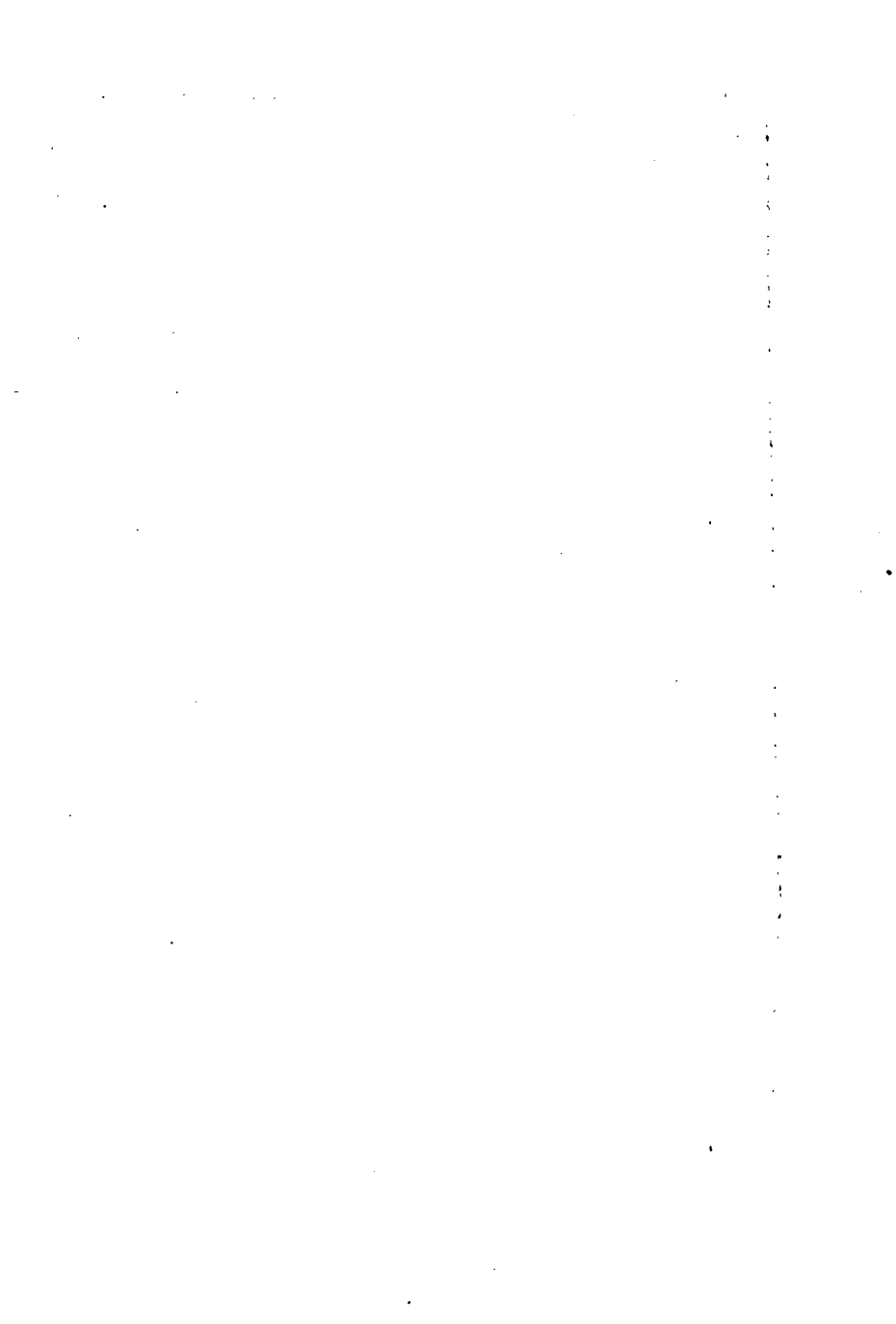
capillus *hair* cervus *buck*

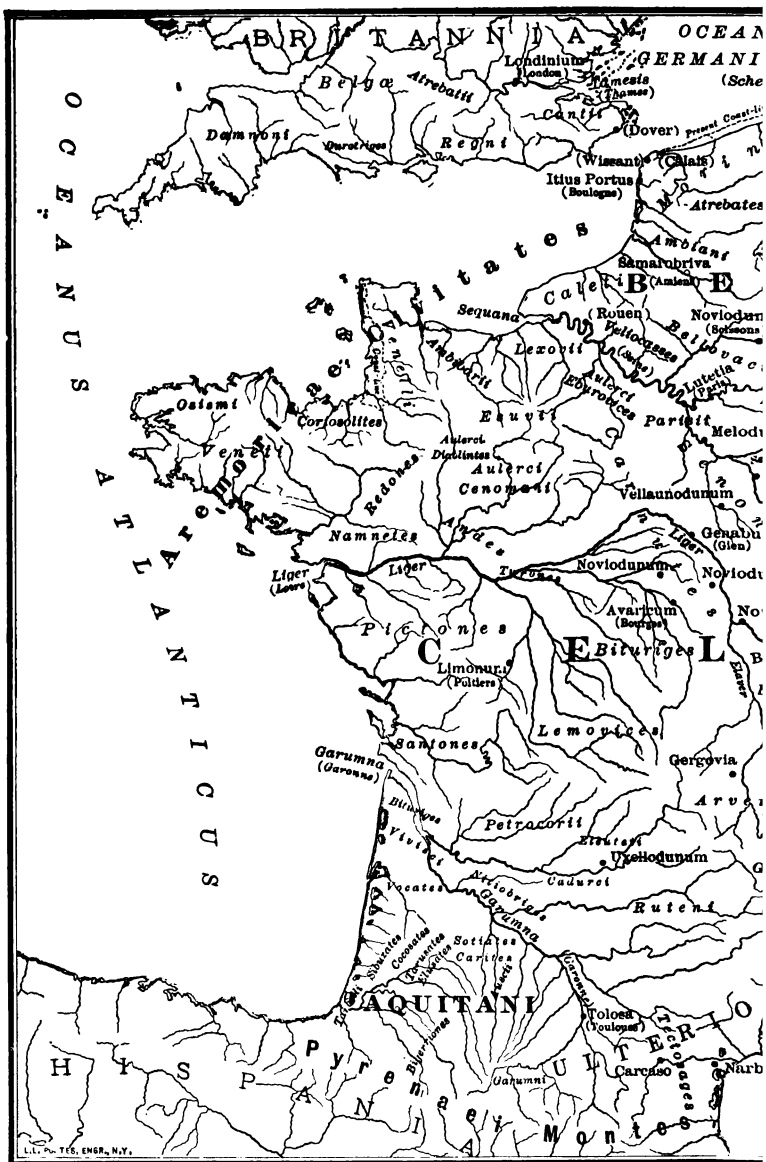
relinquishing = *abandoning*

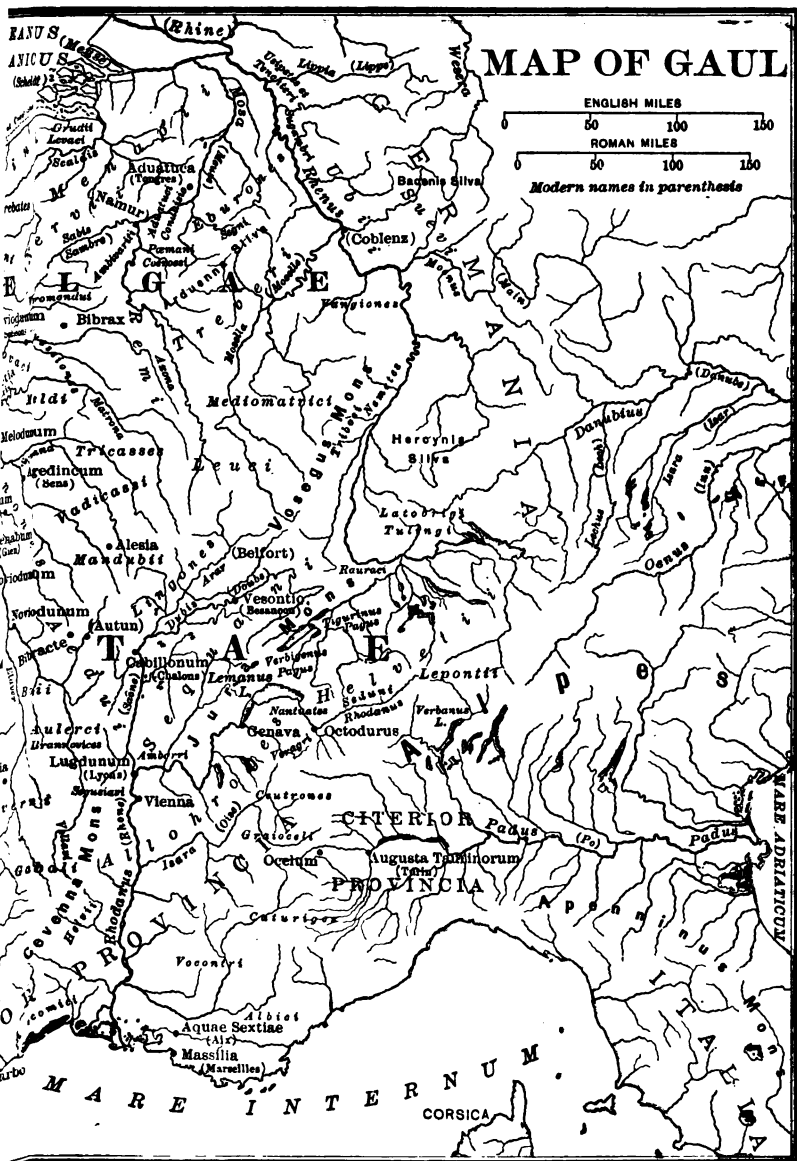
vestige = *trace, track* § 77 *b*

harēna *sand* lūstrat *surveys*

pellis *skin* quō *where-to* § 119 *d*









Subitō pharetram cum sagittis rapit. Gladium puerilem petit. Haec cingitur arma. Tum sinistrā manū arcum, dextrā duās hastās rūdis corripit. Ad casae portam respiciēns adversō flūmine proficiscitur sēque celeriter ē cōnspectū effert. § 181 b 5

Cum Arminius (nam puerō nōmen erat Arminiō) circiter ducentōs passūs ā casā prōgressus esset, fēminea vōx repente ā tergō sonat. Linguā raucā nōbisque aliēnā “Age Arminī ” vocātur. Prōspectus impediēbātur arboribus, quae inter puerum atque mātrem intercēdēbant. Ille cōnsistit. Re-10 spicit. Dum dubitat quid faciendum sit, iterum maiōre vōce “ Arminī ” clāmātur.

Arminius respondendum nōn exīstimāvit neque mātři concēdendum putāvit. Duōbus ante diēbus pater Nasua domō exierat. Sē domī relictum indignābātur. Nōn dubium erat 15 quī illō ipsō diē pater domum rediret. Cupiēbat cum patre redeunte in viā congredi et cum eō reverti. § 220, 13

His rēbus adductus nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum armīs dēsiderātis atque inventis vēstigiis mātēr cōnsequerētur sēcumque domum redūceret. Itaque cōstituit opti-20 mum esse quam celerrimē potuit prōcurrere. §§ 69, 90

Eā rē cōstitutā, quam maximō poterat cursū prōvolāvit et circiter quīngentōs passūs prōgressus cum lupō congreditur. Quī cum fugere nōllet, puer ei sagittam in apertās faucis mīsīt. Fera irāta impetum in puerum facit atque 25 iterum vulnerāta hastā cōnficitur.

adversō flūmine	upstream	§ 96	indignābātur	was irritated
arcus	bow	adductus	induced	pharetra
fera	wild (beast)	lupus	wolf	red-i-re-t
hasta	spear	inventis	found	would re-turn
			sagitta	arrow

Intereā dēsiderātis armīs māter filium vērātūm proficisci sēnsit, et verita nē cum feris congregērētur, servōs vocat et subsequi iubet. Ipsa vehementer commōta praecurrit et prīma filium, vixdum lupō interfectō, est cōsecūta. Simul puerum incūsāt, quod sōlus exisset, et glōriātur, quod tam parātus esset ad periculum subeundum.

Cum autem servōrum auxiliō puer lupō pellem dētraheret, vōcēs hominum pedumque sonitus audiuntur. Nasua cum suis accēdit. Duo magna cervōrum corpora reportābant.  
 10 Erant praetereā trēs hominēs Nōrici, quī dicēbantur cum eis in vērātiōne armīs congressi pugnam commisisse ac superāti esse. Hōs captōs manibus post tergum vinctis trahēbant.

Nasuae cum id nūntiātum esset, uti puer lupum sōlus interfēcisset, factum magnopere laudat. Socii autem, magnā  
 15 grātulātiōne factā, puerum altē sustulērunt atque in casam patris reportārunt.

Ubi eō ventum est, Nasua sociōs dimittit. Duōs ex captivis servis cūstōdiendōs trādit. Principem autem captivōrum sēcum retinet et in casam dūcit. Is enim rēgiō  
 20 erat vultū nōbilibusque genere nātus. Nasua eum suō beneficiō habēre obstrictum volēbat. Itaque vincula ei laxat, victum commūnicat.

§§ 5 f, 130, 134 b

Tum pater, māter, filius colloqui incipiunt. Dē vērātiōne quaeritur ac respondētur. Dē fili virtūte praedicā-  
 25 tur. Ā captivō etiam quaeritur. Ille primō nihil respondēre sed tacitus permanēre. Post paulō autem, cum eōs nōn esse inimicō in sē animō vīdisset, loqui coepit, et quō amplius loquēbātur, eō liberior atque audācius dicēbat.

predication = statement      tacitly = quietly      uti (line 13) how

Tum dēnum Nasuam in lūdum prōvocat. Dicit aleā cōnsulerent, utrum ipse in servitūte manēret an sē in libertātem vindicāret. Nasua assēnsit, et aleā semel atque iterum iactā, Nōricus nōn solum suam sed etiam suōrum libertātem cōnsequitur. Suēbī dextram prēndit. Fidem inter sē dant. 5

Rūrsus in lūdum prōvocātur. Primō recūsātur, quō minus dē libertāte contenderētur. Tum dēnique homō Nōricus libertātem, filium Suēbus in lūdō pōnit. Semel atque ultimum iaci convenit. Iacitur. Iterum Nōricus vincit. Iterum hominēs fidem inter sē dant. Arminius vocātur. 10 Dēditur. Dominō manūs dare iubētur. Servus est factus.

Posterō diē Voccio (Nōricō enim nōmen erat Voccionī) domum suam reverti cōstituit. Suos ad sē vocat et ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparārī iubet. Iūmenta emit. Frūmentum flāgitat, ut cōpia cibī in itinere sup- 15 peteret. Trium enim diērum molitis cibariis opus fuit.

Miser Arminius in cōspectū servōrum, patrum, amicōrum in servitūtem abdūcitur. Immōtus tamen, fortis et aequō animō mōre suōrum condiōnem accipit.

“Spem vultū simulat, premit altum corde dolōrem.” 20 Dominō servīre incipit. Hūc illūc currit. Imperāta facit.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, hōrā diēi circiter quārtā proficiscuntur, et magnīs itineribus Nōreiam contendunt. Tertiō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, eō perveniunt. 25

cordially = *heartily*

§ 21 convenient = *agreeable* § 220, 4

alea die, dice	dēnique at last	premit represses, conceals
iaci be thrown	imperāta orders	simulat pretends
opus fuit there was need (of)		spem hope
		utrum whether
		vultus fac



Cum ad Nōreiam accēderent, subitō magnum strepitum atque tumultum audiērunt. In servum incidērunt, quī auxili causā veniēbat. Dixit multitudinem Boiōrum ex finibus exisse. Hōs repente in agrum Nōricum praedandī causā vēnisse et oppidum Nōreiam oppugnāre.

Quod ubi Vocciō audiit, alium in aliam partem mittit. Ex agrīs hominēs convocārī atque in ūnum locum convenīre iubet. Quōrum magnō numerō coāctō atque armātō, oppidum circumveniunt. Undique fit in Boiōs impetus.

10 Hostēs autem ancipiti periculō perterriti terga vertunt ac per ordinēs Nōricōrum ērumpunt sēque fugae mandant atque in proximās silvās abdunt. Paucīs diēbus discēdunt et eō tōtō annō vagātī ad Helvētiōs perveniunt. Hī Boiōs amīcē suscipiunt et sociōs sibi asciscunt.

15 Post hostium fugam statim soror Nōrica ad rēgem Vocciōnem vēnit grātulātum, quod tam opportūnō adventū rediit hostisque tam necessariō tempore in fugam dedit. Nōricī rēgem suum magnā grātulātiōne factā suscēpērunt. In primis rēgis soror multa dē errōre frātris quaerit. Cui Vocciō  
20 Arminium mōre suōrum statim in servitūtem dat, quod servōs aleā acceptōs diūtius retinēre nōn placēbat. Ita Nōricae servus est factus. Puer autem in diēs dominam benignam amāre discēbat eīque bene servīre cupiēbat.

Proximā aestāte multī barbarī finibus ab Suēbīs expulsī  
25 sunt et magnā cum multitudine hominum in Nōricōs vēnērunt. Ibi agrōs vāstābant, aedificia incendēbant, vicōs cēpē-

circum-vent = *come-around*

e-ruption = *a breaking out*

anceps double abdunt conceal

depredations = *plunderings*

association = *alliance* § 220, 2

benignus -a -um *kind, generous*

runt, multōs ex incolis in servitūtem abdūxērunt. Extrēmō tamen autumnō proeliō superātī sunt et primā hieme cum omnibus cōpiis discessērunt sēque trāns flūmen Dānubium recēpērunt.

Eā quae secūta est aestāte, quī fuit annus Gaiō Caesare 5 et Mārcō Bibulō cōsulibus, Vocciō cum Suēbīs pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre volēbat, nē Boii aliique barbarī saepius impetum in suōs finis facere audērent.

Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī societātem cum eō peterent atque postulārent, utī Suēbōs 10 sibi conciliāret; eiūque sorōrem suam Nōricam in mātrimōnium dat — multī enim Suēbī Ariovistum in Galliam sequēbantur; ipse uxōrem ex Suēbis habēbat, et propter eam affinitātem et fortunam suam magnā erat grātiā apud Suēbōs et aliōs Germānōs. Itaque lēgātī, Nōrica et Arminius 15 proficiscuntur cum mercātōribus, quī iter in Galliam factūrī erant sēque eōs ad Ariovistum dēductūrōs pollicitī sunt.

Galliae tōtius factiōnēs erant duae. Alterius principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī inter sē multōs annōs contendēbant. Sēquanī, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō erant, 20 sēsē cum Arvernīs coniūnxērunt.

§ 159 g

Ubi neutrī victōriam reportant, factum est ut Sēquanī arcesserent Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim duce Ariovistō Rhēnum trānsiērunt et Arvernīs subsidiō vērērunt. Germānō- 25

*Arvernīs subsidiō vērērunt came for aid to the Arvernians*

*Quam ob rem = et ob eam rem and for this reason, and therefore placuit ei it suited him, it was decided by him, he decided* § 133

*affinity = relation (by marriage) mercantile = trading*

*reconcile = make friendly*

*uxorious = fond of a wife*

rum auxiliō Aeduī victī et coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare et iūrāre sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum imperiō essent. §§ 154, 229

5 Sed Ariovistus, hōc bellō cōfectō, domum reversus nōn est. Plūris autem Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcēbat. In Sēquanīs cōnsēdit. Tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit. Locum ac sēdis sibi sociisque parāvit. Sēquanī ob eam rem incitātī armīs iūs suum exsequī cōn-  
10 tur. Sociōs arcessunt et magnam multitudinem cōgunt.

Hae rēs dum apud Sēquanōs geruntur, cum omnibus cōpiīs suis Ariovistus in silvās sē ac palūdēs recēpit. Ibi multōs mēnsis sē castris tenēbat neque suī potestātem fēcit. Galli exspectandō fatigātī dē pugnā dēspērānt et domum discēdere  
15 coepērunt. Quōs Germānī dispersōs adortī vicērunt. § 107

Hōc proeliō factō, Ariovistus magnōs sibi spīritūs magnamque arrogantiam sūmere et superbē crūdēliterque imperāre coepit. Omnia ferē oppida Sēquanōrum occupāvit. Liberōs nōbilissimōrum obsidēs poscēbat. Dē hīs, sī qua  
20 rēs nōn ad voluntātem suam facta sit, summum supplicium sūmēbat. Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs erant perferendī, neque tamen querī neque auxilium implōrāre audēbant. § 106 b

Ubi in Sēquanōs ventum est, rēx Ariovistus lēgātōs Nōricōs honōrificentissimē suscepit. Nōricam in mātri-  
25 mōnium dūxit. Pācem cum rēge Vocciōne et amicitiam cōnfirmāvit. Lēgātōs domum dimisit. Uxōrī novae permisit, utī Arminium servum retinēret. Quī brevī tempore magnā

adortī surprising coāctī forced gerī go on exsequī enforce  
cōpiae troops fēcit made, gave suī potestātem a chance at him

erat grātiā apud Suēbam uxōrem et filiam novem annōrum, cui nōmen erat Velaeda. Multōs etiam amicōs inveniēbat in servīs rēgis, et nōnnūllōs et Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum obsidēs, quī apud Ariovistum erant, cognōvit. § 105

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quō statū rēs in Galliā sē habē-<sup>5</sup> rent, sic reperiēbat: tōtius Galliae factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs; hōs omnī tempore dē potentātū inter sē contendere; Sēquanōs, quī sēsē cum Arvernīs coniūnxissent, auxilium ā Germānīs implōrāsse; hōrum primō circiter milia quindecim<sup>10</sup> Rhēnum trānsisse; Germānōrum auxiliō Aeduōs victōs et co-actōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare et civitātem iūre iūrandō obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum imperiō essent; Aeduōs omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum<sup>15</sup> āmisisse; sed peius Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus domum reversus nōn esset et tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvisset ibique cōnsēdisset. § 56, 3

Cum autem ex eīs quaereret, quae genera Germānōrum et quam multī in Galliā essent, ita repperit: primō Suēbōs<sup>20</sup> et Marcomannōs Sēquanīs auxiliō vēnisse; postea, cum Aeduīs victīs civitātēs Galliae Ariovistō bellum inferrent et ad eum oppugnandum vēnissent, trāductōs esse plūris; nunc esse in Galliā ad numerum c. milium; hōs sēparātīm cōnsēdisse atque eīs generātīm esse datōs agrōs, Marcoman-<sup>25</sup> nīs, Tribocīs, Vangionibus, Nemetibus, Sedusiis, Suēbīs.

**generātīm** *by tribes or nations*  
**iūre iūrandō** *by a right (that is)*  
*to be sworn, by oath*

**potentātus -ūs** *power, supremacy*  
**principātus -ūs** *leadership* § 81  
**rēs sē habent** *matters stand*

Haec omnia Gallōs molestē ferre ac verēri, nē omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent et omnis Gallōs finibus expellere cōnārentur; nam hōrum meliōrem esse quam illōrum agrum.

Dē Rōmānīs quoque pauca interdum audiēbat; populum  
 5 Rōmānum tōtius orbis terrārum firmissimum esse ac potentissimum; magnam et superbam habēre urbem, quae Rōma appellārētur; hanc maximam et flōrentissimam tōtius orbis aestimāri; Rōmānīs rēgem esse nūllum; duōs magistrātūs creārī annuōs, quōs cōsulēs appellārent; iam Ariovistum  
 10 lēgātōs Rōmam ad senātum mīsisse, quī et mūnera ferrent et societātem cum populō Rōmānō peterent. § 217 f

Rōmānī saepe numerō cum Gallis bellum gesserant, cum finibus suis eōs aut prohibērent aut expellerent, eōsque plērumque superārant. Antīquitus enim Galli semel atque  
 15 iterum in Rōmānōrum finis impetum fēcērant atque etiam ad Rōmam accesserant; et quī ex Gallis in Ītaliā cōnsēderant et ab utrāque parte flūminis Padī vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, eī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant atque sēsē cum Hannibale, ācerrimō acerbissimōque Rōmānōrum  
 20 hoste, coniūnxerant.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat, utī eae civitatēs Galliae, quae proximae essent, paulātīm ā Rōmānīs victae et in prōvinciam redactae sint. Hanc appellābant ‘prōvinciam nostram’ sive ‘Galliam prōvinciam.’ Quae pars prōvinciae citrā Alpīs  
 25 posita est, eam ‘citeriōrem prōvinciam’ sive ‘citeriōrem Galliam’ vocābant, et quae pars ultrā Alpīs posita est, eam ‘ulteriōrem prōvinciam’ sive ‘ulteriōrem Galliam’ dicēbant. §§ 74, 5; 152

*citerior nearer, hither*

*remunerate = return gifts, repay*

Ibi collocābant legiōnēs, quae praesidiō essent cīvibus Rōmānīs, quī hīs in locīs versārentur. Ibi dispōnēbant praesidia, quae barbarōs intrā finis Rōmānōrum ingredi prohibērent. Ibi prōcōnsul imperium tenēbat, dēlēctūs habēbat, tōtī prōvinciae militēs imperābat. Eō mercātōrēs 5 cum mercibus proficiscēbantur atque inde comēbant ad eās cīvitātēs, quae sub septentrionibus positae sunt. § 119 d

Paucis diēbus quibus in castra Suēbōrum vēnit, Arminius contentus esse coepit. Omnis ferē prō amicis habēbat. Omnibus praeter Ariovistum cupiēbat. Homō enim erat barbarus, crūdēlis, irācundus. Ab initiō puer eius imperia vix sustinēbat. Quō amplius eum cognōscēbat, eō magis ōderat. Quod tamen tacēbat, neque cuiquam dicēbat, et aliquā rē intentus in officiis semper versābatur.

Quā rē inductus rēx nōn inimicō erat in puerum animō; 15 namque eum tacēre vidēbat neque aliis sēsē antepōnere intellegēbat. Fortem, modestum, diligentem esse sciēbat. Et eius summum in utramque uxōrem studium animadverterat, summam in Velaedam voluntātem, fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat. 20

His rēbus fiēbat, utī Arminius interdum cūstōs pōnerētur pueris Aeduīs et Sēquanīs, quī obsidēs in castris tenēbantur. Post paulō, ubi bonō in eōs animō est cognitus, fiēbat, utī eum magis prō amicō quam cūstōde aestimārent.

quae . . . essent = ut eae . . . essent that they might be § 148 g  
praesidiō cīvibus (for) a defense (protection) to the citizens § 73 e  
prō amicis habēbat took for friends, regarded as friends § 58

ire = anger, wrath fortitude = bravery odious = hateful  
custodian = guardian merchant = trader officious = dutiful  
com-meābant went and came dis-pōnere put at intervals

Et in primis obses Aeduus, puer quattuordecim annorum, nōmine Litaviccus ei maximam fidem habēbat.

Ex eō Arminius multa dē Aeduīs, dē Sēquanīs et dē aliīs civitatibus Galliae cognōvit: apud Gallōs quīque esse genera hominum; hōrum ūnum genus esse druidum, quī sacris praeessent; alterum nōbilium, quī essent optimātēs Gallōrum ac plērumque agrī tenērent; in hīs esse principēs civitātum, ē quibus magistrātūs creārentur et quidam dēligerentur ad summās rēs cōficiendās; tertium genus esse equitum, quī plērumque in bellis versārentur; quārtum genus esse plēbis, — partim quī sēsē divitum et potentiōrum amicitiae dēdunt et ā patrōnis ‘clientēs’ appellantur, partim quī aere aliēnō oppressi ‘obaerātī’ dicuntur; quōrum condiciō paulō est suprā servitūtem; — quīntum genus esse servōrum, quōrum plērique essent, quī bellō capti sint.

Multis ante annīs Arvernōs cum populō Rōmānō bellum gessisse ac superātōs esse; postea autem populum Rōmānum pācem cum eis fēcisse neque stipendium imposuisse atque eōs lēgibus suis ūtī voluisse; Rōmānōs enim rārō umquam exercitum ē finibus Galliae prōvinciae ēducere et Gallōs liberōs esse velle; quā ex rē fieri, utī Galli multō minus imperium Rōmānōrum quam Germānōrum timēre dēbērent.

Aeduōs populi Rōmānī esse amicōs, saepe numerō frātēs et cōsanguineōs ā senātū appellātōs; eōs rēgem nūllum habēre sed magistrātum creāre annuum, quem ‘vergobretum’ appellārent; eius imperium summum neque firmissimum esse,

sacris (Dat.) praeessent were to take charge of sacrifices. § 220, 11

aes aliēnum another's money

ob-aerātī held for debt, debtors

druid-um of druids (priests)

stipendium tribute, tax

quod Dumnorix, frāter Divitiāci, quī paucis ante annis principātum in civitate obtinuerat, facultatēs magnās ad largiendum habēret; hunc nōn solum domi sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū alere et circum sē habēre; saepe plēbem 5 dēterrere, nē imperiis oboedirent; quod eius auctōritās apud plēbem privātim plūs valeret quam ipsōrum magistrātuum; ipsum rēgnī obtinendī cupidum esse; quā cupiditate inductum, nisi quid accideret, rēgnum iam occupātūrum.

Dixit idem Litaviccus apud Sēquanōs fuisse rēgem patris 10 suī memoriā hominem potentissimum, Catamantaloedem; rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuisse et ā senātū populi Rōmāni amicum appellātum esse; nunc autem apud Sēquanōs longē nōbilissimum esse et ditissimum Casticum, Catamantaloedis filium; rēgnum obtinēre cupere neque 15 occupāre audere propter inimiciās principum Sēquanōrum et Ariovisti auctōritatem.

Paucis post diēbus lēgātī, quōs Rōmam miserat, ad Ariovistum reversi sunt: senātum mūnera accēpisse et petente Gaiō Caesare, quī eō tempore erat cōsul, Ariovistum rēgem 20 atque amicum appellāsse. Quibus rēbus Ariovistus magnopere sublātus, praesentibus obsidibus Aeduīs et Sēquanis, summopere glōriātus est atque ita locūtus: sē quoque frātre[m] esse Rōmānōrum; Caesarem, quī proximō annō prōcōsul imperium Galliae prōvinciae obtentūrus esset, sibi 25 suisque amicissimum esse.

§§. 100, 228-9

Eō quod secūtum est vēre, quī fuit annus Lūciō Pisōne, Aulō Gabiniō cōsulibus, crēbrī rumōrēs ad Ariovistum

*alere feed    audere dare    sūmptus expense    sub-lātus puffed up*



afferēbantur, itemque per mercātōrēs certior factus est Helvētiūs esse in animō dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīre. Exeundi hās esse causās; primum, quod prō multitudine hominum angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrārentur; deinde quod ab nōn nullis principibus sollicitārentur. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Ariovistus quōsdam ex Aeduīs et Sēquanīs vidērī nōn inimicō in Helvētiōs animō esse.

His rēbus commōtus Ariovistus explōrātōrēs in diversās civitatēs Galliae dimisit. Eis negōtium dat, utī ea quae  
 10 apud eas gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Eōdem ferē tempore lēgātōs trāns Rhēnum in Germaniam mittit; sed quā dē causā aut quam in partem iter factūrī essent, Arminius nōn cognōvit. § 226

Itaque ad obsidēs Aeduōrum sē recēpit. Litavicum  
 15 ad sē vocat. Quaerit ex sōlō quibus dē causis ē finibus Helvētiū exitūrī essent, quī hominēs essent, et quā rē Ariovistus tantō opere commovērētur. Aeduus respondit: his paucis annis bellō frāctōs esse Aeduōs, Arvernōs, Sēquanōs; nōn esse dubium, quīn eō tempore tōtius Galliae  
 20 plūrimum Helvētiū possent; bellandī cupidōs esse; reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdere; magnō dolōre affici, quod angustōs finis habērent; montibus enim altis aut lātis flūminibus undique continērī; his rēbus prohibērī, quō minus aut lātē vagārentur aut facile finitimis bellum inferrent.

Eis negōtium dat utī assigns them the task that (they find out).

commotion = <i>agitation</i>	dubious = <i>doubtful</i>	§ 153
fractured = <i>broken</i>	query = <i>seek to know, ask</i>	§ 147 e
angustus -a -um <i>narrow</i>	plūrimum possent <i>were most able</i>	
dīmittere <i>send away, let go</i>	prae-cēdere <i>pre-cede, excel</i>	§ 220, 11

Omnem civitatem Helveticam in quattuor pagos divisam esse; horum unum pagum Tigurinum appellari; Tigurinos patrum suorum memoriam domo exisse; bellum cum populo Romanorum gessisse; Lucium Cassium consulem occidisse exercitumque eius pepulisse et sub iugum misisse; hac victoriam Helvetios insolenter gloriarum et virtutem Romanorum despicere consuesse.

§ 60

Ubi Arminius ex eo quaesivit, quis rex apud Helvetios esset, Litavicus ita respondit: eos regem habere nullum; Gallios enim libertatem maximam aestimare; cupere se ipsos creare magistratus, qui sibi praesent; reges habere nolle; ipsum nomen regis vereri atque odisse.

§§ 128, 130

Potentiores tamen vulgo regna occupare conari; qui cum ob eam rem alias domo expellantur, alias a civitate interficiantur (apud Helvetios enim poena erat ut damnati igni cremarentur), tamen hoc conatum non desistere; omnis sibi conciliare; domum coniurare; societates cum principibus aliarum civitatum petere. Atque eo sorores, filias, propinquas suas nuptum collocare.

§ 157

In hoc genere fuisse Celtillum Arvernum, qui victis Aeduus, principatum totius Galliae obtineret, Orgetorigem Helvetium, Casticum Sequanum, Dumnorigem Aeduum, quorum primus ab Arvernibus interfectus esset, alter timore poenae perterritus sibi mortem conscivisset, duo reliqui etiam nunc in spem regni obtinendi venirent.

25

belli-gerent = *making war*odium = *hatred, dislike*cremate = *burn up*penalty = *punishment*nuptials = *marriage ceremonies*vulgar = *of the crowd*consciscere *take upon*iugum *yoke*propinqua *relative*

Īdem dixit: Helvētiōs virtūte omnibus praestāre; Ariovistum hoc intellegere atque timēre, nē Sēquanōs dēfēsum et Germānōs oppugnātum venirent; — namque bienniō ante Orgetorix coniūratiōnem nōbīlium domi fēcērat et Helvētiis  
 5 persuāsum habēbat, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent, tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent, imperiōque potirentur et domiciliō maximē frūmentāria loca occupārent. § 182 b

His rēbus adducti Helvētīi cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmenta et carrōs  
 10 coēmere, sēmentis quam maximās facere, frūmenti quam maximam cōpiam parāre, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt. Profectiōnem in tertium annum lēge cōfirmant. §§ 129, 158

15 Orgetorix sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitātēs suscipit. In Sēquanōs et Aeduōs venit pācem et amicitiam cōfirmātum, societātem petītum, auxilium sibi rogātum. Dumnorīgī filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Cum eō et cum Casticō societātem suō nōmine facit. Utrique persuādet, ut rēgnum  
 20 in civitāte suā occupāret. Illis probat facile esse cōnāta perficere. Dicit sēsē illis, illōs sibi rēgnum cōpiis atque exercitū esse conciliātūrōs. Hāc ōratiōne adducti fidem et iūs iūrandum inter sē dant, et rēgnō occupātō tōtius Galliae imperiō sēsē potiri posse spērant. § § 108 b, 147

biennial = *two-yearly* § 67 copious = *well supplied*  
 conciliation = *winning over* probable = *to be proven*

cōnāt-a *things attempted* § 100 lēgatiō *mission* lēgātus *envoy*  
 cōn-firmāre *establish, assure* op-pugnāt-um (§157 b) *to at-tack*  
 dūcere *lead, draw, decide* potiri *get* prae-stāre *excel*

His rēbus cōfectis, index ad magistrātūs Helvetiōrum vēnit. Dicit alia domī, alia cum finitimis cōnsilia iniri, coniūratiōnem fieri. Orgetorigem prōditōrem indicat. Omnia ēnūnciat. Haec rēs in vulgus Helvētiōrum effertur. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem indicio auditō causam dicere cōgunt. Diem causae dictiōnis cōstituunt. Iūdex nōminātur. Diē cōstitutā ad iūdicium itur. Eō Orgetorix omnem familiam suam cōgit. Clientis obaerātōsque suōs eodem cōducit. Per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armis iūs suum exsequi cōnārē-  
tur, Orgetorix mortuus est. Neque abest suspiciō, quin ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit. §§ 152-3

Arminius hāc ōrātiōne Litavici intellēxit post eius mortem Helvētiōs nihilō minus ē finibus exire cōnārī et iam ad eam rem parātōs esse. Ariovistum autem eōs timēre vidit atque  
lēgātōs trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam auxiliōrum petendōrum causā misisse sentiēbat. 118 c

Quīndecim post diēbus lēgātī, quōs trāns Rhēnum ab Ariovistō missōs suprā dēmōstrāvimus, ad eum revertērunt : Harūdēs hominum mīlia vīginti quattuor ei auxiliō mittere ;  
hōs iam domō profectōs esse. §§ 56, 3 ; 94 b ; 159 g

Eodem ferē tempore speculātōrēs ex Aeduīs rediērunt : esse omninō itinera duō, quibus itineribus Helvētiī domō exire possent, ūnum per Sēquanōs angustum et difficile, vix quā singuli carrī dūcerentur et quā Sēquanīs invitīs

carriage = *cart, car, wagon*

e-nunciation = *a telling out*

ex-ecution = *following out*

causa case dicere plead

incited = *roused, angered*

indicator = *pointer (accuser)*

speculator = *one who spies*

quā § 119 g vix hardly

ire nōn possent; alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō  
facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finis Hel-  
vētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluat, isque nōnnūllis  
locīs vadō trānseātur; in eō flūmine pontem esse; illāc  
5 autem Caesare invitō Helvētiōs trānsire nōn posse. § 119 g

Plērōsque Aeduōs et Sēquanōs recūsāre, quō minus per  
suōs finis eōs ire paterentur; timēre enim, nē agrōs popu-  
lārentur; spērāre faciiliōre itinere adductōs Helvētiōs iter  
per prōvinciam temptātūrōs et cum exercitū populī Rōmānī  
10 armīs congressūrōs. § 153

Unōs ex omnibus Casticum et Dumnorigem nihil eārum  
rērū dicere, quās reliquī dicerent, sed tacitōs permanēre  
et nihil eis rēbus commovērī. § 137 c

His nūntiis acceptis Ariovistus nihil sibi timendum putāvit  
15 ac satis habēbat in praesentia domī remanēre et, quid  
Caesar faceret, exspectāre. Dumnorigī autem et Casticō  
cūstōdēs pōnere instituit. Eius rei causā quōsdam ē suis  
in Sēquanōs et in Aeduōs mittit speculātōrēs, quī negōtiātum  
et mercātum venīre vidērentur. § 157 b

20 His negōtium dat, utī quae agant et quibuscum loquantur  
cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Nam  
societātis reminiscēbātur, quam bienniō ante cum illis  
Orgetorix fēcerat, et memoriā tenēbat Dumnorigem filiam  
Orgetorigis in mātrimonium dūxisse. § 107 b

commotion = *disturbance*  
desperation = *hopelessness*  
facility = *easiness, ease*

confine = *keep in boundaries*  
patient = *allowing, suffering*  
taciturnity = *silence, stillness*

in praesentia for the present  
negōtiāt-um to do business

recūsāre give back reasons . . .  
quō minus why not, refuse to

Dum haec in Sēquanīs geruntur, Helvētīi nōn sibi expectandum statuunt, quīn domō proficiscantur. Trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Reliquum omne frūmentum combūrunt. Oppida incendunt, ut domum reditiōnis spem tollerent. Quā sublātā, sēsē 5 parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda fore spērant. § 106 d

Helvētīi iter per Sēquanōs timēbant. Per prōvinciam iter temptāre mālunt. Sibi Rhodanum esse trānseundum cōstituunt. (Eīs enim in animō erat Allobrogibus vel persuādēre vel vī cōgere, ut per finis suōs eōs ire pate- 10 rentur.) Diem dīcunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprilis, Lūciō Pisōne, Aulō Gabiniō cōsulibus. § 151 b

Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe Rōmā proficisci, et quam 15 maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Rhodanum pervenit. Tōtī prōvinciae militēs imperat. Pontem, quī in Rhodanō erat, rescindit. §§ 5 f, 148 g

Cuius adventū cognitō, ad eum Helvētīi mittunt, quī dicerent: sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per 20 prōvinciam facere; rogāre, ut id sibi facere liceat. § 229

Caesar concēdendum nōn putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs convenirent, lēgātis respondit: diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vel- 25 lent, ad Idūs Aprilis reverterentur. § 147 d

imperative = *demanding*

inter-cede = *come-between*.

com-b-ūrere *burn up* § 220, 4

dīcere *say, set* gerī *be done*

male-factor = *evil-doer*

re-scind = *cut away or down*

tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātus

*take away, remove, lift*

Intereā ripam Rhodanī vāllō fossāque mūnīvit. Hōc opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius sī sē invitō trānsire cōnentur prohibēre possit; et, ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre populī Rōmāni  
 5 posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare, et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. §§ 80, 96, 148 f

Quā spē dēiecti Helvētiī, sī vadīs Rhodanī perrumpere possent, cōnantur. Operis mūnitiōne repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduū mittunt.  
 10 Is ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finīs suōs eōs ire patiantur.

Intereā Caesar mūnitiōnibus Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit et trīs, quae in Ītaliā hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulte-  
 15 riōrem Galliam per Alpīs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi pulsīs barbarīs, quī itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnābantur, in ulteriōrem prōvinciam diē septimō pervēnit. § 63 a

Helvētiī iam per angustias et finīs Sēquanōrum cōpiās 20 suās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī referēbantur et lēgātī ab Allobrogibus et ab Aeduīs veniēbant; Allobrogēs nūntiātum sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī; Aeduī auxilium rogātum et questum, quod

**de-jected** = *dis-ap-pointed*, refer = *relate* = *report* =  
*down-cast*, *dis-hearted* *bring back* (word or news)

**mūnīre**, **com-mūnīre** *fortify*  
**per-rumpere** *break through*  
**prae-ficere** *put in charge*

**quēst-um** (§ 157) *to complain*  
**quō** = *ut eō* *that by this means*  
**trādūx-er-a-nt** *had led over*

Helvētīi eōrum finis populārentur: ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs Rōmānī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī non dēbuerint. §§ 130, 149

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar mātūrandum sibi statuit; 5 et Aeduīs frūmentum exercitūi pollicentibus, magnīs itinēribus hostis sequitur. Helvētīi trīs iam partis cōpiārum flūmen Ararim trādūxerant. Caesar subitō ad eam partem pervenit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantis aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; 10 reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt. Is pagus appellābātur Tigurinus. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. §§ 98 i, 156

Hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque 15 ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgatiōnis Diviciō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs, 20 ubi Caesar eōs esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum; nē ipsōs dēspiceret; sē virtūte contendere quam dolō nīti mälle. §§ 107 b, 143

**ag-gressor** = *at-tacker* § 220, 2  
**casually** = *by chance or luck*  
**insolvent** = *not paying* § 220, 7

**merited** = *were deserving*  
**opinion** = *way of thinking*  
**peninsula** = *almost an island*

**incommodum** -i *defeat, disaster*  
**mandāre** *bid, entrust, give up*

**nīti** *rely*    **nōn-dum** *not yet*  
**repente** or **subitō** *suddenly*



His Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit, sed exitus fuit  
 ōrātiōnis : sī obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea, quae pollice-  
 antur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās eis  
 intulerint, item sī aliīs satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem  
 5 esse factūrum. §§ 143, 148 g

Divicō respondit : Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare,  
 cōnsuēsse. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Cae-  
 sar equitātumque omnem praemittit, quī videant quās in  
 10 partis hostēs iter faciant. Suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac  
 sātis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnis prohibēre. Ita  
 diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum  
 hostium agmen et Rōmānōrum primum nōn amplius quīnis  
 aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset. § 115, p. 28

15 His omnibus diēbus Caesar frūmentum flūmine Ararī  
 nāvibus subvexerat. Id cum animadvertissent Helvētiī,  
 iter ab Ararī āvertērunt, sī forte Caesarem ā flūmine  
 abdūcerent et frūmentō comēātūque interclūderent.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent  
 20 pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn  
 erant. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōferri, comportārī,  
 adesse dicere. § 134 b

**avert** = *turn away, turn aside*

**contain** = *withhold, hold in*

**exclude** = *shut out, cut off*

**commeātus** *supplies*

**forte** *perchance* [§ 220, 7

**inferre, intuli, illātus** *bring*

*upon, carry against, inflict*

**inter-clūdere** *shut off, cut off*

**rapine** = *plundering, robbery*

**satisfactory** = *doing enough*

**secession** = *withdrawal*

**novissimus** *newest, last (of)*

**sī abdūcerent** (to see) *if they*

*might draw (him) away*

**sub-vex-er-a-t** *had brought up*

**vīsum est** *seemed (good, right)*

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātis Aeduōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs vergobretō Liscō, quī vitāe necisque in suōs habuit potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī frūmentum posset, tam necessariō tempore ab iis nōn sublevētur. Multō gravius queritur, quod ab iis sit dēstitūtus, quibus auxiliō venīret. § 66

Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quī privātī plūs 10 possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: Aeduōs Helvētiīs cupere dēbere; Rōmānōs ē finibus prōvinciae ēgredi incipere; neque quemquam dubitare dēbere, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs libertātem 15 sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem Rōmānōrum cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē-coercērī nōn posse. §§ 119 b, 219, 4

Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem dēsignārī sentībat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex 20 sōlō ea, quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit. Reperit esse

quibus auxiliō venīret *for aid to whom he was coming* §§ 159 g, 225  
 privātī plūs possint (though) *private citizens are more powerful*  
 neque dubitare dēbere quīn *nor ought (anyone) to doubt, but-that*  
 sī superāverint, sint ēreptūrī *if they overcome, they will take away*  
 plūribus praesentibus *when too many were present* § 95 b

coercion = *restraint, checking*  
 counsel = *advice, plan* [§ 119 c  
 iactārī *be aired* quem-quam

instance = *pressing on, urging*  
 querulous = *complaining*  
 tacu-era-t *had kept quiet*

vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia quotannis parvō pretiō redimere; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū  
 5 semper alere et circum sē habēre; nēminem domī contrā eum quicquam audēre; neque solum domī sed etiam apud proximās cīvitatēs largitēr posse; huius potentiae causā sorōrem et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs  
 10 propter eam affinitātem; ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta sit. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, Caesar satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quā rē in eum animadverteret. § 72

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Divitiāci frā-  
 15 tris summum in populum Rōmānum studium cognōverat; nam, nē Dumnorīgis supplicio Divitiāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiācum ad sē vocārī iubet. Per interpretem cum eō colloquitur. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse  
 20 dē Dumnorīge statuatur, vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

Divitiācus Caesarem obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scīre sē, illa esse vēra; nec quemquam plūs quam sē dolōris capere. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid  
 25 ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, futūrum, uti tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. §§ 115 c, 119 b

anim-ad-version = *turning*  
*mind to, attending to*

grace = *favor* largess = *bribery*  
 sumptuously = *expensively*

ob-secrare *be-seech, beg*

rēs novae *revolt* vectigal *tax*

Haec cum plūribus verbis ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit. Rogat, finem ōrandi faciat. Tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, ut iniūriās condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat. Frātre adhibet. Quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit. Quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit. Monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnis suspiciōnēs vitet. Iniūriās praeteritās Divitiācō frātrī sē condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur scire possit. Posterō diē Caesar, quō cōsuērat intervāllō, hostis sequitur et milia passuum 10 tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit. §§ 61, 73 a

Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercitui frūmentum mētīri oportēret, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit. Iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte, oppidum Aeduōrum longē maximum et cōpiōsis-15 simum, ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētīi, quod Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs existimābant, ā novissimō agmine īnsequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, qui sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse 20 interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō colle duās legiōnēs novās et omnia auxilia collocāvit. Impedimenta in ūnum locum

apprehend = *seize upon*

condone = *forgive*

orator = *pleader*

admonition = *a warning, advice*

ad-hibēre *have present* § 220, 2

cōsuērat *was accustomed* § 225

colle mediō *halfway up the hill*

ostentatious = *showy* § 220, 9

preterit = *bygone*

science = *knowledge*

inevitable = *unavoidable*

lacessere *harass, annoy*

ā novissimō *on the rear (of)*

super-esse *be (left) over* § 220, 15

cōnferri et eum mūniri iussit. Helvētīi impedimenta sua in ūnum locum contulērunt. Ipsī phalange factā sub primam aciem Rōmānōrum successērunt.

Caesar primum suum, deinde suōrum equōs ex cōspectū  
 5 sustulit, ut spem fugae tolleret. Quibus sublātis, suōs cohortātus proelium commisit. Rōmānī ē locō superiōre pila misere. His phalangem facile perfrēgērunt, quod plūra hostium scūta pilis trānsfixa et colligāta sunt, ut multi scūtum manū ēmitterent et nūdō corpore pugnarent.

10 Tandem vulneribus cōfectī et pedem referēbant et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipiēbant. Captō monte et succēdentibus Rōmānīs, Helvētīi rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. § 130

Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Nam  
 15 hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ūsque ad noctem pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Diūtius cum sustinēre Rōmānōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ad multam noctem etiam ad  
 20 impedimenta pugnātum est. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque Rōmānī potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. § 106 c

**phalange factā** with a phalanx formed, after forming a phalanx  
**proelium commisit** let the battle go together, joined battle

**fragile** = breakable

**escutcheon** = ornamental shield

**ancipital** = two headed, double

**suc-ceed** = come up, get up (to)

**colligāta** bound together § 220, 4

**sub-esse** be near

**cōn-ferre, con-tuli, col-lātus**

**tollere, sus-tuli, sub-lātus** lift,

bring together, collect, put off

take away, remove § 220, 14

· Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum cxxx. (centum trīgintā) superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continentur iērunt. Caesar litterās nūntiōsque ad reliquōs Gallōs mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. 5 Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent, sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt et flentēs pācem petiērunt. Obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Hīs trāditis eōs in dēditionem accēpit. § 115 c

Helvētīōs in finis suōs revertī iussit. Allobrogibus im-10 perāvit, utī eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent. Ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Boiōs petentibus Aeduīs ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit. § 97

Dum haec in Aeduīs geruntur, Arminius inter spem atque metum dubius erat. Dominam et Velaedam amābat. Ari-15 ovistum ōderat. Rēs Sēquanōrum miserābātur. Amicō Litavicō et Aeduīs cupiēbat. Suēbōs autem trāns Rhēnum in armis esse et Ubiīs bellum inferre intellegēbat. Hīs praeesse patrem Nasuam et Cimberium patrum audiēbat. Saepe ārdēbat effugere sēque ad patrem Suēbōsque cōferre. 20

Eōdem tempore multa Ariovistō erant cūrae. Gallī finis lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēbant. Trāns Rhēnum autem cōferti Germānī sibi ipsī impedimentō erant.

adjutant = *helper, assistant*

se cōferre *betake himself*

cōferti *crowded*

dē-ditiō *giving up, surrender*

facere(i) *make up, give*

flēre *weep* metus *fear, dread*

obses, obsidis *hostage*

restitution = *rebuilding*

per-fugere(i) *flee over* § 220, 10

poscere, poposci *demand, ask*

prae-esse *be in command (of)*

quī = et ei *and (when) they*

prō-icere(i) *throw forward*

trā-dere *hand over, deliver*

Hī paulatim cōnsuēscēbant Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam venīre optimōsque agrōs occupāre. Id Galli molestē ferēbant neque Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī volēbant.

His rēbus adductus hūc illūc animō ferēbātur. Primō  
5 gaudēre coepit, quod Aeduīs causa inimicitiae cum Helvētiīs  
intercēderet, quod veterēs inimīci Helvētiī cum Rōmānis  
essent armīs congressī. Eī autem grātum fuit, quod Aeduus  
Dumnorix Caesarī in suspiciōnem vēnisset. Postēā autem  
cum Helvētiōs proeliō pulsōs in Lingonas fugere, Caesarem  
10 insequī audiret, ancipitī sententiā commovēbātur. § 147 g

Dum dubitat, quid faciendum sit, speculātōrēs, quōs  
in Aeduōs Sēquanōsque ab eō missōs suprā diximus, ad eum  
revertērunt: Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, Caesarem in prō-  
vinciam nōn revertī exercitumque eius in Lingonibus esse.  
15 Principēs autem tōtīus Galliae Celticae ad eum grātulātum  
vēnisse; hōs petiisse, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in  
diem certam indicere liceret, quod habuerint quāsdam rēs,  
quās ā Caesare petere voluissent; quod concilium permis-  
sum et paucīs post diēbus Bibracte convocātum esset; ne-  
20 que abesse suspiciōnem, quīn contrā Germānōs coniūrarent.

His rēbus commōtus Ariovistus mātūrat nūntiōs in omnīs  
partis dimittere. Iubet manūs cōgī, in armīs exercērī,  
exercitum in Tribocōs condūcī, ut, sī quō opus esset ad bellum  
ēdūcī posset; nam quā dē causā Caesar exercitum suum

**Aeduīs . . . intercēderet** *there happened (to be) a reason of hos-*  
*tility for the Aeduians; they happened to have reason for hostility*  
**in diem . . . indicere** *arrange (set) for a certain day* § 221 b  
**sī quō opus esset** *if there should be need of any* § 71 c

**congressī essent** *had met*

**manūs** *bands, hands*

in Lingonibus tenēret, nōndum perspexerat; et cuius absentis amicitia anteā nixus erat, eius praesentis imperium magnopere verēbātur. § 70-3

Eōdem tempore, quod parātiōrēs ad bellum erant, principes Harūdum ad sē vocat. Quōs maximē cohortātus docet, 5 quantō opere commūnis salutis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitudīne unō tempore cōfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Harūdēs in finis Aeduōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datis mandātis, eōs ā sē dīmittit. 10

Dum haec in Tribocis geruntur, lēgātī ā Caesare ad Ariovistum missi sunt, quī dicerent: Haec sibi ad Ariovistum esse data mandata; nē quōs Germānōs amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; obsidēs Aeduīs redderet. Si id ita fēcisset, Caesarī populōque Rōmānō perpetuam 15 amicitiam cum eō esse futuram; sin obsidēs retinēre et bellō persequi perseverāret, Aeduōrum iniuriās Caesarem nōn esse neglētūrum. §§ 143, 225

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut quī vicissent, eis, quōs vicissent, imperārent; Aeduōs bellī fortunam 20 temptāsse ac superātōs esse; si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ūteretur, nōn oportēre sē ā Caesare in suō iūre impediri. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn esse neglētūrum, nēmīnem 25

**cuius absentis** *on whose* (friendship . . . when he was) *absent*  
**eius praesentis imperium** *his power* (he feared when) *present* § 94  
 (Direct Statement.) **Obsidēs redde** *give back the hostages* § 143

**nūti**, **nixus** *rely, depend*

**dis-tinēri**

See § 220, 5



sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum Caesar vellet, congregerētur; intellēctūrum, quid Germānī virtūte possent. Hōc respōnsō datō, lēgātōs ad Caesarem remittit.

Paucis post diēbus nūntiū Rōmā missi ad Ariovistum  
 5 vērunt: Iniussū senātūs Caesarem ē finibus prōvinciae  
 ēgressum; Gallōs sibi conciliāre cōnārī; iam apud eōs  
 plūrimum posse, et huius potentiae causā inimicōs rēgis  
 atque amīci populi Rōmānī dēfendere; haec omnia contrā  
 senātūs voluntātem facere; Rōmae Caesarem rei pūblīcae  
 10 hostem aestimārī; Catōnem, Lentulum, Mārcellum aliōsque  
 summōs populi Rōmānī virōs Caesaris potentiam verērī;  
 magnō opere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis interesse  
 eum aut capī aut interficī; Rōmānis tamen id facere nōn  
 licēre. Quod sī Ariovistus fēcerit, multīs nōbilibus prīn-  
 15 cipibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, quōrum  
 omnium amīcitiam Caesaris morte redimere posset. § 73 c

Hīs Ariovistus ita respondit: Sibi esse in animō Caesarem  
 in colloquium venīre invītāre; quem, sī posset, vel captūrum  
 vel interfectūrum; sī minus potuisset, factūrum, uti intel-  
 20 geret, quid Germānī in bellō possent. §§ 70-1

Hīs rēbus cōstitutis, Ariovistus castra mōvit et ad  
 occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod erat longē maximum et  
 mūnitissimum oppidum Sēquanōrum, contendit. Cum sep-  
 tem diērum viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei, Sēquanōs

**Cum vellet, congregerētur** *when he wished, he should come on*  
**interesse eum . . . capī** *it was the interest (of the state) that he*  
*be (either) captured (or killed)* §§ 66, 73 c, 143, 151

**estimate = reckon, rate** § 73 **pernicious = ruinous, destructive**  
**grātum favor minus not so quod sī but if quōrum and their**

Rōmānīs frūmentum sumministrāre et Caesarem magnīs itineribus accessisse et Vesontiōnem iam occupāsse.

Quibus rēbus vehementer commōtus Ariovistus cum omnibus cōpiīs in Tribocōs sēsē recēpit nūntiōsque ad Nasuam et Cimberium mīsit, quī ab eīs postulārent, utī quam celerimē possent, Rhēnum trānsirent sibiue centum pagōs Suēbōrum auxiliō addūcerent aut, sī minus potuissent, quam plūrimōs possent sibi subsidiō summitterent. § 90

Intereā paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae causā morātus Caesar castra mōvit et in Tribocōs profectus 10 est. Ariovistō cum id nūntiātum esset, Caesarem ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse, lēgātōs ad eum mīsit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāset, id iam fieri posse, quoniam propius accessisset; diem colloquiō diceret; nē quem peditem addūceret; uterque cum equitātū veniret. §§ 113, 158 c 15

Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō ad colloquium vērunt. Caesar equīs dēvexit legiōnem, quam ducentis passibus ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs utī ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. § 147 e

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senatūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit. Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātis dederat; nē Aeduīs bellum inferret; 25 obsidēs redderet; nē quōs Germānōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur. § 143

postulant = one who asks  
subsidiary = giving support

vehemently = mightily  
vehicle = carriage, carrier

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē  
 suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē  
 nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis: sēdis  
 habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum volun-  
 5 tāte datōs. Nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse.  
 Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmētō et praesidiō,  
 nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre; aliā ratiōne nōn minus  
 libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam  
 appetierit atque Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed hoste habitū-  
 10 rum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus prīn-  
 cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum. § 115 b

Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, equitēs Ariovistī propius  
 tunulum accēdere et ad Caesariānōs adequitāre, lapidēs  
 tēlaque in eōs conicere. Quō factō, Caesar loquendī finem  
 15 fēcīt sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō  
 tēlum reicerent. Eō factō, Ariovistus intellēxit armīs sibi  
 esse cum Rōmānīs congrediendum. Statuit autem Suēbōs  
 exspectandōs, Rōmānōs frūmentō prohibendōs. §§ 113, 134 b

Trīduō post Ariovistus castra prōmōvit et praeter castra  
 20 Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit atque mīlibus passuum duōbus  
 ultrā eum castra fēcīt eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque  
 Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque  
 Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et Ariovistō pugnandī  
 potestātem fēcīt. §§ 58, 103, 226

potestātem fēcīt *made, arranged, or gave an opportunity (to fight)*

lapidary = *polisher of stones*

predication = *declaration*

ad-equitāre *ride at, dash at*

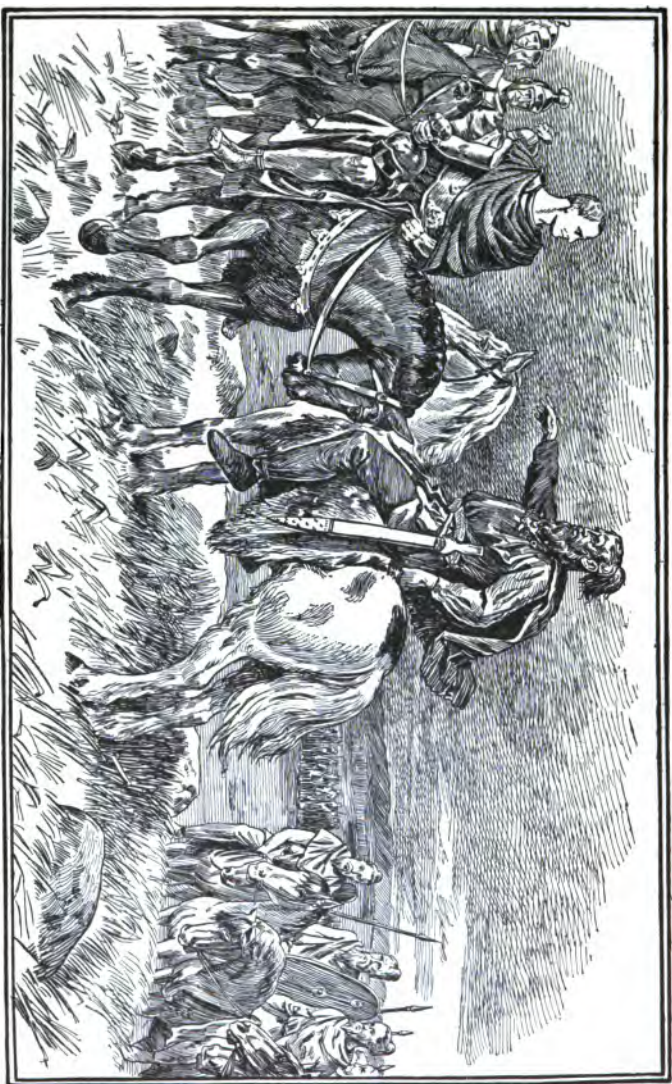
prō-dūxit *led forth* § 220, 12

aliā ratiōne *otherwise, else*

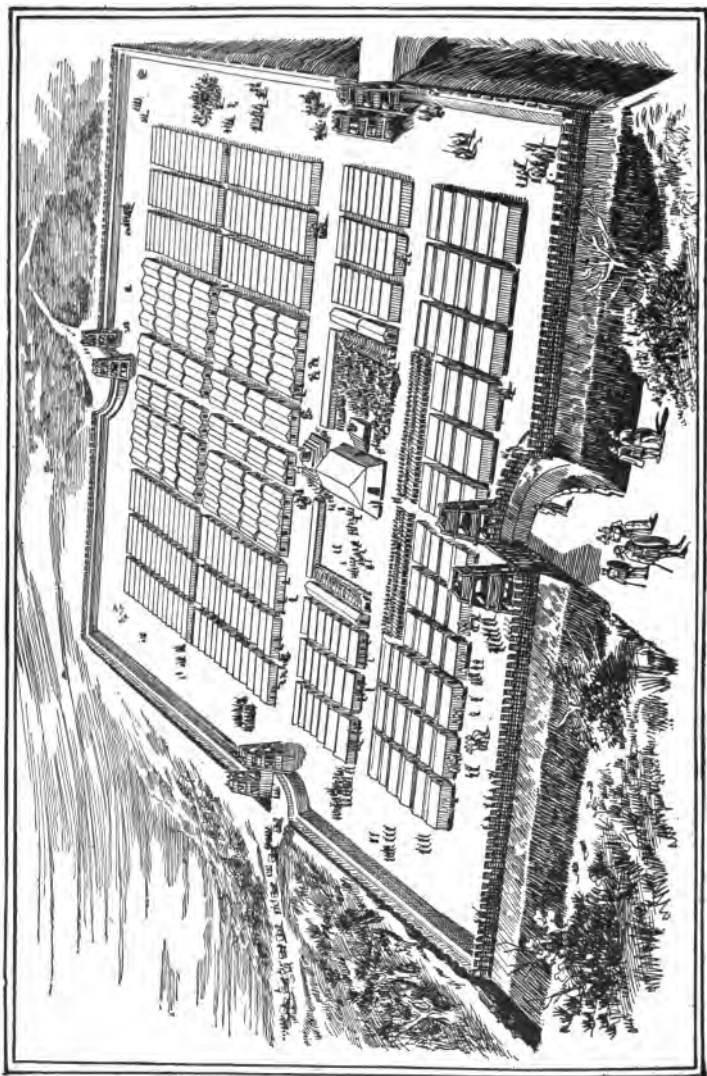
prō-movēre *move forward*

arcessitum (because) *sent for*

praeter by *re-icere hurl back*



CÆSAR'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS



CASTRA ROMANA

Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus suōs castris continuit, quod mātṛēs familiās sortibus dēclārābant, nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contēdissent. Quod ubi Caesar compertum habuit, triplici aciē instrūctā ūsque ad castra Ariovisti accessit. Tum dēmum 5 necessāriō Germānī cōpiās suās ēdūxere generātīmque cōstituērunt, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nementēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs. Omnem aciem suam raedis et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae passis manibus flentēs im- 10 plōrābant in proelium proficiscentis, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent. Arminius virōs secūtus est et in cōspectū Nōricae et Velaedae prō carris versābātur.

Caesar proeli committendī signum dedit. Rōmānī ācritē impetum fēcēre. Germānī celeriter prōcucurrēre. Spatium 15 pīla coniciendī datum nōn est. Reiectis pīlis, gladiis pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter phalange factā scūtis impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Sed complūrēs Rōmānī in phalangem insiliēbant et scūta manibus revellēbant hostisque dēsuper vulnerābant. 20

Quō factō omnēs Germānī terga vertere coācti sunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnerunt. Ibi perpauci

**proficiscentis** (them as they were) *starting out* (for battle)  
**spatium pīla coniciendī** *time to throw javelins* (was not given)

<b>dē-super</b> <i>from above</i>	<b>passae manūs</b> <i>outstretched hands</i>
<b>eō</b> <i>on them</i> <b>fās</b> <i>right, fate</i>	<b>raeda</b> <i>wagon</i> <b>prōcurrere</b> <i>run</i>
<b>in-silire</b> <i>leap up on</i>	<b>re-vellere</b> <i>pull back, tear away</i>
<b>in-struere</b> <i>draw up</i> (in order)	<b>sors, sortis</b> <i>lot</i> <b>superāre</b> <i>win</i>

aut nāvis nactī trānsiēre aut vīribus cōnfisi trānāre contendērunt. In his fuit Ariovistus. Quī nāviculam nactus eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnīs cōsecūtī equitēs Rōmānī interfēcērunt. § 100

5 Et Nōrica et Suēba rēgis coniūnx in eā fugā periērunt. Infāns filia Nōricae periit. Famulī plērique ab equitibus Rōmānīs concīduntur. Arminius Velaedae manum prēndit eamque sēcum ex agmine trāxit. Quōs paulō post eques Rōmānus ferrō petit. Sed P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī tum  
10 equitātūī praeerat, equitem dēterret, nē eōs cōficeret. Tum eōs in equum impōnit sēcumque retinet. Sub occāsum sōlis Crassus suōs in castra redūxit. § 60

Cum ad castra accēditur, porta decumāna patet. Praesidia cēdunt. Equitēs cum captivīs intrōmittuntur. Viam  
15 praetōriam sequuntur. Arminius videt utrimque tabernācula equitum Rōmānōrum et stābula equōrum. Post haec ab utrāque parte tabernācula peditum longīs ōrdinibus recēdunt. Ōrdinem ac disciplinam undique mirātur. Praetōrium in castrīs ferē mediūs est. Hūc contendit Crassus.  
20 Imperātōrem in praetōriō petiit; Arminium enim et Velaedam sibi servōs retinēre volēbat. Ad Caesarem adit. Rogat ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar ex captivīs quī sint quaerit. Illi nihil intellegere et tacitī permanēre. Tandem misera Velaeda sē ex primō  
25 terrōre ac fugā recipere coepit. Ab ignōtō Rōmānō abhorret. Familiārī Suēbō haeret. Neque vultum fingere

agmen *rout*

ferrum *iron*

nāvicula *little boat*

cōnfisi *relying*

nactus *finding*

vīrēs *strength*

nāre *swim*

utrimque § 119 *f*

via. See p. 142

neque iam lacrimās tenēre poterat. Arminī amplexū haesit atque flēns eī collō pependit. § 134 b

Tum per interpretem comperit Caesar puellam barbaram Ariovistī rēgis filiam esse, mātrem et infantem sorōrem in fugā āmisisse, alteram quoque rēgis coniugem Nōricam 5 perisse, huic Arminium fuisse servum. Quibus cognitis rēbus, prōcōnsul vix ipse lacrimās continuit; namque in miserōs ac supplicis semper misericors et mānsuētus erat.

Itaque cōstituit Velaedam diligentissimē obsidis locō servandam eīque Arminium servum cūstōdemque tribuen- 10 dum. P. Crassō cūstōdiendōs trādīdit. Huic adulēscētī Caesar et indulgēbat praecipuē propter patris in sē beneficia et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat maximē.

Multōs diēs puerī miseram apud Crassum agēbant vītam. Omnia verēbantur. Quid dē sē fieret, ignōrābant. Abditī 15 in tabernāculō crūdēlia fāta suōrum miserābantur. Fātum suum sēcum querēbantur. § 64

Interim Caesar propter vulnera militum et propter sepul- tūrā occisōrum trīdium morātus castra mōvit, et quiētā Galliā, mātūrius paulō, quam annī tempus postulābat, in 20 hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitū dēdūxit. Ibi militēs silvās caedere mātūrant. Casās hibernās prō tabernāculis aedificānt. Castra hiberna vāllō fossāque mūniunt. Frūmen- tum eō comportant. Pābuli magnam cōpiam cōferunt at- que in hiemem servant. Quiētem capere statuunt. 25

Saepe per hiemem parva Velaeda flēbat et misera mātrem quaerēbat. Puer autem eam cōnsōlābātur animumque verbīs

*caedere* cut  
*cōfirmāre* comfort

*miserārī* bemoan  
*occisī* the killed



cōfirmābat. Timōrem mittere ac bene spērāre iubet, illud saepe dictāns, quod ēlegantius posteā Vergilius : §§ 154, 222

“ Forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit.”

Primō autem vère tempestās calēscēbat. Omnia longō  
5 rigōre hiemis solvuntur. Initā aestāte cōpia pābuli esse incipiēbat. Ex Ītaliā Caesar ad exercitum reverti contendit. Rōmānī castra mōvēre. In Belgās profecti sunt. Tum vērō Arminius disciplinam Rōmānam mīrābātur. Illi enim longē aliā ratiōne ac barbari bellum gerēbant. Cf. § 69 “ac”

10 Rem frūmentāriam diligentissimē prōvident. Cotidiē sub vesperum cōnsistunt. Castris idōneum locum dēligunt.

Semper locum ex plānitiē ēditum petunt. Castra vāllō fossāque mūniunt, nē quī hostis noctū accēdēs adoriātur. Omnēs operi mūnitiōnis instant. Nēmīnī nisi mūnītis cas-  
15 tris discēdere licet. Cotidiāna exercitātiō viris militum alit eōsque parātiōrēs facit ad omnis labōrēs subeundōs. Semper, post sē quae sunt, tuentur atque tūta ab hostibus reddunt. Frūmentum commeātūsque ut sine periculō ad sē supportārī possint, efficiunt. Prudentiā et cōnsiliō quam  
20 vī hostis superāre mālunt. §§ 130, 137

Extrēmā aestāte, dispersis ac ferē superātis Belgīs, Caesar Pūblium Crassum cum ūnā legiōne misit ad Venetōs, Venelōs, Osismōs, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt. His omnibus civitātibus  
25 in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī redāctis, obsidibus datis et pāce factā, in Andēs legiōnem in hiberna dēdūxit. Tum vērō faciendum nōn existimābat, uti Velaedam semper

forsan perhaps idōneus suitable mittere let go ōlim one day  
iuvat delights meminisse recall sistere halt solve release

in castris aut in itinere tenēret, et quod cōnstābat paucis mēnsibus patrem M. Crassum esse Lūcam ad Caesarem ventūrum, eō Suēbōs obsidēs cum Caesare mittit. § 61 b

Ibi primum vidērunt concursum et divitiās Rōmānōrum. Eō enim Cn. Pompeius et M. Licinius Crassus vērērunt. 5 Eō aliī summī rei pūblicae virī multī et nōnnūllae mātṛōnae Rōmānae convēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, quod tantās rēs armīs gessisset. Ibi inter Caesariānōs convēnit Pompeium et Crassum proximō annō cōsulātum esse petītūrōs ac per eōrum auctōritātem alterum quīnquennium Caesarem 10 Galliam prōvinciam obtentūrum. Cf. § 67

Actō conciliō Suēbī obsidēs magnam in spem veniēbant clārissimae pulcherrimaeque urbis videndae. Libenter eō proficiscuntur. Sed paucis diēbus, quibus in M. Crassī domum perventum est, patriās silvās dēsiderābant. § 62 g 15

Bienniō post Velaeda flāvō capillō, oculis caeruleis, fōrmā pulcherrimā quīntum decimum iam annum agēns omnibus admirātiōnī fuit. Quam L. Paulus iunior, dē quō supṛa dictum est, apud Crassum vidēs adamāvit atque in mātrīmōnium dūcere volēbat. Petentī autem ita respōnsum est : 20 Suēbam virginem Rōmānō numquam nūbere posse. § 97

Eōdem annō P. Crassus ex Galliā ā patre revocātus Rōmam vēnit. Quem obsidēs libentissimē excipiunt, quod antea prō

aliment = *nourishment, feeding* tangent = *touching* § 219, 3

concourse = *gathering*

contingent = *touching*

efficient = *bringing about*

tutor = *protector, guardian*

omnibus admirātiōnī (for admiration to all) the admiration of all

ad-amāre take a liking to

nūbere wear veil, marry

āctus over flāvō

(See p. 30)

patrius native virgō girl

tūtōre habuerant. Iterum cum eō ire volunt. Ille autem cum patre ad Parthōs profectūrus sēcum dūcere nōn potest. Eā spē dēiecti rogant, sē ad exercitum remittat. Itaque eōs Pūblius cūstōdiendōs trādit amicō Q. Cicerōnī, quī lēgātus in Galliā militābat; illi cum legiōnibus tribus ex Italiā proficīscētibz ad exercitum perveniunt. §§ 96, 102

Dum iuvenēs Rōmae apud M. Crassum habitant, quadrienniō intermissō omni Galliā pācātā, Caesar nāvibus Britanniam bis adierat et primum ponte factō exercitum Rōmānum 10 trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam trādūxerat.

Hōc annō complūrēs Galliae civitātēs ā populō Rōmānō dēficere et contrā Caesarem coniūrāre coepēre ac Trēverī finitimōs Germānōs sollicitābant. His autem ā Labiēnō pulsīs, Suēbī, quī auxiliō veniēbant domum sēsē recēpēre. 15 Cum his quīdam Trēverōrum ex civitāte excessērunt, et, quod cōnstābat iterum Caesarem exercitum Rhēnum trāductūrum, Arminius quendam Gallum profugum mittit, quī patri Nasuae dēnūntiāret: Sēsē iam vivere; obsidis locō in exercitū Caesaris tenērī itemque rēgis Ariovistī filiam. Monēre, 20 nē Suēbī proelium umquam cum Rōmānīs committerent, nisi in locum inīquum aut in silvās indūcī possent.

Ponte factō atque exercitū trāductō fit ab Ubiīs certior Caesar Suebōs ad extrēmōs suōs finis sē recēpisse atque ibi in silvīs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre. Ita inopiam 25 frūmentī veritus, quod hominēs Germānī minimē agrī cultūrae studēbant, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. Sed

excessive = *going out or beyond*

iniquity = *unfairness*

prefect = *one put in charge*

survive = *live over or through*

metus *fear, dread, anxiety* § 107 veritus (because he) *feared*

nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis principis Eburōnum profectus est; quī cōpiās suās nōn condūxit sed missis per agrōs nūntiis sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum magna pars in Arduennam silvam profūgit.

Tum cōpiis suis in trīs partīs distribūtis impedimenta omnium legiōnum Aduātucam contulit. Id castelli nōmen est. Hoc ferē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus. Praesidiō impedimentis legiōnem quārtam decimam reliquit. Ei legiōnī castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praeficit ducentōsque equitēs ei attribuit.

§§ 100 e, 220, 12

Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus proficisci iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad agrum Eburōnum dēpopulandum mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen Scaldem extrēmāsque Arduennae silvae partīs ire cōstituit. Discēdēs post diem septimam sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat.

§ 119 b 20

Dimittit ad finitimās civitatēs nūntiōs Caesar. Omnīs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius miles periclitētur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

§§ 40, 154

Diēs iam appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedita legiōnemque reverti cōstituerat. Trāns Rhēnum

famous = *talked of, reported*

disparity = *inequality*

ap-petere *be at hand, seek for*  
diripere *rob*

periclitāri *be risked* § 181 b  
pecus *cattle*

ad Germānōs pervenit fāma, diripī Eburōnēs atque omnis ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximī Rhēnō. Trāseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque. Primōs Eburōnum finis adeunt. Magnō pecoris numero potiuntur. Invitāti praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt. Profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captivis: “ Quid vōs,” inquit, “ hanc miseram sectāmini praedam, quibus licet esse fortunātissimōs? Tribus hōris Aduātucam venire potestis. Hūc omnis suās fortunās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est, ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredi extrā mūnitiōnēs audeat.” Oblātā spē Germānī Aduātucam contendunt. § 149

15 Cicerō omnis superiōrēs diēs militēs in castris continuerat ac nē calōnem quidem ēgredi passus erat. Septimō diē diffidēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod nūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, nūllum cāsum exspectāns, quinq̄ue cohortis frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omninō collis intererat. Magna praetereā multitudō calōnum, magna vis iūmentōrum sequitur. Arminius et Velaeda datā facultāte ex castris ēgrediendi longē sequuntur. § § 149 b, g, 221 b

Hōc ipsō tempore Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtinus-  
25 que ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec

<b>ap-propinquāre</b> come close to	<b>sectā-mini</b> you are seeking
<b>aegrē</b> hardly	<b>calō</b> camp servant
<b>ir-rumpere</b> break into § 220, 7	<b>vis</b> drove
<b>prōtinus</b> straight on, straightway	<b>ūsque eō</b> so far (that)

prius visi sunt, quam castris appropinquarent usque eo, uti puer et puella, qui in silvis lente errarent, sui recipiendi facultatem non haberent, seque fugae mandarint atque in silvas abdidierint. Re nova perturbantur inopinantes Romani. Nemo tam fortis est, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Circumfunduntur hostes, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas tuentur Romani; reliquos aditus locus ipse munitioneque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris. Alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit. Alius castra iam capta pronuntiat, alius deloto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse contendit. §§ 94-6

Interim confecta frumentatione milites Romani clamorem exaudiunt. Praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo cognoscunt. Reliquos arcessunt. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt. Redisse legionem credunt. Interea cuneo facto Romani inter se cohortati duce C. Trebonio per medios hostis perrumpunt. Ita militum pars praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit. § 221 b

Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod milites Romanos iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, sese

indelible = *not to be destroyed*  
 diffident = *dis-trustful*  
 casually = *accidentally*  
 erratic = *likely to wander*

novelty = *newness, strangeness*  
 relent = *slow up, slacken*  
 pronunciation = *speaking out*  
 intrepid = *unfearing, fearless*

abdere *hide* ad-itus *ap-proach*  
 conspicati *having spied* § 100  
 eripere(i) *snatch out, rescue*  
 ex-audire *over-hear, hear*

in-columnis *un-harmed, safe*  
 in-opinans *un-suspecting*  
 prae-currere *run ahead* § 220  
 sign-a (military) *standard-s*

recipere coep̄erunt. Quōs Arminius ē latebrīs ēgressus adiit hortātusque est utī datā facultāte rēgis Ariovistī filiam ē manibus Rōmānōrum ēriperent. Eā rē impetrātā, Arminius et Valaeda amicē ā Sugambris suscepti cum eīs trāns  
 5 Rhēnum in Germāniam sēsē recēp̄erunt. Paucīs post diēbus cum equitātū Sugambrōrum iuvenēs in Suēbōrum finīs ad suōs pervēnērunt.

Bienniō post Ariovistus, quem ā Caesare superātum suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, filiam Velaedam Arminiō in mātirimōnium  
 10 dedit. Germānī autem nōmen Caesaris et opēs Rōmānōrum ita verēbantur, utī satis habērent patriās silvās ā populō Rōmānō dēfendere atque annīs quadringentīs vix Rhēnum trānsīre audērent.

credence = *believing, trust*

cuneiform = *wedge-shaped*

hostile = *inimical, of enemy*

latent = *hiding, lurking*

opulent = *having resources*

susceptible = *capable of taking*

## APPENDIX

### SOUNDS

21. Latin letters are always sounded as indicated below by the English words printed under them.<sup>1</sup>

### VOWELS

<b>a</b> pars ( <i>side</i> ) parse	<b>ā</b> pār ( <i>equal</i> ) par	<b>e</b> vel ( <i>or</i> ) well	<b>ē</b> pēs ( <i>foot</i> ) pace	<b>i</b> sit ( <i>be</i> ) sit	<b>ī</b> sic ( <i>so</i> ) seek
<b>o</b> cor ( <i>heart</i> ) core	<b>ō</b> nōn ( <i>not</i> ) known	<b>u</b> vul'-tū ( <i>face</i> ) wool'too	<b>ū</b>	<b>y</b> Pyr'-rhō <sup>2</sup> peer'roe	<b>ȳ</b> Cȳ'-rō <sup>2</sup> key'roe

### DIPHTHONGS

<b>ae</b> aes ( <i>money</i> ) ice	<b>au</b> laus ( <i>praise</i> ) louse	<b>ei</b> hei ( <i>alas</i> ) hey	<b>eu</b> seu ( <i>or</i> ) say'oo	<b>oe</b> coe'-pit coy'pit	<b>ui</b> hui ( <i>ho!</i> ) whee
--	--	---	--	----------------------------------	---

### CONSONANTS

22. Double consonants are sounded separately

buc'-cam ( <i>mouth</i> ) book'calm	ad'-dō ( <i>add</i> ) odd'doe	il'-li ( <i>him</i> ) ill'Lee	mis'-si ( <i>sent</i> ) miss'see
dū'-cam ( <i>lead</i> ) do'calm	dē'-dō ( <i>give up</i> ) day'doe	vē'-lis ( <i>sails</i> ) way'lease	mī'-sī ( <i>I sent</i> ) me'see

23. The following require special attention

<b>bs</b> and <b>bt</b> like <b>ps</b> and <b>pt</b>	ob'-stō ( <i>block</i> ) ope'stow	ob'-ten'-tō ( <i>held</i> ) ope ten'toe
<b>c</b> and <b>g</b> always hard	cin'-get ( <i>gird</i> ) king'get	con'-dō ( <i>build</i> ) cone'doe

<sup>1</sup> Words illustrating the sounds of *short a* and *short o* should be uttered quickly.

<sup>2</sup> Pronounce *peer* and *key* with the lips rounded as for *ū*.



i-consonant <sup>1</sup> or j	iū'-ra or jū'-ra <sup>2</sup> you'rah	ma'-ior or ma'-jor <sup>2</sup> ma'yore
n before c or qu as ng	cin-get ( <i>gird</i> ) king'get	in-quit ( <i>says</i> ) ing'quit
s always as in	rēs ( <i>thing</i> ) race	trēs ( <i>three</i> ) trace
si and ti always as in	vī-si-ō ( <i>sight</i> ) we'see oh	nā-ti-ō-nī ( <i>tribe</i> ) knotty oh knee
tu always as in	vir-tū-tī ( <i>valor</i> ) we're too'tea	fōr-tū-nae ( <i>luck</i> ) fore too'nigh
u (never as in union)	ū-nō ( <i>one</i> ) oo'no	o-cu-lis ( <i>by eyes</i> ) oh'coo lease
u in qu-, -ngu-; some- times in sua- and suē- as w	in-quit ( <i>says</i> ) ing'quit	suō-tae ( <i>used</i> ) sway'tie
v always as w		
x always as ks or cs	sa-xō ( <i>written for sac-sō, with rock</i> ) sock'so	vel-let ( <i>would</i> ) well'let
ch, ph, th practically <sup>3</sup> the same as c, p, t	pul-chrō ( <i>pretty</i> ) pull'crow	the-ā-trō ( <i>theatre</i> ) tay ah'trow

**24.** Final **-e** is silent in English words of more than one syllable. There are *no silent letters in Latin*. It is not easy for beginners to get the correct pronunciation of the Latin short final **-e**. This will become much easier, if one forms the habit of pronouncing all Latin words with the tip of the tongue well down behind the lower front teeth. The tongue may be bent upward somewhat back of the tip, when necessary.

<sup>1</sup> The **i** is a consonant (sounded as **y** in *yet*) before a vowel at the beginning of a word or root syllable, as in *Iūlia* (*Julia*), *iūra* (*rights*), and *iniūria* (*wrong*), or between two vowels within a word, as in *maior* (*greater*).

<sup>2</sup> In some works these words are written *Jūlia*, *jūra*, *injūria*, and *major*.

<sup>3</sup> Strictly as in *blockhouse*, *uphold*, and *knothole*.

25. It will be very helpful to pronounce the following words several times, then repeat them omitting the final *-t*,

bet	debt	get	let	met	net	pet	set	wet
be-	de-	ge-	le-	me-	ne-	pe-	se-	we-

taking pains to keep the quality of the *vowel* unchanged.

dē'-det	vel'-let	cin'-get	es'-set	a'-get
day'debt	well'let	king'get	ess'set	ah'get
dē-de	vel-le	cin-ge	es-se	a-ge
sē-de	mit-te	nōn-ne	ca-pe	e-me

26. We are utterly indifferent about the pronunciation of vowels before final *-r* in English words. Constant care must be exercised to sound all unstressed Latin vowels distinctly.

TO BE AVOIDED (as pronounced in English)

TO BE STRICTLY OBSERVED IN PRONOUNCING LATIN VOWELS BEFORE FINAL *r*

altar		vin'-car ( <i>be won</i> )	ca'-pi-ar ( <i>be taken</i> )
		wing'car	copy are
alter	her	ca'-pi-er <sup>1</sup> ( <i>be taken</i> )	nūn'-ti-er ( <i>be reported</i> )
		copy ere	noon'tea ere
Kaffir	fir	fīr'-mae ( <i>solid</i> )	vir ( <i>man</i> )
		fear'my	we're
labor	for	fōr'-mae ( <i>shapes</i> )	la'-bor ( <i>toil</i> )
		fore'my	la'bore
sulphur	fur	dē'-mur ( <i>be given</i> )	vul'-tur ( <i>vulture</i> )
		day'moor	wool'tour
zephyr	myrrh	Pyr'-rhō ( <i>to Pyrrhus</i> )	zep'-hy-rō <sup>2</sup> ( <i>west wind</i> )
		peer'roe	zeppy roe

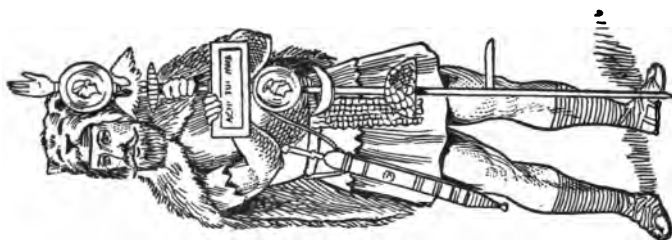
NOTE. — Be careful always to pronounce *-er* like the English word *ere* (*before*) in *ergā* (*toward*), *tergum* (*back*), *alter* (*the other*), *inter* (*between*), *iter* (*journey*), *ter* (*thrice*), *per* (*through*), etc.

<sup>1</sup> An older form of the infinitive, *capī*.

<sup>2</sup> To pronounce the Latin *y*, the lips should be rounded as for *ū*. The Latin *r* is made farther back in the mouth than the English *r*.



**TUBICINATOR**



**SIGNIFER**



**VEXILLIFER**

**27.** Diphthongs are always long and do not have to be marked. The quantity of vowels must be learned in order to pronounce each syllable correctly. § 21

**28.** Vowels are always long in certain combinations and nearly always long in certain positions.

(a) A vowel is *lengthened* before **nf, ns, nx, nct**.<sup>1</sup>

Final **u** is always long.

Final **o** is long except in **ego, duo, modo** (*only*), **cito**.

Final **i** is long except in **mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, nisi, quasi**.<sup>2</sup>

(b) A vowel is usually *shortened* before **h, nd, nt**, or *another vowel*.

A vowel is *shortened* before *final m* and *t*, and before *final l* and *r*, except in a few monosyllables, as **pār, sōl**.

<b>in + fāns</b>	<b>cingere</b>	<b>prō + habē</b>	<b>habeō</b>	<b>agāmus</b>	<b>vocēre</b>
<b>infāns</b>	<b>cīnxī</b>	<b>prohibē</b>	<b>habētur</b>	<b>agam</b>	<b>vocer</b>
<b>in + stō</b>	<b>cīnctus</b>	<b>habendī</b>	<b>habet</b>	<b>animālis</b>	<b>pār</b>
<b>instō</b>	<b>cīnctū</b>	<b>habent</b>	<b>habeam</b>	<b>animal</b>	<b>paris</b>

The length or quantity of final **a** and **e**, and of all the vowels in many positions and various root syllables will be easily mastered with the vocabularies.

### SYLLABLES

**29.** A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. Lone consonants go with the vowels that follow them; as, **cae-di-tur**.

<sup>1</sup> See Latin Grammar of Hale and Buck.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes used as long in verse.

30. Where there are two consonants together, the first regularly goes with the preceding, the second with the following vowel.

parte	illud	contentō	saxō
par-te	il-lud	con-ten-tō	sac-sō <sup>1</sup>

But if the last of the two consonants is l or r, they combine with the vowel that follows; h is not counted.

sacrō	duplicēs	tenebrae	pulchrō	explicuit
sa-crō	du-pli-cēs	te-ne-brae	pul-chrō	ex-pli-cu-it

#### QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

31. The quantity or length of syllables must be learned in order to know where to accent words.

As would be expected, syllables containing long vowels or diphthongs are long, but *those containing short vowels are not all short.*

32. Short vowels followed by *no consonants* make short syllables; as, ea, e-a; duo, du-o; tua, tu-a; mihi, mi-hi.

Short vowels followed by *one consonant* make short syllables: erat, e-rat; vocat, vo-cat; legit, le-git.

But short vowels followed by *x* or *z* or *two consonants* that are *separately uttered* make long syllables.

tendant	contendēbant	saxis	mittunt	illōs
ten-tant	con-ten-dē-bant	sac-sīs	mit-tunt	il-lōs

Latin words are strung together in reading or speech.

Furit aestus harēnīs.

Fu-ri-taes-tu-s'a-rē-nīs.

<sup>1</sup> The letter *x* is thus divided into *cs* in speech but not in writing or print.

One of the consonants may begin the next word. All the syllables except *-ci-bu-* are long in the following line.

*Ad quem tum Iūnō supplex hīs vōcibus ūsa est.*

*Ad-quem-tum-Iū-nō-sup-plec-s'is-vō-ci-bu-sū-sa'st.*

**33.** *A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by no consonant or a lone consonant (except x or z).*

**34.** *A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by x or z or any two consonants (the latter one of which is not l or r).*

If the last of two consonants with a short vowel is l or r, the syllable may be used *either as long or short* in verse. Such syllables are called *common*.

**35.** An occasional shortened form has the accent on the ultima or last syllable, or on a short penult.

*ē-dūc'* (for *ē-dū'-ce*) ;    *cōn-si'-lī* (for *cōn-si'-li-i*)

**36.** *Words of two syllables are accented on the first.*

*Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult (next-to-last), if it is a long syllable; if not, on the antepenult (syllable before-the-penult).*

*vo'-cat, vo-cā'-tur, ma-gis'-ter, Iū'-li-us, dis-ci'-pu-lus,*  
*vō'-cem, vo-cē'-mus, te'-ne-brae.*

#### SUMMARY OF CASE ENDINGS

**37.** Nearly all pupils summarize facts in their own way and for the convenience of their own habits of study and remembering. The following general view of all the forms of nouns (and adjectives) is given here to prevent their

jumping at conclusions that are destined to be shattered as work proceeds, and the getting of impressions that it is so wearisome to root out and unlearn later.

It is not to be expected that all these important summaries and working principles will be learned at once, but rather that they will be read and re-read till a correct general idea of them has been gained and the pupil knows exactly where to find the help he needs. They are intended to serve as a guide in all future work and to be referred to again and again as the reading of Latin continues till they are finally mastered.

#### What Are Endings and What Are Not Endings

**38.** An **ending** is an element annexed to the end of a base or stem to show its relation to other words. What the endings of Latin nouns originally were does not particularly concern us here. They now appear as **-s**, **-m**, **-rum**, **-bus**, or a *vowel*; of which **-rum** is always *genitive plural* and **-bus** is always *dative, ablative, or locative plural*. But so many changes and contractions have taken place that it is now customary to speak of them as including at least one vowel.

**39.** A complete list of the endings of Latin nouns and adjectives is as follows:

- a, -ā, -e, -ē, -ae, -ēī (eī-), -ī, -ia, -ō, -ū, -ua ;
- am, -em, -im, -um, -ārum, -ērum, -ium, -ōrum, -uum ;
- s, -ās, -ēs, -is, -īs, -ōs, -us, -ūs (-ius, -iūs) ; <sup>1</sup>
- ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus (-ubus).

<sup>1</sup> Endings in parentheses are found in but few words.

40. The following adjectives have *-ius* (*-ius*) instead of *-i* and *-ae* in the Genitive singular and *-i* (*-i*) instead of *-ō* and *-ae* in the Dative singular.

Some of them have *-d*, *-id*, *-od*, or *-ud* (for *-e* or *-um*) in the neuter singular and *-e* (for *-us*) in the masculine.

a.			GEN.	DAT.	ENGLISH COGNATES
M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.	M. F. N.	AND DERIVATIVES
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one, only		ūnīus	ūnī	unit, unique, unify
sōlus, sōla, sōlum	alone		sōlīus	sōlī	sole, solitary
tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole		tōtīus	tōtī	total, totally
alter, -ra, -rum	the other		alterīus	alterī	alternate, alter
alius, alia, aliud	other		alterīus	aliī	alien, alibi, alias
uter? utra? utrum?	whether?		utrīus	utrī	whether?
neuter, -tra, -trum	neither		neutrīus	neutrī	neutral, neuter
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	any		ūllīus	ūllī	nullify, null
nūllus, -lla, -llum	none		nūllīus	nūllī	nullify, annul
quī, quae, quod	that		cuius	cui	who, what, whose
quis? quid? <sup>1</sup>	who? what?		cuius?	cui?	which? how? why?
aliquī, -qua, -quod	some		alicuius	alicui	
hic, haec, hoc	this		huius	huic	These four are used to mean <i>he, she, or it</i> according to the gender. § 119 c
iste, ista, istud	that		istīus	istī	
ille, illa, illud	that		illīus	illī	
is, ea, id	this, that		eius	eī	

b. Mention is here made of these few irregular words because aside from them and their compounds, no nouns or adjectives have any endings not found in the list in § 39. In all other native Latin nouns and adjectives, any form not having one of the endings of this list *has no case ending*.

<sup>1</sup> Quis, quid is not an adjective. It is the interrogative pronoun.





**41.** Forms with no case ending occur only in the singular, and in the nominative and vocative of masculines and feminines and in the nominative accusative and vocative of neuters. Such are the forms below. Figures are used to indicate the declension.

NOM. OR VOC. SING.	BASE	RELATED WORDS
2 <b>ager</b> <i>field, territory</i>	<b>agr-</b>	<i>agriculture, agrarian</i>
2 <b>liber</b> <i>scroll, book</i>	<b>libr-</b>	<i>librarian</i>
2 <b>puer</b> <i>boy, hand, slave</i>	<b>puer-</b> § 76	<i>puerile</i> (boyish)
3 <b>pater</b> <i>father</i> § 82	<b>patr-</b> § 78 a	<i>paternal, patrimony</i>
3 <b>māter</b> <i>mother</i>	<b>mātr-</b>	<i>maternal, matrimony</i>
3 <b>sōl</b> <i>sun</i>	<b>sōl-</b>	<i>solstice, solar</i>
3 <b>lūmen</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>light</i> § 78 b	<b>lūmin-</b>	<i>luminous, illuminate</i>
3 <b>nōmen</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>name</i>	<b>nōmin-</b>	<i>nominate, nominal</i>
3 <b>mel</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>honey</i>	<b>mell-</b>	<i>mellifluous</i>
3 <b>vēr</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>springtime</i>	<b>vēr-</b>	<i>vernal</i>
3 <b>aequor</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>level expanse</i>	<b>aequor-</b>	<i>equal, equity, iniquity</i>

**42.** But the most deceiving of all and most puzzling to the uninitiated are those Third Declension Nouns that

<sup>1</sup> Nom., Acc., or Voc.

appear at first to have the case endings -s, -us, -ūs, -ōs, -ās, -ō, etc., when they really have no case endings at all.

1. Because the final s of stems *remains where there is no ending* and becomes -r- between two vowels wherever endings are annexed, as in *mōs, habit, mōrēs*,<sup>1</sup> *habits, character*.

2. Because the final n of stems is lost after -ō-, if there is no ending, as in *nātiō, tribe, nātiōnēs, tribes, breeds*.

NOMINATIVE, GENDER AND MEANING	EARLIER STEM	PRESENT BASE	RELATED WORDS IN ENGLISH
<i>genus</i> n. <i>kin, kind</i> § 82 d	<i>genes-</i>	<i>gener-</i>	<i>gender, kin, general</i>
<i>tempus</i> n. <i>season, time</i>	<i>tempes-</i>	<i>tempor-</i>	<i>tempest, temporary</i>
<i>vulnus</i> n. <i>wound</i> § 78 b	<i>vulnes-</i>	<i>vulner-</i>	<i>invulnerable</i>
<i>vetus</i> m. f. n. <i>old</i> § 86	<i>vetes-</i>	<i>veter-</i>	<i>veteran, inveterate</i>
<i>rūs</i> n. <i>field, country</i>	<i>rūs-</i>	<i>rūr-</i>	<i>rustic, rural</i>
<i>iūs</i> n. <i>right, law</i> § 78 b	<i>iūs-</i>	<i>iūr-</i>	<i>just, injury, jury</i>
<i>maius</i> n. <i>larger</i>	<i>maiōs-</i>	<i>maiōr-</i>	<i>majority</i>

NOMINATIVE, GEN- DER AND MEANING	EARLIER STEM	PRESENT BASE	ENGLISH COGNATES AND DERIVATIVES
<i>tellūs</i> f. <i>earth, soil</i>	<i>tellūs-</i>	<i>tellūr-</i> § 82	<i>telluride</i>
<i>pulvis</i> m. <i>dust</i>	<i>pulves-</i>	<i>pulver-</i>	<i>pulverize</i>
<i>mōs</i> m. <i>custom, way</i>	<i>mōs-</i>	<i>mōr-</i>	<i>immoral, moralist</i>
<i>flōs</i> m. <i>blossom</i>	<i>flōs-</i>	<i>flōr-</i>	<i>florist, flourish</i>
<i>ōrdō</i> m. <i>order, rank</i>	* <i>ōrdon-</i>	<i>ordin-</i>	<i>ordinal, ordinary</i>
<i>origō</i> f. <i>beginning</i>	* <i>origon-</i>	<i>origin-</i>	<i>orient, original</i>
<i>regiō</i> f. <i>line, side</i>	<i>regiōn-</i>	<i>regiōn-</i>	<i>reach, regional</i>
<i>ratio</i> f. <i>method, plan</i>	<i>ratioṇ-</i>	<i>ratioṇ-</i>	<i>reason, rational</i>
<i>statiō</i> f. <i>stop, post</i>	<i>statioṇ-</i>	<i>statioṇ-</i>	<i>stationary</i>
<i>lātitudō</i> f. <i>breadth</i>	* <i>lātitudon-</i>	<i>lātitudin-</i>	<i>latitudinal</i>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *was* and *were*; *is*, *are*; *us*, *our* (once *oure*).

\* Possible forms in very early Latin.

43. Almost equally annoying are those in which -t- or -d- have disappeared before the ending -s :

FORMATION	NOMINATIVE	BASE	FROM THE SAME ROOT
ped-s	pēs <i>m. foot</i> §§ 78, 82	ped-	<i>pedal, impede</i>
pedet-s	pedes <i>m. foot-soldier</i>	pedit-	<i>pedestrian</i>
equet-s	eques <i>m. horseman</i>	equit-	<i>equestrian</i>
lapid-s	lapis <i>m. small stone</i>	lapid-	<i>lapidary</i>
sanguin-s	sanguis <i>m. blood</i>	sanguin-	<i>sanguinary</i>
cūstōd-s	cūstōs <i>m. keeper</i>	cūstōd-	<i>custody</i>
aequitāt-s	aequitās <i>f. fairness</i>	aequitāt-	<i>equity, iniquity</i>
dignitāt-s	dignitās <i>f. office</i>	dignitāt-	<i>dignity, deign</i>
quiēt-s	quiēs <i>f. rest, peace</i>	quiēt-	<i>inquietude</i>
līt-s	lis <i>f. dispute</i>	līt-	<i>litigation</i>
palūd-s	palūs <i>f. marsh</i>	palūd-	<i>paludal</i>
salūt-s	salūs <i>f. welfare</i>	salūt-	<i>salutation</i>
servitūt-s	servitūs <i>f. slavery</i>	servitūt-	<i>service, servile</i>
virtūt-s	virtūs <i>f. manly quality</i>	virtūt-	<i>virtual, virtue</i>
fraud-s	fraus <i>f. trick</i>	fraud-	<i>fraudulent</i>

44. In the list below, eight nouns have the case ending -s, seven have no ending, and *no two others have the same ending.*

mās <i>male</i>	brevitās <i>shortness</i>	filiās <i>daughters</i>
rēs <i>thing</i>	pēs <i>foot</i>	Cerēs <i>Ceres</i>
finis <i>limit</i>	pulvis <i>powder</i>	lapis <i>stone</i>
lis <i>quarrel</i>	mīles <i>soldier</i>	armīs <i>with arms</i>
tribus <i>with three</i>	statiō <i>station</i>	filiō <i>to a son</i>
fraus <i>deceit</i>	senātus <i>senate</i>	genus <i>class</i>
puerōs <i>boys</i>	colōs <i>tint, hue</i>	cūstōs <i>guard</i>
tellūs <i>ground</i>	iuventūs <i>youth-</i>	tribūs <i>tribes</i>

45. The following list shows how easy it is to know the endings by comparing two different forms of the same noun so as to get the *base*. Cf. §§ 42, 43.

mās	—	brevitās	-s	filiās	-ās
marēs	-ēs	brevitāte	-e	filiābus	-ābus
rēs	-ēs	pēs	-s	Cerēs	—
rē	-ē	pedibus	-ibus	Cereri	-i
finis	-is	pulvis	—	lapis	-s
finium	-ium	pulverem	-em	lapidis	-is
lis	-s	mīles	-s	armis	-is
līte	-e	mīlitum	-um	armōrum	-ōrum
tribus	-ibus	statiō	—	filiō	-ō
tria	-ia	statiōnem	-em	filiis	-is
fraus	-s	senātus	-us	genus	—
fraudis	-is	senātūs	-ūs	genera	-a
puerōs	-ōs	colōs	—	cūstōs	-s
puer	—	colōre	-e	cūstōdum	-um
tellūs	—	iuventūs	-s	tribūs	-ūs
tellūre	-e	iuventūtī	-ī	tribuum	-uum



46. Just as *ag-*, *leg-*, and *reg-* become *ac-*, *lec-*, and *rec-* before *t* in

**agent** (one who acts)   **legible** (readable)   **regent** (ruling)  
**active** (quick to act)   **lecture** (a discourse read)   **rector** (ruler)

So in Latin *g* becomes *c* before *s* or *t*.

Note that *cs* is always written *x*.

FORMATION	NOMINATIVE	BASE	HAVING THE SAME ROOT
<b>pāc-s</b>	<b>pāx</b> f. <i>agreement</i>	<b>pāc-</b>	<i>pay, pacify, peace</i>
<b>rēg-s</b>	<b>rēx</b> m. <i>ruler, king</i>	<b>rēg-</b>	<i>regal, royal, reign</i>
<b>iūdec-s</b>	<b>iūdex</b> m. <i>judge</i>	<b>iūdic-</b>	<i>judicious, judicial</i>
<b>duc-s</b>	<b>dux</b> m. <i>guide, leader</i>	<b>duc-</b>	<i>duke, induce</i>
<b>lēg-s</b>	<b>lēx</b> f. <i>agreement, law</i>	<b>lēg-</b>	<i>legal, legislator</i>
<b>nigui-s</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>nix</b> f. <i>snow</i>	<b>niv-</b>	<i>niveous, Nevada</i>
<b>nocti-s</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>nox</b> f. <i>night</i>	<b>noct-</b>	<i>nocturnal</i>

#### An Observing Reader's Habit of Thought

47. There are several things we must find out about a word, as we read, or we shall sooner or later have to *stop all progress* to look it up. Our first observations may not reveal what we most wish to know. But we shall soon meet the word again, if we but read on; and the comparing of the two forms will show more than the base and the two endings. Suppose, for example, we have for the first time met

**in eandem partem, or maximam fidem, or finem.**

Each noun appears to be an accusative singular. It is.

One reminds us of **part**, **partial**, **partly**, **partisan**, **depart**, **impart**, **compartment**, **counterpart**.

It likely means *part*,<sup>2</sup> *side*, *direction*, *share*, or *division*.

<sup>1</sup> Probable form in very early Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. § 218, *a, b*.

Another resembles **fidelity**, **bona fide**, or the name **Fido**. It probably means *faith, fidelity, trust, confidence, loyalty*.

The third calls to mind **final**, **finish**, and **Finis** at the *end* of a book.

It must mean *end, limit, border, or boundary*.

Yet **partem**, **fidem**, and **finem** might all be either of the Third or of the Fifth Declension (see table § 55); **eandem**, however, is an adjective and there are no adjectives of the Fifth Declension. Suppose, now, we have read on and found

**eiusdem**, or **fidē**, or **finīs lātōs**

(1) **Fidem** and **fidē** are *Fifth Declension* forms, as no Third Declension forms end in **-ē**, except **famē**, *by hunger*. (See § 55 c, 3.) **Maximam** shows that **fidem** is *feminine*; besides, all Fifth Declension nouns are feminine, except **diēs**, *day* and **meridiēs**, *midday, south*.

(2) **Eiusdem** immediately shows that **-em** is not the ending of **eandem**; **-dem** is only a particle annexed after the case ending **-am**, which is then written **-an** before **d** (cf. **compel** and **condemn**). The ending **-ius** shows **eiusdem** to be one of the irregular adjectives (§ 40), meaning *same, also* (**-dem** appearing as **-den-** in *identical*).

(3) **Finīs** must be a Third Declension form. There is no such ending as **-is** in the Fifth, and accusative plurals in **-is** all belong to the class known as Masculine and Feminine *i*-stems (3 i M. and F. § 55 b). The adjective **lātōs** shows that **finīs** is Mas. Acc. Pl. § 54 b.

(4) Knowing the meaning of **partem** and that it is Fem. Acc. Sing., we can afford to wait about the rest till we meet it again.

48. This illustrates the advantage of "making haste slowly" — of watching, waiting, and comparing, of using our brains more than our thumbs — for a little careful observation trains us to see in ten minutes what it takes an hour to look up, and if we depend upon looking up everything, the task is endless.

#### How to Use the Tables Below

49. To get the *best results from comparing different forms* of a word and take advantage of every means of discovering the necessary facts about nouns as we meet them in reading, we must gradually master the tables below, which aim to show *how far each ending may be relied upon*.

- (1) To indicate the class to which a new noun belongs ;
- (2) To show its number and case at first sight, and
- (3) *What a given ending indicates regarding the other endings* of a noun (or adjective) seen for the first time.

50. Some endings tell the whole story at a glance ; as, *-ae* in the noun *nātūrae* (see Int. § 6 *e*), others tell a great deal, while some tell little or nothing.

51. The following observations do not apply to the irregular adjectives and pronouns in § 40 nor to nouns having mixed declensions nor to words borrowed from the Greek ; as, *āēr* (acc. sing. *āera* or *āerem*) and *aethēr* (acc. *aethera*), p. 18, etc., all of which fall an easy prey to one who has mastered these tables.

52. We must start aright. The first essential is to know whether the case ending is

-ās   -ēs   -is   -īs   -ō   -ōs   -us   -ūs   as in

**hōr-ās, r-ēs, fin-is, arm-is, radi-ō, vic-ōs, ann-us,**  
or **-s**, as in

**aetā-s, pē-s, lapi-s, li-s, pāx, cūstō-s, frau-s,**  
or lacking altogether, as in

<b>mās</b>	<b>Cerēs</b>	<b>mōs</b>	<b>genus</b>	<b>rūs</b>	<b>statiō</b>
<b>puer</b>	<b>pulvis</b>	<b>vir</b>	<b>aequor</b>	<b>mel</b>	<b>lūmen</b>

Note the following also :

**fili-a fili-us e-ī vacu-ī radi-um vacu-um vacu-a**  
**omn-ia e-ius r-eī senāt-ūī omn-ium pass-uum corn-ua**

**53.** The endings of all classes of regular nouns and adjectives are given below (§ 55) in parallel columns. It will be seen that certain endings occur only in particular declensions or in particular cases.

### The Gender of Nouns and Adjectives

**54. a.** **Annum** (Ac. masculine) resembles **oppidum** (N. Ac. V. neuter); **Victor** (N. V. masculine) resembles **aequor** (N. Ac. V. neuter).

Except in such instances (in the singular), neuter nouns differ from masculines and feminines in the *nominative, accusative, and vocative cases*. Masculine nouns, however, cannot always be distinguished from feminines by their endings, *e.g.*

**annus (m.) Cyprus (f.) hōrae (f.) incolae (m.)**

but in adjectives **-us** is *always masculine* and **-ae** *feminine*.

**b.** Thus many endings of adjectives never fail to *show the gender of the nouns they modify*. See § 55 *f.*



55. a.	2	1	2	3	3
	M. (F.)	F. (M.)	N.	M. or F.	N.
	S. Pl.	S. Pl.	S. Pl.	S. Pl.	S. Pl.
N.	(-us) -ī	-a -ae	-um -a	-s, — -ēs	— -a
G.	-ī -ōrum	-ae -ārum	-ī -ōrum	-is -um	-is -um
D.	-ō -īs <sup>1</sup>	-ae -īs <sup>1</sup>	-ō -īs <sup>1</sup>	-ī -ibus	-ī -ibus
Ac.	-um -ōs	-am -ās	-um -a	-em -ēs	— -a
V.	(-e) -ī	-a -ae	-um -a	-s, — -ēs	— -a
Ab.	-ō -īs <sup>1</sup>	-ā -īs <sup>1</sup>	-ō -īs <sup>1</sup>	-e -ibus	-e -ibus
L.	-ī -is	-ae -is	-ī -is	-e -ibus	-e -ibus

<sup>1</sup> -ōbus, m. and n., and -ābus, f., are used instead of -is in *duōbus*, *duābus* *two*, *ambōbus*, *ambābus* *both*, and in *filiābus* and *deābus*.

c. Some endings always show the Declension. § 52

First	Second	Third	Fourth	Fifth
-a (sing.)	-um (N.), -ō	-um (G.), -s, -is, -ēs <sup>1</sup>	-ūs	-iēs <sup>1</sup>
-am, -ā	-ī (N. G.)	— (Ac.), -em, <sup>1</sup> -im	-uī, -ū	-iēī, -eī
-ae, -ās	-ōrum, -ōs	-ī (D. Ab.), -is (Ac.)	-ua	-iem, <sup>1</sup> -ē <sup>2</sup>
-ārum	-e (V. m.)	-e (N. Ac. Ab.)	-uum	-ēbus

<sup>1</sup> -ēs and -em are preceded by -i- in all Fifth Declension forms except *rēs*, *rem*, *thing*, *spēs*, -em, *hope*, *fīdēs*, -em, *faith*, *plēbēs*, -em, *plebs*.

<sup>2</sup> Except in *famē*, *by hunger*, which is of the Third Declension.

1st or 2d

-is (D. Ab.)

2d or 3d

-a (pl.)

2d or 4th

-um (Ac.); -us

3d or 4th

-ibus

e. Gender in Nouns (§ 54)

f. Gender in Adjectives

M.(F.) -ī or -ūs (pl.); -us, -ōs	-um (N.)	Always reliable §§ 42-3, 54
F.(M.) -a or -ēs (sing.); -ae	-a (pl.)	M. F. N.
-am, -ā, -ārum, -ās	— (Ac.)	-us -a (sing.) -um (N.)
-eī, -iēī, -ē, -ēbus	-e (N. Ac.)	-ī (pl.) -am, -ā -a (pl.)
	-ū (N. Ac.)	-ōs -ae, -ās — (Ac.)
Never neuter.		-e (2) -ārum -e (N. A.)
-is (N.); -is (Ac.); -s, -em, -ēs	§ 52	

b. 3 i		3 i		4		4		5	
M. or F.		N.		M. or F.		N.		M. or F.	
S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.	S.	Pl.
-is, -s	-ēs	-e <sup>1</sup>	-ia	-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
-is	-ium	-is	-ium	-ūs	-uum	-ūs	-uum	-ei <sup>4</sup>	-erum
-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ui <sup>2</sup>	-ibus <sup>3</sup>	-ū	-ibus	-ei	-ēbus
-em <sup>5</sup>	-is	-e <sup>1</sup>	-ia	-um	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-em	-ēs
-is, -s	-ēs	-e <sup>1</sup>	-ia	-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
-ī, -e	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ū	-ibus <sup>3</sup>	-ū	-ibus	-ē	-ēbus
-e, -ī	-ibus	-e, -ī	-ibus	No adjectives or locative case.					

<sup>1</sup> All Present Participles; as, *vacāns being empty*, *vidēns seeing*, and a few adjectives; as, *audāx bold*, *ingēns huge*, have -s.

<sup>2</sup> Rarely -ū.

<sup>3</sup> -ubus in *tribus tribe*, and rarely in a few others.

<sup>4</sup> Rarely -ē, -ēī after a vowel.

<sup>5</sup> -im in a few nouns.

## d. Always Singular

## Always Plural

-a (f.); -ā, -e, -ē, -ō, <sup>1</sup> -ū	-a (n.); -ae (N.); -ī (N. V.)
-ae (G. D.); -ī (G. D. Ab.)	-ās; -ēs (Ac.); -īs, -ōs § 52
-ūs or -īus or -ius (G.) § 43	-ūs (N. Ac.); -um (G.); -ium
—, -s, -is, -us, -ēī, -eī	-ārum, -ērum, -ōrum, -uum
-um (N. Ac.); -am, -em, -im	-ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus

<sup>1</sup> Plural in *ambō both*.

NOTE. — Do not try to apply this without first comparing two forms (§§ 42, 45).

## g. Always Nom.

## Always Dat.

## Always Voc.

-us (Adj.) §§ 41-3

-ui

-e (2)

## Always Gen.

## Always Acc.

## Always Abl.

-is (n.); -īus -ūs (sing.); -ius -ī (sing. 2) <sup>2</sup> -ārum, -ōrum -um (3); -ium -uum, -ērum	-am, -em, -im	-ā, -ē, <sup>1</sup> and if used w. prep. <sup>2</sup> -e or -ū (m. f.) -īs (1, 2); -ō -ābus, -ēbus -ibus, -ōbus
	-ās, -ōs, -īs (3) if used w. prep. <sup>2</sup> —, -s, -um -ēs, -ūs §§ 42-3 -a, -ia, -ua	

<sup>1</sup> Rarely used for -ēī in poetry. See also § 81 b.

<sup>2</sup> §§ 57, 58.

<sup>3</sup> Except nouns in -ius.

56. ENDINGS AND THEIR VALUES<sup>1</sup>

*Case Sing. Plur. Relations to Other Words* (see Int. § 5)

1. *N.* (-us) -i<sup>2</sup> indicates the *subject of a finite verb*, the *predicate* of a subject nominative, etc. (§ 5 a, c.)
2. *G.* -i -ōrum *possessor*, —'s, —s'; *of*; (son) *of*; (more) *of*; (fear) *of*; (be estimated) *of* or *at* (value).
3. *D.* -ō -is *indirect obj.*; *to*; (give) *to*; (belong) *to*; (lack-  
ing) *to*; *for*; *for* (aid) *to*; *as-far-as-concerns*.
4. *Ac.* -um -ōs *direct obj.*; *subj. of Inf.*; *for* (days, years, miles); *for* (most part); see also § 57.
5. *V.* (-e) -i *direct address*; *O —! thou —! ye —!* Never put the Vocative first in a sentence.
6. *Ab.* -ō -is *at, during* (night); (alarmed) *at, on-account-of* or *by*; (rate, buy, or sell) *at* or *for*.  
*by* (boat), *by* (land), *by-means-of*; *by, accord-  
ing-to* (plan); (older) *by* (a year), § 68 b.  
*for*; *for* or *on-account-of* (courage); § 73 b.  
(free) *from*, (kept) *from*; (suffer) *from*.  
*of*, (deprive) *of*; (full) *of*; (born) *of*; (need)  
*of*; (make use) *of*; (man) *of* or *with* (good  
mind); (worthy) *of*; (glad) *of*; § 62 g.  
*in*; *in, during, within* (a day); *in* (wisdom,  
width); (kept) *in*; (defeat) *in* (war).  
*on* (a day); (feed or live) *on*; (lean or rely)  
*on*; (go, ride, be carried) *in* or *on*.  
*over*, (boast,) *over, about, on-account-of*.  
*with*; (fill) *with*; (mix) *with*; (suffer) *with*.  
*than*; *with* preps. § 58.
7. *L.* -i -is *at, in, on* (see §§ 60, 61 c).

<sup>1</sup> This table is to be used as a general guide (see § 230).

<sup>2</sup> And so on following the lines across pp. 128–9, § 55 a, b.

## 57. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

**ad** in the direction of, till, for, to (border of), toward, up to, to (the presence of, when travelling is done), against (enemy), at, close by, near, next to; **quantum ad** as for; **ad decem** about ten.  
**ante** before, ahead of. **post** behind, after, since.  
**apud** before the face of, in the eyes, sight, opinion, hands, or care of; **apud mē** at my house; **apud oppidum** in sight of town.  
**circum** around, in the vicinity of. **circiter** (cf. **circus**), about.  
**in** 'clear' to, till, on, upon, into, or among (when distance has to be travelled); **against**, (feel) toward, (throw) at, (start) for; **quam in partem?** in what direction? **in collem** up on a hill.  
**inter** in the midst of, between, among (as compared with).  
**ob** (obstructing the way) in face of; **ob eam rem** for this reason.  
**per** through, along; **per vim** by force; **per Alpīs** over the Alps.  
**praeter** except, but, beyond; **praeter castra** past the camp.  
**propter** because of; **propter altitudinem** because of the height.  
**cis** (citra) this side of. **trans** across. **ultra** beyond. **sub** under.

## 58. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

**ā, ab, abs** from the direction of, away from, from (the outside), by (a person); **off**; **ā milibus passuum** thousands of paces away.  
**ab** before vowels or *h*; **ā** or **ab** before *d, l, n, r, s*; otherwise **ā**.  
**cum** (in company) with; **ūnā cum** along with. **sine** without.  
**dē** down from, from (interior or top); concerning, about; **pauci dē nostris** a few of our men; **quā dē causā** and for this reason.  
**ē, ex** (before vowels or *h*) out of, off from, up from, out from, from (within the borders) or off (the top of), from among. § 66 *c*  
**in, in, on, upon, among** (bodily if no distance is travelled).  
**prae** (English *pre-* before) ahead of, in comparison with.  
**prō** in front, behalf, or stead of, for, in proportion to; **eōs prō amicis habeo** I take them for friends. **sub** under, below.

## 59. NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONAL FORCE

*causā* or *grātiā* (placed after a Genitive) *for the sake, for; frū-  
mentī causā eunt they are going for grain; to get grain.*

These illustrations of the underlying idea of the prepositions above will be better understood with use and experience.

60. Note the use of prepositions in phrases denoting *places, persons, things, position, situation, or condition.*

<i>to which</i> (or <i>to whom</i> )	<i>in which</i> ( <i>in whom</i> )	<i>from which</i> ( <i>from whom</i> )
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--

<i>ad insulam</i>	<i>in insulam</i>	<i>in insulā</i>	<i>ex insulā</i>	<i>ab insulā</i>
<i>toward the</i>	<i>to the is-</i>	<i>on the is-</i>	( <i>off</i> ) <i>from</i>	<i>from near by</i>
<i>island</i>	<i>land</i>	<i>land</i>	<i>the island</i>	<i>the island</i>

<i>ad Cyprum</i>	<i>Cyprum</i>	<i>Cypri</i> § 76	<i>Cyprō</i>	<i>ā Cyprō</i>
<i>toward or</i>	<i>to Cyprus</i>	<i>in or on</i>	<i>off from</i>	<i>from near</i>
<i>to Cyprus</i>		<i>Cyprus</i>	<i>Cyprus</i>	<i>Cyprus</i>

<i>ad domum</i>	<i>in domum</i>	<i>in domō</i>	<i>ē domō</i>	<i>ā domō</i>
<i>toward the</i>	<i>to the house</i>	<i>in or at</i>	<i>from the</i>	<i>away from</i>
<i>dwelling</i>		<i>the house</i>	<i>house</i>	<i>the house</i>

<i>domum</i>	<i>domī</i> § 81	<i>domō</i>
( <i>go</i> ) <i>home</i>	( <i>be</i> ) <i>at home</i>	<i>from home</i>

<i>ad vicum</i>	<i>in vicum</i>	<i>in vicō</i>	<i>ē vicō</i>	<i>ā vicō</i>
<i>toward the</i>	<i>to or into</i>	<i>in or at</i>	<i>from the</i>	<i>away from</i>
<i>village</i>	<i>hamlet</i>	<i>village</i>	<i>hamlet</i>	<i>the village</i>

<i>ad Athēnās</i>	<i>Athēnās</i>	<i>Athēnis</i> § 77	<i>Athēnis</i>	<i>ab Athēnis</i>
<i>to a point</i>	<i>to Athens</i>	<i>at Athens</i>	<i>from Athens</i>	<i>from near</i>
<i>near Athens</i>				<i>Athens</i>

<b>ad arma</b>	<b>in fugam</b>	<b>in armīs</b>	<b>ex fugā</b>	<b>ab armīs</b>
<i>to arms</i>	<i>to flight</i>	<i>in arms</i>	<i>from flight</i>	<i>from arms</i>
<b>ad Iūlium</b>	<b>in Iūlium</b>	<b>in Iūliō</b>	<b>ex Iūliō</b>	<b>ā Iūliō</b>
<i>to or up to</i>	<i>against or</i>	<i>in Julius</i>	<i>(idea) from</i>	<i>(book) from</i>
<i>Julius</i>	<i>at Julius</i>		<i>Julius</i>	<i>Julius</i>

61. In case of proper names of towns, small islands, and peninsulas, **domus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*the country*), the following special rules must be observed.

- The accusative with ad denotes direction in which.*
- The accusative denotes place to which, or destination.*
- The locative denotes place in which.*
- The ablative denotes place from which.*
- The ablative with ā or ab denotes direction from which.*
- In and ē or ex are never used with these nouns.*

62. The phrases, *with the boys*, *with the horses*, and *with the dog*, are said to denote *association* or *accompaniment*, because the boy, the horses, and the dog may be regarded as companions or associates.

The phrases, *with a sword*, *with books*, and *with water*, are said to denote *instrument* or *means* of action.

a. (Persons or animals)  
*Association*

**Cum puerīs pugnat.**  
*He fights with the boys.*

**Cum equō missus est.**  
*He was sent with the horse.*

b. (Inanimate things)  
*Instrument or Means*

§ 58 **Gladiō pugnat.** § 56, 6  
*He fights with a sword.*

**Librīs plēnum est.** § 56, 6  
*It is filled with books.*

c. But persons and animals are often treated as things, and inanimate things are regarded as companions.

Ibi cum gladiō stetit.	Equis arant.	§ 56, 6
<i>Here he stood with a sword.</i>	<i>They plow with horses.</i>	
Cum libris missus est.	Nāvis pueris plēna est.	
<i>He was sent with books.</i>	<i>The boat is full of boys.</i>	
Cum litteris vēnit.	Quid puerō fiet?	§ 56, 6
<i>He came with a letter.</i>	<i>What will be done with the boy?</i>	

d. Active Agents

Instrument or Means

Ā Iūliō missus est.	Sagittā est vulnerātus.
<i>He was sent by Julius.</i>	<i>He was wounded by an arrow.</i>
Ā cane morsus est.	Fulmine ictus est.
<i>He was bitten by a dog.</i>	<i>He was struck by lightning.</i>

e. But persons and animals may be treated as things.

Per explorātōrem cognitum est.	Equis ductus est.
<i>Was learned through a scout.</i>	<i>It was drawn by horses.</i>

f. Castris sē tenet *keeps himself in camp* (means of shelter).

Barbarōs proeliō superant *they defeat barbarians in battle.*

Puerum pugnā superat *defeats the boy in a fight or by fighting.*

g. The Ablative is used to describe a person or thing.

Magnā est grātiā.	§ 56, 6	Puer oculis caeruleis.
<i>He is a person of great favor.</i>		<i>A boy with blue eyes.</i>
Mōns magnā altitūdine	<i>a mountain of great height.</i>	§ 56, 6

63. a. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Sūs ā proeliō continet *he keeps his (men) from battle.*

Suis finibus eōs prohibent *they keep them from their borders.*

Mūrum barbaris nūdant *they clear the wall of barbarians.*

*b. The Ablative case is used to express separation from abstract things, the Ablative with ā or ab from concrete things (but this varies with the verb used).*

*Hoc eōs cūrā liberat this relieves (frees) them of (f om) anxiety.*  
*Hostis (pl.) ab oppidō prohibē keep the enemy from the town.*

#### 64. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

*tot (indecl.) so-many totidem just as many, the same number*  
*quot (indecl.) as-many, as sī quot if several quot? how many?*

*quot equi sunt? how many horses are there? multi sunt many*  
*tot . . . quot as-many . . . as, so-many . . . as*

*aliquot (indecl.) some number, several. See §§ 70, 91-2, 150*

*tam multi, tam multōrum, m. so many (men, persons, etc.)*

*quam multi, quam multōrum, m. as many (persons)<sup>1</sup> as quota*  
*quam multi? quam multōrum? m. how many persons?*

*quam multi equi sunt? how many horses are there?*

*multi, multōrum, m. many (men,<sup>1</sup> etc.) multiply*

*permulti, permultōrum, m. very-many multitude*

*plūrimī, plūrimōrum, m. very-many (persons), most (men) plural*

*quam plūrimōs sēcum dūcit takes as many as he can with him*

*plērique, plērōrumque, m. most (men), the majority*

*pauci, paucōrum, m. a few, some-few, few (men) paucity*

*perpauci, perpaucōrum, m. very few*

*nūllī, nūllōrum, m. no (men), none nullify, null*

*nōnnūllī, nōnnūllōrum, m. not-a-few, some (persons) annul*

*bonī, bonōrum, m. the good, good (men) bonny, bounty*

*malī, malōrum, m. the bad, bad (men) malefactor*

*nostrī, nostrōrum, m. our (men), our (soldiers), ours<sup>1</sup>*

*sui, suōrum, m. his or her (own people), its (own), their (own)<sup>1</sup>*

*meī, meōrum, m. my (people, friends), my (family)<sup>1</sup> 109 c, 118 b*

<sup>1</sup> Not only persons or men but also boys, horses, etc.



## 65. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (Masculine)

<b>alius</b> <i>other, else</i> ; pl. <b>others</b>	<b>sōli</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>alone, (we) alone</i>
<b>alius</b> <i>one . . . alius</i> <i>another</i>	<b>tōtus</b> <i>whole, (he) all</i> § 118 b
<b>alii</b> <i>some . . . alii</i> <i>others</i>	<b>tōtus</b> <i>in studiis est</i> <b>he is all</b> <i>taken-up with-studies</i>
<b>alter</b> <i>the one . . . alter</i> <i>the other</i>	<b>ūllus</b> <i>any (one), any (body)</i>
<b>alteri</b> <i>the ones; alteri</i> <i>the others</i>	<b>nūllus</b> <i>not one, no one</i>
<b>nēmō</b> ( <b>nē</b> + <b>homō</b> ) <i>no man</i>	<b>ūnus</b> <i>one, the only one</i>
<b>quis</b> ( <i>any</i> ) <i>one, one, (some) one</i>	<b>ūnī</b> <i>the only ones</i> §§ 40, 120
<b>-que</b> <i>each, every</i> §§ 108 b, 111	<b>uter?</b> <i>which (one of the two)?</i>
<b>quisque</b> <i>every one, each one</i>	<b>uterque</b> <i>either (one), both</i>
<b>quis?</b> <i>what one? who?</i> § 114	<b>neuter</b> <i>neither (one of the two)</i>
<b>sōlus</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>alone, (I) alone, etc.</i>	

*Some praise one, others (praise) another.*

( ) **Alii** **alium** **laudent.**

*One flees in one direction, another (flees) in another (direction)*

( ) **Alius** **in aliam** **partem** **fugit**

## 66. a. CONNECTING WORDS

*Between Parts of Sentences*

**ac** or **atque** *and* **et** . . . **et**  
**-que** or **et** *and both* . . . **and**  
**nec** or **neque** *and not, nor*  
**vel, aut, or sive (seu)** *or*  
**nec** *neither . . . nec* *nor*  
**vel** *either . . . vel* *or*  
**sōlum** (**modo**) *only, just*  
**nōn sōlum** (**modo**) *not only*  
 . . . **sed etiam** *but also*

*Between Sentences*

**ita** or **sic** *so, in such a manner*  
**item** *in the same way, likewise*  
**itaque** or **igitur** *therefore*  
**tum** or **igitur** *then*  
**tum dēmum** *then at last, finally*  
**dēnique** *finally, in the end*  
**autem** (never stands first) *how-*  
*ever, but, besides*  
**nam, enim, namque** *for (indeed)*

*b. If the subject is plural, the verb must be plural; if the subject is singular, the verb must be singular.*

**Castra sunt** apud Arpinum *the camp is near Arpinum* § 77 *b*

**Uterque venit** *both are coming. Pauci eunt* *few are going*

**Aut Titus aut Galba venit** *either Titus or Galba is coming* § 108 *b*

*c. The preposition ē or ex (sometimes dē) is used when one or more are chosen from the number. See also § 58.)*

**ūnus ē** pueris or

**ūna ex** filiabus or

**ūnum ex** oppidis

**ūnus** puerorum

**ūna** filiārum

**ūnum** oppidorum

*one of the boys*

*one of the daughters*

*one of the towns*

**67. Numeral adverbs and neuter singular nouns of time.**

**semel** *once; semel atque iterum* *again and again*

*simple*

**bis** *twice; ter* *three times; quater* *four times* p. 29

*biscuit*

**bīdūm, bīdū** n. *a period of two days, two days*

*biweekly*

**biennium, (biennii) biennī** n. *(period of) two years*

*biennial*

**trīdūm, trīdū** n. *three days* Cf. p. 31, l. 26

*triple, triangle*

**triennium, (triennii) triennī** n. *three years*

*triennial*

**quadridūm, quadridū** n. *four days*

*quadruple*

**quadriennium, (quadriennii) quadriennī** n. *four years*

**spatium, (spatii) spatī** n. *space, distance, period*

*spacious*

**prīmum** (Acc.) *for the first time, first; primō (Abl.) *at first**



Circus Rōmānus.

68. a. The Accusative case is used to denote **Extent** or **Measure of Time, Space, Power, Action, etc.** § 74, 17

b. The Ablative is used to denote **Measure of Difference.**

c. The Ablative is used to denote **Time when, at which, in which, or during which.** § 74, 18

The following expressions must be carefully studied.

a. <i>How long?</i> <i>How far?</i> (§ 5 d)	b. <i>How much earlier</i> <i>or later?</i> etc (§ 5 j).	c. <i>When or Within</i> <i>what time?</i>
annum a year, for a year	annō ante § 74, 19 a year before, one year before,	priore annō or superiore annō the year before,
biennium (for) two years	a year previously, earlier by a year	the previous year, year before last
sex annōs (for) six years	septem ante annis seven years before	sex annis Cf. p. 29 in six years
nihil potest is not able at all	sex post annis six years later	proximō annō during the nearest year,
duo milia passuum (for) two miles	ā milibus passuum duobus 2 miles away	next year, last year illō diē on that day

## 69.

## LIST OF COMMON ADVERBS

tam so, so very; eum nōn tam amō quam timeō I do not love him as much as I fear him.

quam as, than; quam diū as long as; quam? how? quantity  
quam diū? how long? quam optimē potest as best he can

ante, antea previously, before, ago antique, ancient

prius sooner; prius quam sooner than, before prior, priority

post, postea afterward, later; postquam after postpone

nē (in commands or wishes) not; nē ite don't go none, nor

nōn (in positive denials) not; nōn it he is not going nonsense

**quidem** *indeed, to be sure*; **nē id quidem** *not even this*

**aliter** *differently*; **aliter atque (ac)** *otherwise than* **alibi**

**bene** *well, successfully*; **bene est** *it is well* **benefit**

**melius** *better, more happily, rather well, too well* **ameliorate**

**optimē** *best, very well*; **quam optimē** *as best (one can)* **optimist**

**male** *ill, badly*; **Mārcō male vult** *wishes Mark ill* **malice**

**peius** *not so well, worse, too badly, less happily* **malign**

**pessimē** *worst*; **quam pessimē** *as badly as one can* **pessimist**

**celeriter** *speedily, soon, in haste, rapidly* **accelerate**

**celerius** *more quickly, rather quickly, too quickly*

**celerrimē** *very quickly*; **quam celerrimē** *as quickly as possible*

**diū** *long, for a long time*; **diūtius** *longer, too long*

**facile** *easily*; **facilius** *more easily, rather easily* **facility**

**facillimē** *most easily*; **quam facillimē** *as easily as one can*

**lātē** *widely, extensively*; **longē lātēque** *far and wide* **latitude**

**lātius** *more widely, rather widely, too widely*

**lātissimē** *very widely*; **quam lātissimē** *as widely as possible*

**longē** *far*; **by far**; **longius** *farther, too far* **longitude**

**longissimē** *farthest*; **quam longissimē** *as far as possible*

**magis** *more, rather*; **magis arduus** *steeper, too steep* **master**

**maximē** *most, very, especially*; **maximē arduus** *steepest*

**minus** *not so much, less, not*; **minus facile** *not so easily*

**minimē** *least, not at all*; **minimē saepe** *very seldom* **minimize**

**saepe** *more than once, often*; **minus saepe** *less frequently*

**saepius** *over and over, again and again, oftener, too often*

**latinē** *after the manner of the Latins, in Latin, in the Latin way*

**graecē** *after the manner of the Greeks, in the Greek way, in*

*Greek*

**70.** The following *neuter singulars* are mostly adjectives used as nouns denoting *amount* and *value*. Cf. §§ 91-2.

**tantum, tantī** n. *so much, so much value, so great an amount*;  
quid tantī est, quantī lūmen? *what is of so much (value) as light?* tantum bonī *so much (of) good* (Gen., cf. § 72)

**quantum, quantī** n. *as much, as much value, as great an amount, as*;  
tantum legit, quantum legō *he reads as much as I read*  
legit quantum potest *he reads as much as he can*

**magnum, magnī** n. *a great amount, great value* *magnify*

**maximum, maximī** n. *very great (amount or value)* *maxim*

**magnō opere** or **magnopere** *with great effect, greatly*

**tantō opere** or **tantopere** *with so great earnestness, so greatly*

**quantō opere** ? or **quantopere** ? *with how great effect? how greatly?*

quantō opere Mārci interest ? *how much is-it-the-interest of —?*

**parvum, parvī** n. *little, a small (amount), little (value)*

**parum** (Nom. and Acc.) n. *too little, little, not enough*

**minimum, minimī** n. *very little, very small amount, least value*

**multum, multī** n. *much, great deal, amount or value* *multiply*

**permultum, permultī** n. *very much, very great deal or value*

**plūrimum, plūrimī** n. *very much, most, largest value* *plural*

**paulum, paulī** n. *a little*; **paulum morae** *a little (of) delay*

**perpaulum, -ī** or **paululum, -ī** n. *a very little, just a bit* § 56, 4

**plērumque** (cf. § 76), Nom. *most*; Acc. (*for the*) *most (part)*

**nihil** (or **nihilum**), **nihilī** n. *nothing, no value*; **nihilō** minus *no*

*less, less by nothing, none-the less*; **nihil commōtus** *nothing*

*daunted*; **nihil** (Acc.) *to no extent, not at all* §§ 5 d, 74-17

**satis** (Nom., Acc.) n. *enough, sufficient*; **satis bene** *well enough*

**plūs, plūris** n. *more, greater amount*; **plūs bonī** *more (of) good* § 150

**minus, minōris** n. *less, smaller value*; **minus bonī** *less (of) good*

**opus, operis** n. *work, effort, effect*; *need* (w. Abl.) § 71 c, 78 b

**bonum, bonī** n. *benefit, good*; **malum, malī** n. *an evil, bad*

## 71. a. NEUTER INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

*aliud* other, another, else; *quid aliud?* what else §§ 108–113  
*alterum* the other (of two); *alterum* the one . . . *alterum* the other  
*nūllum* no, not-one, none; *nūllum ex oppidis* not one of the towns;  
*nūllum oppidum* not-a town, no town § 118 b

*quid* anything *sī quid cōsili est* if there is any (of) plan  
*quidque* everything; *optimum quidque* everything (that is) best  
*omnia, omnium* n. pl. (like *paria* § 83 b) all (things) or everything  
*quid?* what? Acc. to what extent? *quid potest?* how able is he?  
*quod potest, mē dēfendit* defends me (to) what (extent) he can  
*utrum?* whether? which one (of the two)? *utrum* whether . . . *an* or  
*utrumque* both things; *in utrumque parātus est* is ready for either  
*neūtrum* neither (one of the two), neither (thing)

b. When indefinite *quis, quid* means *any one, anything*.  
*Quod quis nōvit dicere licet* what one knows, it is right to tell.  
*Sī quis quid audit, dicat* if one hears anything, he may say so.

c. *Opus* in the meaning *need* takes the Ablative.  
*Mihi opus est libris* for me there is (I have) need of books. § 56, 6

72. Words denoting indefinite quantity are followed by the *Genitive of the Whole Amount*.

*Quid bonī eī est?* what (of) good is there to him?  
*Nōn satis est causae* there is not enough (of) reason.

73. a. The *Genitive* is used to denote *indefinite value*.  
*Parvī aestimātur* it is rated of little (value).  
*Nihil est* he is of no worth (good for nothing). § 118 c  
*Equum parvī emit* he buys the horse for-some-small (amount).

b. The *Ablative* is used to denote *definite value or price*.  
*Eum parvō (pretiō) ēmit* he bought it at-a-certain small price.

c. *The Genitive denotes the person or thing concerned.*

*Rei publicae magnopere inter-est it is greatly the interest of the commonwealth, concerns the state greatly.* § 81 b

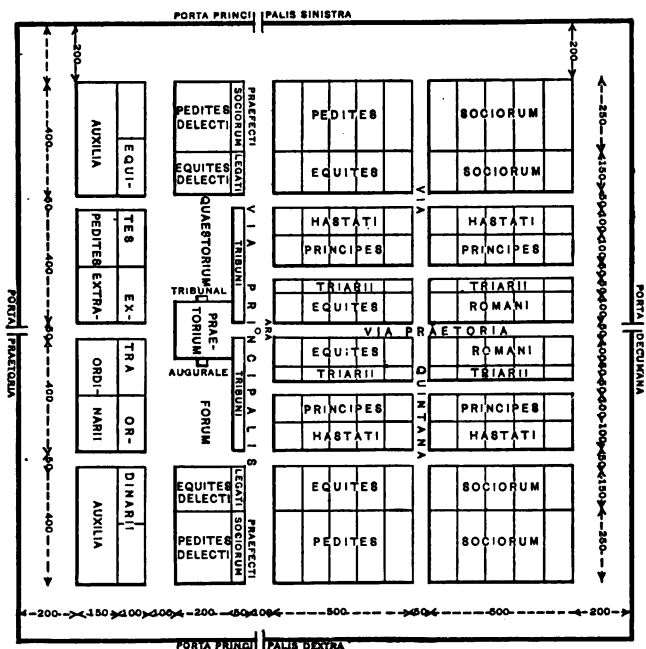
d. *Inter-esse meaning have-part-in takes the Dative.*

*Cōnsiliō puerōrum interest he takes-part-in the boys' plan.*

e. *The Dative often denotes the person or thing concerned.*

*Huic ratiōni locus est there is room for this method.* § 56, 3

*Mihi est praesidiō is (for) a protection to me* § 159 g



Castra Rōmāna.

74. No matter what the ending is, these rules never fail.

1. If a noun is the subject of a finite verb, it is *nominative*.

**Catō** vocat. *Cato calls* **Flūmen** celere est *the river is swift*

2. If a noun is the subject of an infinitive, it is *accusative*.

**Catōnem** vocāre audiō *I hear Cato call*

**Flūmen** celere esse sciō *I know the river is swift*

3. The predicate of a subject nominative is *nominative*.

The predicate of a subject accusative is *accusative*.

Is **Catō** est *it is Cato*

§ 42, 2

Eum **Catōnem** esse sciō *I know it is Cato*

A predicate noun denotes the same person or thing as the subject. The direct object is a different person or thing, unless the subject is acting upon itself. § 116 c

4. If a noun is used as the direct object, it is *accusative*.

**Catōnem** vidit *he saw Cato* **Sē** ipse culpat *he blames himself*

**Flūmen** videt *he sees the river* **Mē** accūsāt *he accuses me*

5. A predicate attached to the direct object is *accusative*.

Eum **Catōnem** dicunt *they call him Cato*

Eum **amicum** putant *they think him friendly*

6. If a noun is used as an indirect object, it is *dative*.

**Catōnī** librum dedit *gave Cato a book*

**Sōl** terrae lūmen dat *the sun gives the earth light*.

7. A noun used to call the attention of a person or address a person or thing is *vocative*.

Age, **Catō!** *come, Cato! act, Cato!*

8. Nouns in exclamations not addressed to any one are *accusative*.

**Ō** fortunātam **rem** publicam! *oh lucky state!*

**Mē** miserum! *poor me!*



## 144 Cases Are Easily Known by Their Use

9. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **post**, **propter**, **trāns**, etc., is *accusative*. § 57

**Per montis** *over the mountains*

**Trāns flūmen** *across the river*

**Propter vulnus** *on account of a wound*

**Apud eum** *at his house, in his eyes or mind*

10. Proper names of towns, small islands, and **domum**, *home*, or **rūs**, *to the country*, denoting place to which, are *accusative*. § 61

**Athēnās** *profectus started for Athens* **Domum** *it goes home*

**Bibracte** *ire vult will go to Bibracte* **Rūs ī** *go to the country*

11. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of **ā**, **ab**, **abs**, **cum**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, **prō**, **sine**, etc., is *ablative*. § 58

**Abs tē** *by thee* **Mēcum** *with me* **Prō mē** *in my interest*

12. Nouns or pronouns denoting means or instrument are *ablative*.

**Equō** *it rides on a horse* **Gladiō** *pugnat fights with a sword*

13. Proper names of towns, etc., denoting place from which, are *ablative*.

**Rōmā** *profectus est started from Rome* §§ 62-3

14. Proper names of towns, denoting place in which, are *locative*.

**Rōmae** *est is at Rome* **Gādibus** *fuit was in Gades* §§ 76-9

**Domī meae** *in my home* **Domī suae** *in his own home* § 83 a

15. Nouns without prepositions denoting cause are *ablative*.

**Puerōs dīligentiā** *laudat praises the boys for their diligence*

**Quā rē mē accūsāt?** *on account of what does he accuse me?*

16. A noun denoting in what respect one excels is *ablative*.

Reliquōs virtūte praecedunt *surpass the rest in valor*

17. A noun denoting length of time or extent of space, action, being, state, power, etc., is *accusative of measure*.

Annum āfuit *was away a year*

Multum abest *is away a great deal*

Maximam partem frumentō vivunt *live a very great deal on grain.*

18. Nouns denoting time in which or at which are *ablative*.

Annō *within a year* Illō ipsō diē *on that very day* § 68

Hieme *in winter* Nocte *at night, during the night*

19. Nouns denoting how much one exceeds or precedes another or differs from another are *ablative*.

Annō ante *a year earlier*

Ā milibus passuum v. *5 miles away*

Quō plūs, eō melius *the more, the better*

Multō melius *much better*

20. A noun followed by *causā for-the-sake, for* is *genitive*.

Frumentī causā morātur *is delaying for (the sake of) grain*

21. A noun or pronoun inserted by the side of another to explain it more fully stands in the *same case by apposition*.

Hoc lēgātō Cicerōnī nūntiat *reports this to lieutenant Cicero*

The *ablative* or a phrase is used in apposition *with a locative*.

Athēnis urbe Graeciae *in Athens a city of Greece* § 77

Rhodī in insulā magnā *on Rhodes a large island* § 76

22. Nouns connected by *et, -que, nec, etc.*, are usually in the same case, verbs thus connected are of the same mode.

Mārcō et Galbae *to Mark and Galba*

Nec timet neque ōdit *neither fears nor hates*

Note. — Cf. also §§ 5, 59–63, 71–3, 94–6, 105, 109, 157.

## 75. Nouns Having -ī in the Genitive Singular

## SINGULAR

- N. inimicus* a foe (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)  
*G. inimici* a foe's; of a foe<sup>1</sup>; an enemy's; of an enemy, etc.  
*D. inimicō* a foe (indir. obj.); to a foe; for a foe, etc.  
*Ac. inimicum* a foe (subj. of Inf.; dir. obj.); ad *inimicum* to a foe,  
*V. inimice* foe! O foe! thou foe! [for a foe, against a foe<sup>2</sup>  
*Ab. inimicō* than a foe; ab *inimicō*, by a foe, from an enemy;  
*cum inimicō* with a foe; *dē inimicō* about a foe

## PLURAL

- N. inimici* foes (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)  
*G. inimicōrum* foes'; of foes; enemies'; of enemies, etc.  
*D. inimicis* foes (indir. obj.); to foes; for foes, etc.  
*Ac. inimicōs* foes (dir. obj.; subj. of Inf.); ad *inimicōs*, to foes,  
*V. inimici* foes! O foes! ye foes! [toward foes, etc.  
*Ab. inimicis* than foes; ab *inimicis* from enemies, by foes; *cum*  
*inimicis* with foes; *sine inimicis* without foes

76. When the base ends in -r-, the endings, -us and -e, are lost in many words. When the base ends in -i-, contracted forms occur in the singular; -ī and -ie become -i.

## SINGULAR

- |                                  |                    |                           |                  |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>N. Rhodus</i> <sup>3</sup> | <i>filius son</i>  | <i>vesper</i>             | <i>magister</i>  |
| 2. <i>G. Rhodī</i>               | <i>fili (fili)</i> | <i>vesperī</i>            | <i>magistrī</i>  |
| 3. <i>D. Rhodō</i>               | <i>filiō</i>       | <i>vesperō</i>            | <i>magistrō</i>  |
| 4. <i>Ac. Rhodum</i>             | <i>filium</i>      | <i>vesperum</i>           | <i>magistrum</i> |
| 5. <i>V. Rhode</i>               | <i>fili</i>        | <i>vesper</i>             | <i>magister</i>  |
| 6. <i>Ab. Rhodō</i>              | <i>filiō</i>       | <i>vesperō</i>            | <i>magistrō</i>  |
| 7. <i>L. Rhodī in Rhodes</i>     |                    | <i>vesperī at evening</i> |                  |

<sup>1</sup> Both case forms and roundabout phrases have to be used in English.

<sup>2</sup> See § 57.    <sup>3</sup> Fem.; names of islands are feminine; §§ 54, 55 a, e, f.

## PLURAL

1. <i>N.</i> Philippī	filiī	[plērīque <sup>1</sup> <i>most</i>	magistrī
2. <i>G.</i> Philippōrum	filiōrum	plērōrumque	magistrōrum
3. <i>D.</i> Philippīs	filiīs	plērisque	magistrīs
4. <i>Ac.</i> Philippōs	filiōs	plērōsque	magistrōs
5. <i>V.</i> Philippī	filiī		magistrī
6. <i>Ab.</i> Philippīs	filiīs	plērisque	magistrīs
7. <i>L.</i> Philippīs at Philippi			

## 77. a. First Declension

## b. Second Declension

Feminine (Masculine) <sup>2</sup>

Neuter

Genitive Singular -ae

Genitive Singular -i

## SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> Alexandrēa <sup>3</sup>	prōvincia	cōnsilium <i>plan</i>	Arpīnum
<i>G.</i> Alexandrēae	prōvinciae	cōnsiliī, cōnsili	Arpīnī
<i>D.</i> Alexandrēae	prōvinciae	cōnsiliō	Arpīnō
<i>Ac.</i> Alexandrēam	prōvinciam	cōnsilium	Arpīnum
<i>V.</i> Alexandrēa	prōvincia	cōnsilium	Arpīnum
<i>Ab.</i> Alexandrēā	prōvinciā	cōnsiliō	Arpīnō
<i>L.</i> Alexandrēae at Alexandria			Arpīnī

## PLURAL

<i>N.</i> Syrācūsae	prōvinciae	cōnsilia <i>plans</i>	Leuctra
<i>G.</i> Syrācūsārum	prōvinciārum	cōnsiliōrum	Leuctrōrum
<i>D.</i> Syrācūsīs	prōvinciīs	cōnsiliīs	Leuctrīs
<i>Ac.</i> Syrācūsās	prōvinciās	cōnsilia	Leuctra
<i>V.</i> Syrācūsae	prōvinciae	cōnsilia	Leuctra
<i>Ab.</i> Syrācūsīs	prōvinciīs	cōnsiliīs	Leuctrīs
<i>L.</i> Syrācūsīs in Syracuse			Leuctrīs

<sup>1</sup> See § 119 b for the meaning of the suffix -que.<sup>2</sup> Feminine except when they denote male beings.<sup>3</sup> Greek noun; cf. §§ 28 b, 51.

## SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> boreās <sup>1</sup> m.	<i>filia daughter</i>	<i>oppidum town</i>	<i>vulgus crowd</i>
<i>G.</i> boreae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppidī</i>	<i>vulgī</i>
<i>D.</i> boreae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppidō</i>	<i>vulgō</i>
<i>Ac.</i> boream	<i>filiam</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>vulgus</i>
<i>V.</i> boreā <sup>1</sup>	<i>filia</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>vulgus</i>
<i>Ab.</i> boreā	<i>filia</i>	<i>oppidō</i>	<i>vulgō</i>

## PLURAL

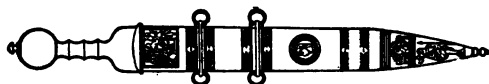
<i>N.</i> Athēnae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppida towns</i>	<i>castra camp</i>
<i>G.</i> Athēnārum	<i>filiārum</i>	<i>oppidōrum</i>	<i>castrōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> Athēnis	<i>filiabus</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>oppidis</i>	<i>castris</i>
<i>Ac.</i> Athēnās	<i>filiās</i>	<i>oppida</i>	<i>castra</i>
<i>V.</i> Athēnae	<i>filiae</i>	<i>oppida</i>	<i>castra</i>
<i>Ab.</i> Athēnis	<i>filiabus</i>	<i>oppidis</i>	<i>castris</i>
<i>L.</i> Athēnis at Athens § 74, 10.			

## 78. The Third Declension — Consonant Stems

## SINGULAR

*a. Masculine or Feminine**b. Neuter*

<i>N.</i> (iūdec s)	iūdex <sup>3</sup> judge	virgō maiden	ōs mouth	flūmen
<i>G.</i> (iūdic is)	iūdicis	virginis	ōris	flūminis
<i>D.</i> (iūdic ī)	iūdicī	virginī	ōrī	flūminī
<i>Ac.</i> (iūdic em)	iūdicem	virginem	ōs § 42	flūmen
<i>V.</i> (iūdec s)	iūdex § 46	virgō § 52	ōs	flūmen
<i>Ab.</i> (iūdic e)	iūdice	virgine	ōre	flūmine

<sup>1</sup> Greek nom. § 51.<sup>2</sup> § 55 a.<sup>3</sup> -cs is always written -x.

Gladius Rōmānus.

## PLURAL

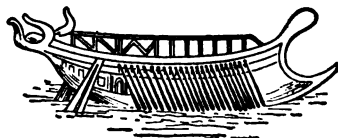
N.	iūdicēs	virginēs	ōra	flūmina
G.	iūdicum	virginum	ōrum	flūminum
D. § 46	iūdicibus	virginibus	ōribus	flūminibus
Ac.	iūdicēs	virginēs	ōra	flūmina
V.	iūdicēs	virginēs	ōra	flūmina
Ab.	iūdicibus	virginibus	ōribus	flūminibus

## SINGULAR

	Stem	Base	Stem	Base		
N.	(cūstōd s)	cūstōs <sup>1</sup>	(vulnes)	vulnus <sup>2</sup>	(rūs)	rūs <sup>3</sup>
G.	(cūstōd is)	cūstōdis	(vulnes is)	vulneris <sup>2</sup>	(rūs is)	rūris <sup>3</sup>
D.	(cūstōd ī)	cūstōdī	(vulnes ī)	vulnerī	(rūs ī)	rūrī
Ac.	(cūstōd em)	cūstōdem	(vulnes)	vulnus	(rūs)	rūs
V.	(cūstōd s)	cūstōs	(vulnes)	vulnus	(rūs)	rūs
Ab.	(cūstōd e)	cūstōde	(vulnes e)	vulnere	(rūs e)	rūre
L.					(rūs ī)	rūre

## PLURAL

N.	cūstōdēs <i>guards</i>	vulnera <i>wounds</i>	rūra
G.	cūstōdum	vulnerum	rūrum
D.	cūstōdibus § 42	vulneribus § 42	rūribus
Ac.	cūstōdēs	vulnera	rūra
V.	cūstōdēs	vulnera	rūra
Ab.	cūstōdibus	vulneribus	rūribus

<sup>1</sup> -ds and -ts become -s.<sup>2</sup> Final -es becomes -us; -s- between vowels becomes -r-. Cf. *was* and *were*.<sup>3</sup> Cf. *rustic* and *rural*. See §§ 42; 74, 10.

Nāvis Antīqua.

## 79. Third Declension -i- Stems and Mixed Stems

## SINGULAR

a. Masculine or Feminine			b. Neuter	
Base	Stem <sup>1</sup>	Base	Stem <sup>1</sup>	Base
N. nāvis <i>ship</i>	(parti s)	pars <i>part</i>	(mari)	mare <i>sea</i>
G. nāvis	(parti s)	partis	(mari s)	maris
D. nāvi	(parti i)	parti	(mari i)	marī
Ac. nāvim, nāvem	(parti m)	partem	(mari)	mare <sup>2</sup>
V. nāvis	(parti s)	pars § 46	(mari)	mare
Ab. nāvi, nāve	(parti e)	parte	(mari e)	marī

## PLURAL

N. nāvēs	(parti ēs)	partēs	(mari a)	maria
G. nāvium	(parti um)	partium	(mari um)	marium
D. nāvibus	(parti bus)	partibus	(mari bus)	maribus
Ac. nāvis <sup>3</sup>	(parti ēs)	partis	(mari a)	maria
V. nāvēs	(parti ēs)	partēs	(mari a)	maria
Ab. nāvibus	(parti bus)	partibus	(mari bus)	maribus

## SINGULAR

c. Masculine or Feminine			d. Neuter	
N. Arar	(nūbēs) <sup>4</sup>	nūbēs <i>cloud</i>	Bibracte	vectīgāl <i>tax</i>
G. Araris	(nūbi s)	nūbis	Bibractis	vectīgālis
D. Arari	(nūbi i)	nūbi	Bibracti	vectīgālī
Ac. Ararim	(nūbi m)	nūbem	Bibracte	vectīgāl
V. Arar	(nūbēs)	nūbēs	Bibracte	vectīgāl
Ab. Arari	(nūbi e)	nūbe	Bibracte	vectīgālī
L.			Bibracte	

<sup>1</sup> Learn the base. Stems are given merely to show the formation.<sup>2</sup> -i- of the stem remains as -e in a few nouns and most adjectives.<sup>3</sup> Printed -ēs in many editions of Latin authors.<sup>4</sup> The stem nūbē- is of the Fifth Declension; nūbi- of the Third.

## PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>Gādēs Gades</i>	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>moenia walls</i>	<i>vectigālia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>Gādium</i>	<i>nūbium</i>	<i>moenium</i>	<i>vectigālium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>Gādibus</i>	<i>nūbibus</i>	<i>moenibus</i>	<i>vectigālibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>Gādīs</i>	<i>nūbīs</i>	<i>moenia</i>	<i>vectigālia</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>Gādēs</i>	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>moenia</i>	<i>vectigālia</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>Gādibus</i>	<i>nūbibus</i>	<i>moenibus</i>	<i>vectigālibus</i>
<i>L.</i>	<i>Gādibus</i>			

80. Between vowels *u* becomes *v*:

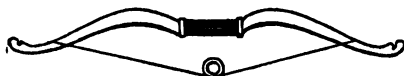
## SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	( <i>vīs</i> )	<i>vīs force</i>	<i>sūs pig</i>	( <i>bou s</i> )	<i>bōs cow</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>G.</i>	—		<i>suis</i>	( <i>bou is</i> )	<i>bovis</i>	<i>Iovis</i>
<i>D.</i>	—		<i>suī</i>	( <i>bou ī</i> )	<i>bovī</i>	<i>Iovī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	( <i>vi m</i> )	<i>vim</i>	<i>suem</i>	( <i>bou em</i> )	<i>bovem</i>	<i>Iovem</i>
<i>V.</i>	( <i>vīs</i> )	<i>vīs</i>	<i>sūs</i>	( <i>bou s</i> )	<i>bōs</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	( <i>vi e</i> )	<i>vī</i>	<i>sue</i>	( <i>bou e</i> )	<i>bove</i>	<i>Iove</i>

## PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	( <i>vīs ēs</i> )	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>	( <i>bou ēs</i> )	<i>bovēs kine, oxen</i>
<i>G.</i>		<i>vīrium</i>	<i>suum</i>	( <i>bou um</i> )	<i>boum</i>
<i>D.</i>		<i>vīribus</i>	<i>suibus</i> <sup>1</sup>	( <i>bou bus</i> )	<i>būbus</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>Ac.</i>		<i>vīrīs -ēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>	( <i>bou ēs</i> )	<i>bovēs</i>
<i>V.</i>		<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>	( <i>bou ēs</i> )	<i>bovēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>		<i>vīribus</i>	<i>suibus</i>	( <i>bou bus</i> )	<i>būbus</i> <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Also *sūbus*.    <sup>2</sup> Also *bōbus*.    <sup>3</sup> Originally *Iou + pater Father Jove*.



Arcus.



## 81. a. Fourth Declension

## b. Fifth Declension

SINGULAR					
Mas. or Fem. Nouns		Neuter	Feminine (except <i>diēs</i> )		
Stem	Base	Base	Stem		
1. N. ( <i>domu s</i> )	<i>domus</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>cornū</i>	( <i>diē s</i> )	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
2. G. ( <i>domu is</i> )	<i>domūs</i>	<i>cornūs</i>	( <i>diē ī</i> )	<i>diēī</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>reī</i> <sup>2</sup>
3. D. ( <i>domu ī</i> )	<i>domuī -ū</i>	<i>cornū</i>	( <i>diē ī</i> )	<i>diēī</i>	<i>reī</i>
4. Ac. ( <i>domu m</i> )	<i>domum</i>	<i>cornū</i>	( <i>diē m</i> )	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>
5. V. ( <i>domu s</i> )	<i>domus</i>	<i>cornū</i>	( <i>diē s</i> )	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
6. Ab. ( <i>domu e</i> )	<i>domū</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>cornū</i>	( <i>diē e</i> )	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>
PLURAL					
1. N. ( <i>domu ēs</i> )	<i>domūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>		<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
2. G. ( <i>domu um</i> )	<i>domuum</i>	<i>cornuum</i>		<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>
3. D. ( <i>domu bus</i> )	<i>domibus</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>cornibus</i>		<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
4. Ac. ( <i>domu ēs</i> )	<i>domūs</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>cornua</i>		<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
5. V. ( <i>domu ēs</i> )	<i>domūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>		<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
6. Ab. ( <i>domu bus</i> )	<i>domibus</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>cornibus</i>		<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

82. The Third Declension need give no trouble. Learn the **Nominative**, **Genitive**, and **Gender** of every noun.

a. If you wish to find the Vocative Singular of any Third Declension noun, it is like the Nominative Singular.

b. The *Accusative Singular* of any *Neuter* Third Declension noun is like the Nominative (given in the vocabulary).

c. The remaining forms of the Singular and all the Plural forms are perfectly regular. To write any one of them cor-

<sup>1</sup> *Domus* (f.) is a model for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension.

<sup>2</sup> The ending is *-eī* (when not preceded by *-i-*) in *spēs, speī* f. *hope*; *fidēs, fideī*, f. *faith* and *plēbēs, plēbeī* f. *common people*. <sup>3</sup> *-ubus* is found in *tribus, tribūs* *tribe* and a few others. <sup>4</sup> See also § 60.

rectly simply get the *base* (by dropping *-is*, *-um*, or *-ium* from the *genitive* and annex the ending.

*d.* The preposition **in** governs either the *ablative* or the *accusative*. All nouns in the following phrases are *accusative* for not one of them has an *ablative* ending.

**Puer in caput** volvitur *the boy tumbles on his head.*

**Hoc in aliud tempus** cōnfert *he puts this off till another time.*

**Cōnsilia in melius** refert *she changes her plans for the better.*

**In reliquum tempus** *for the rest (of) the time ; from now on.*

**In castra**<sup>1</sup> revertuntur *they are returning to the camp.* Obs. p. 16.

**Frūmentum in oppida** comportant *they gather grain into the towns.*

*e.* The only *Ablative* endings (§ 55 *a, b*) are :

**-ā, -is, -ābus, -ē, -ēbus, -e, -ī, -ibus, -ō, -ōbus, -ū, -ubus**

Any noun (except **nihil**) not ending in **-a, -e, -am, -em, -im, -um** or in **-ās, -ēs, -īs, -ōs, -ūs**, if *accusative*, is instantly known to be *neuter* and *singular* and *third* declension, as it can have no ending. § 55 *b, e, f.*

### EXAMPLES

**Flūmen altum esse** scītis *you know the river to be deep.*

**Nihil patiuntur vīnī inferri** *they allow no wine to be brought in.*

**Iter facit** *makes a journey.* **Flūmen trānsītis** *you cross the river.*

**Propter annī tempus** *because-of the time of year.*

**Ad mare**<sup>2</sup> *toward the sea.* **Propter vulnus** *because of a wound.*

Thus **flūmen, iter, tempus, vulnus, mare** are known to be *neuter singular* and *third declension* because they are *accusative*.

<sup>1</sup> See also page 18, note 1. <sup>2</sup>**Mare** is *Acc. Neut.* **Ad** takes the *Acc.* Cf. § 79 *b.* *Accusatives* in **-e** or with no ending are *neuter, singular, and third declension.*

**83.** Adjectives have forms for each gender, and *agree* with the nouns they modify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

**a. First and Second Declension****b. Third Declension****meus, mea, meum** *my, mine***pār, pār, pār;** Gen. *paris equal*

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	meus <sup>1</sup>	mea	meum	pār	pār	pār
G.	meī	meae	meī	paris	paris	paris
D.	meō	meae	meō	parī	parī	parī
Ac.	meum	meam	meum	parem	parem	pār <sup>2</sup>
V.	mī <sup>3</sup>	mea	meum	pār	pār	pār
Ab.	meō	meā	meō	parī	parī	parī
L.	(meī)	meae <sup>4</sup>	(meī)			

## PLURAL

N.	meī	meae	mea	parēs	parēs	paria
G.	meōrum	meārum	meōrum	parium	parium	parium
D.	meīs	meīs	meīs	paribus	paribus	paribus
Ac.	meōs	meās	mea	paris <sup>5</sup>	paris <sup>5</sup>	paria
V.	meī	meae	mea	parēs	parēs	paria
Ab.	meīs	meīs	meīs	paribus	paribus	paribus

<sup>1</sup> Cf. § 76.    <sup>2</sup> Note that three forms in the neuter have no case ending.  
 Cf. § 78 b.    <sup>3</sup> A contract form (for *meo*). Cf. §§ 76, 90.    <sup>4</sup> Loc. *domī*  
*meae at my home.*    <sup>5</sup> Printed *-ēs* in many editions.



Iūmenta carrōs dūcunt.

**84.** Present Participles and a few other Third Declension adjectives are declined like **potēns** *able, powerful*. §§ 97, 183 c.

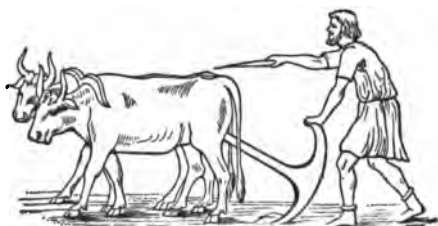
SINGULAR		
	M.	F.
N.	potēns <sup>1</sup>	potēns
G.	potentis	potentis
D.	potenti	potenti
Ac.	potentem	potēns
V.	potēns	potēns
Ab.	potenti (-e) <sup>2</sup>	potenti (-e)

PLURAL		
N.	potentēs	potentia
G.	potentium	potentium
D.	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	potentis <sup>3</sup>	potentia
V.	potentēs	potentia
Ab.	potentibus	potentibus

<sup>1</sup> See § 55 b, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> -e in all participial uses; -i in adjective uses.

<sup>3</sup> Written -ēs in many editions of the classics.



Agricola bōbus arat.

85. **audāx, audāx, audāx**; Gen. **audācis**, *bold, venturesome*

	SINGULAR		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<b>audāx</b> <sup>1</sup> § 46	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audāx</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>audācis</b>	<b>audācis</b>	<b>audācis</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>audācī</b>	<b>audācī</b>	<b>audācī</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>audācem</b>	<b>audācem</b>	<b>audāx</b>
<i>V.</i>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audāx</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	<b>audācī (-e)</b>	<b>audācī (-e)</b>	<b>audācī (-e)</b>

	PLURAL		
<i>N.</i>	<b>audācēs</b>	<b>audācēs</b>	<b>audācia</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>audācium</b>	<b>audācium</b>	<b>audācium</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>audācibus</b>	<b>audācibus</b>	<b>audācibus</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>audācis</b>	<b>audācis</b>	<b>audācia</b>
<i>V.</i>	<b>audācēs</b>	<b>audācēs</b>	<b>audācia</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	<b>audācibus</b>	<b>audācibus</b>	<b>audācibus</b>

86. The majority of adjectives of the Third Declension are *i*-stems; **vetus, vetus, vetus**, Gen. **veteris** *old*, and a few others are not *i*-stems.

	SINGULAR		
<i>N.</i>	<b>vetus</b> <sup>2</sup> § 42, 1	<b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>veteris</b>	<b>veteris</b>	<b>veteris</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>veterī</b>	<b>veterī</b>	<b>veterī</b>
<i>Ac.</i>	<b>veterem</b>	<b>veterem</b>	<b>vetus</b>
<i>V.</i>	<b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>	<b>vetus</b>
<i>Ab.</i>	<b>vetere</b>	<b>vetere</b>	<b>vetere</b>

<sup>1</sup> Note that *cs* is always written *x*.      <sup>2</sup> *-s* becomes *-r-* between vowels.

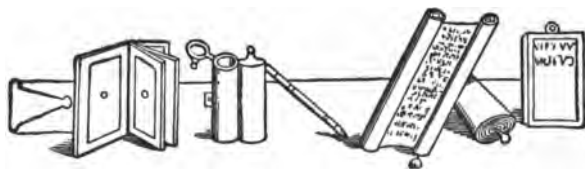


	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
G.	veterum	veterum	veterum
D.	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
V.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus

87. Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre of *October*.

	SINGULAR		
N.	Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
G.	Octōbris	Octōbris	Octōbris
D.	Octōbrī	Octōbrī	Octōbrī
Ac.	Octōbrem	Octōbrem	Octōbre
V.	Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
Ab.	Octōbrī	Octōbrī	Octōbrī

	PLURAL		
N.	Octōbrēs	Octōbrēs	Octōbria
G.	Octōbrium	Octōbrium	Octōbrium
D.	Octōbribus	Octōbribus	Octōbribus
Ac.	Octōbris	Octōbris	Octōbria
V.	Octōbrēs	Octōbrēs	Octōbria
Ab.	Octōbribus	Octōbribus	Octōbribus



Tabulae, Calamus, Liber.

88.

Positive Degree <sup>1</sup>*brevis, brevis, breve, short, brief*

## SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>breve</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>brevis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>brevem</i>	<i>brevem</i>	<i>breve</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>breve</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevī</i>

## PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>brevēs</i>	<i>brevēs</i>	<i>brevia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>brevium</i>	<i>brevium</i>	<i>brevium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>brevibus</i>	<i>brevibus</i>	<i>brevibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>brevīs</i>	<i>brevīs</i>	<i>brevia</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>brevēs</i>	<i>brevēs</i>	<i>brevia</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>brevibus</i>	<i>brevibus</i>	<i>brevibus</i>

Observe that the comparatives are not *i*-stems.

89.

Comparative Degree <sup>2</sup>*brevior, brevior, brevius shorter, rather short, too short*

## SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>brevior</i>	<i>brevior</i>	<i>brevius</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>breviōris</i>	<i>breviōris</i>	<i>breviōris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>breviōrī</i>	<i>breviōrī</i>	<i>breviōrī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>breviōrem</i>	<i>breviōrem</i>	<i>brevius</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>brevior</i>	<i>brevior</i>	<i>brevius</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>breviōre</i>	<i>breviōre</i>	<i>breviōre</i>

<sup>1</sup> All adjectives thus far have been of the positive degree.

<sup>2</sup> The comparative of *brevis*, *brevis*, *breve*, is a model for all comparatives except *plūs*.

PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.
N. breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
G. breviōrum	breviōrum	breviōrum
D. breviōribus	breviōribus	breviōribus
Ac. breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
V. breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
Ab. breviōribus	breviōribus	breviōribus

90. Superlative Degree

brevissimus, brevissima, brevissimum *shortest, very short*  
*quam brevissimus as short as possible*

SINGULAR		
N. brevissimus	brevissima	brevissimum
G. brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissimī
D. brevissimō	brevissimae	brevissimō
Ac. brevissimum	brevissimam	brevissimum
V. brevissime	brevissima	brevissimum
Ab. brevissimō	brevissimā	brevissimō

PLURAL		
N. brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissima
G. brevissimōrum	brevissimārum	brevissimōrum
D. brevissimīs	brevissimīs	brevissimīs
Ac. brevissimōs	brevissimās	brevissima
V. brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissima
Ab. brevissimīs	brevissimīs	brevissimīs

All superlatives, perfect and future participles, and gerundives as well as many adjectives of the positive degree are declined thus. Compare §§ 75-7, 83 a.



**91.** *tālis, tālis, tāle such, of such a sort; tālis such — quālis as quālis, quālis, quāle as, such as, and of this sort, of what sort?*

*quālis ascēnsus est? what kind of climb is it? facilis easy quālis equus! what a horse! tālis, quālis Titi such as Titus' amicus, amīca, amīcum friendly 3 amīcitia -ae f. friendship amīcior, amīcior, amīcius more friendly, rather kind, too kind*

*praesidium quam amīcissimum as friendly a guard as possible fortis, fortis, forte brave, strong fortiter bravely Cf. § 69*

*fortissimus, fortissima, fortissimum very brave, bravest audāx, audāx, audāx; Gen. audācis bold, daring audācter boldly audācior, audācior, audācius bolder, rather bold, too bold*

*idōneus, idōneus, idōneum fit, suitable, adapted 3 or ad 4 magis idōneus, magis idōnea, magis idōneum more suitable*

*potēns, potēns, potēns; Gen. potentis (cf. § 84) able, powerful potentior -ior -ius more powerful potentissimus -a -um ablest prūdēns, prūdēns, prūdēns wise, far-sighted prūdentē wisely nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile famous, prominent, noble*

*nōtus -a -um known, well-known nōtior -ior -ius better known nōtissimus -a -um very well known nōtitia -ae f. knowledge*

*pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful pulchrē beautifully pulchrior -ior -ius handsomer pulcherrimus -a -um very beautiful*

*liber, libera, liberum free liberior -ior -ius freer Cf. § 69*

*liberrimus -a -um freest liberē freely liberrimē very freely*

*bonus -a -um good, excellent melior -ior -ius better Cf. § 69*

*bonitās -tātis f. goodness optimus -a -um best, most excellent*

*malus -a -um bad, evil, ill peior -ior -ius worse, poorer*

*pessimus -a -um worst maleficium -i n. mischief, wrong doing*

*similis -is -e like 2 or 3 similiter in a similar way*

*similior -ior -ius more like simillimus -a -um very like*

*mātūrus -a -um early mātūrē early mātūrius earlier Cf. § 69*

*mātūrāre hasten, make haste Inf. o. mātūrītās -tātis ripeness*

*mātūrrius -a -um earliest, very early mātūrriimē very early*

**92. tantus -a -um** *so great; tantus as large* — **quantus** *as quantus, quanta, quantum as, as great as, how great? how large?*

**tantus fuit** *he was as great* — **quantus Cicerō** *as Cicero*  
**lātus -a -um** *wide* **lātē** *widely* **lātitudō, lātitudinis** *f. width*  
**lātiōr -ior -ius** *wider, too wide* **lātius** *more widely, too widely*  
**lātissimū -a -um** *very wide, widest* **lātissimē** *most widely* § 69  
**angustus -a -um** *narrow* **angustiae -ārum** *narrows, defile, straits*  
**longus -a -um** *long* **longē** *far* **longitūdō, longitūdinis** *f. length*  
**longior -ior -ius** *longer, more distant* **longissimū -a -um** *longest*  
**brevis -is -e** *short* **breviter** *briefly* **brevitās -tātis** *f. shortness*  
**altus -a -um** *high, deep* **altē** *highly* **altitūdō -tūdinis** *f. height*  
**altior -ior -ius** *higher, deeper* **altius** *more highly, more deeply*  
**humilis -is -e** *low, humble* **humilitās, humilitātis** *f. lowness*  
**humilior -ior -ius** *lower* **humillimū -a -um** *lowest*  
**facilis -is -e** *easy* **facultās -tātis** *f. opportunity, privilege (ease)*  
**facilior -ior -ius** *easier* **facile** *easily* **facilius** *more easily*  
**facillimū -a -um** *easiest* **facillimē** *most easily, very easily*  
**difficilis -is -e** *hard, difficult* **difficulter** *with difficulty*  
**ingēns, ingēns, ingēns** ; Gen. **ingentis** *huge, enormous, great*  
**magnus -a -um** *large, great* **maior, maior, maius** *larger*  
**maximū -a -um** *largest* **magis** *more* **maximē** *especially, most*  
**parvus -a -um** *small, little* **minor, minor, minus** *smaller*  
**minimū -a -um** *smallest* **minus** *less, not* **minimē** *not at all*  
**inferī** (those) *below* **Inferior -ior -ius** *lower* Cf. § 64  
**infimū -a -um** or **imū -a -um** *lowest, bottom-of*  
**superī** (those) *above* **superior -ior -ius** *upper, higher, former* ;  
**superiōra loca** *the higher places or heights* § 68 c  
**suprēmū -a -um** *highest, last* ; **summū -a -um** *highest, greatest, very prominent, top-of* **summa -ae** *f. total, management*  
**prae** w. abl. *before* **prior, prior, prius** *former, previous* Cf. § 69  
**priore nocte** *night before last* ; **prius** — (quam) *sooner, before*  
**primū -a -um** *foremost* ; **prima vēnit** *she was the first to come*

**93.** Nouns are put in Apposition with—that is, *by the side of*—other nouns to emphasize or explain them more fully. Appositives are *aside from the direct assertion*. They stand *in the same case* as the words explained.

Amīcō Mārcō (dic) (tell) *our friend Mark* Cf. § 5 a, b', c.

The Latin words for *my, our, his, their*, etc., are often omitted.

**94.** The ever-present case forms allow Latin to express much in few words. In order to render Latin appositives accurately in English, it is often necessary to supply *who, which, that, as he, since it, because she, while we, when he, if they, even if I, though it*, etc., together with some form of the verb *be*. The words supplied vary with the idea conveyed.

- a. Mārcō amīcō (dic) (tell) *Mark — a friend;*  
 (tell) *Mark who-is-a friend;*  
 (tell) *Mark as-he-is-a friend;*  
 (tell) *Mark since-he-is-a friend;*  
 (tell) *Mark because-he-is-a friend;*  
 (tell) *Mark while-he-is-friendly;*  
 (tell) *Mark if-he-is friendly;*
- b. Titō inimīcō (dic) (tell) *Titus even-if-he-is unfriendly*

(is) Absēns mē hostem reddidit (he) *made me an enemy (to them)*  
*though-he-never-saw-me*

(eius) Absentis crūdēlītātem horrent *they shudder-at his cruelty,*  
*although-he-is-absent; dread his cruelty when-he-is-absent*

(ei) Absentī auxilium mittit *sends him aid while-he-is-away*

(eum) Absentem accūsārunt *they accused him while-he-was-absent;*  
*accused him when-he-was-absent*

Eō invitō, ire nōn audent *they do not dare go because-he-is-unwilling;*  
*they do not dare go while he-is-unwilling*

95. Words denoting time or circumstances may be

- a. A part of the principal assertion (any case)      b. Entirely aside from the principal assertion (Abl.)

1. (Attached to the subject)      1. Favoring circumstance

**Mē rogat cōsul**

*(he) invites me (while or because he is) consul*

**Eō cōsule, rogor**

*I am invited (while or because) he (is) consul*

2. (Attached to a modifier)      2. Time at which (Abl.)

**Mihi cōsuli dēsignātō accidit**

*it befell me (when I was) consul elect*

**Mē cōsule dēsignātō, accidit**

*it happened (when or while) I (was) consul elect*

3. (Attached to the object)      3. Adverse circumstance (Abl.)

**Titum inimicum rogō**

*I invite Titus (even if he is) unfriendly*

**Titō inimicō, rogor**

*I am invited (although or even if) Titus (is my) enemy*

96. a. The Ablative of time or circumstances may be

A single word denoting a simple fact

**nocte** *during the night*; **vesperī** (Loc.) *at evening* or

A whole phrase defining a time or complex circumstance

**Quod facere imperiō nostrō nōn possunt**

*and they cannot do this (when) the control (is) ours*

**Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus accidit**

*it happened (when) Messala and Piso (were) consuls*

b. The Ablative of Manner (often with **cum** or **sine**)

**Iūre** *rightly* **iniuriā** *wrongly* **cum cūrā** *carefully*

c. The Ablative of Accordance (sometimes with **ex**)

**Suō mōre** or **(ex) cōsuētūdine suā** *according to his custom*

## 97. Present Participle (Active and Deponent)

Formation: *Present Stem* + **ns** + **-ns** + **-ns** Sign **-n-**  
**ntis -ntis -ntis -nt-**

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns.

*Not used as predicate adjectives with verb force.* § 84

*M. F. N.*

§ 28 a, b § 94

- Irr.** *dāns, dāns, dāns*; Gen. *dantis giving*, (who is) *giving*, (as he was) *giving*, (while) *giving*, (when) *giving*, (upon) *giving*; *dantēs (those who are) giving, (they when they are) giving*
- ā-** *cōnāns, cōnāns, cōnāns*; Gen. *cōnantis (who is) trying amāns, amāns, amāns*; Gen. *amantis loving, (who is) fond amantior, amantior, amantius fonder, more devoted* § 89 *amantissimus, amantissima, amantissimum fondest praestāns -āns -āns; -antis standing ahead, excelling* § 84 *portāns, carrying, bringing expectāns awaiting, looking-for*
- ē-** *tenēns, tenēns, tenēns*; Gen. *tenentis (while) holding continēns holding together timēns fearing (timidly) vidēns seeing verēns fearing (for good reasons)*
- e-** *agēns, agēns, agēns*; Gen. *agentis doing, (while) driving cēdēns giving away legēns reading petēns asking discēdēns departing loquēns speaking sequēns following*
- i-** *capiēns, capiēns, capiēns taking, (while) taking* § 170 **-i-** *fugiēns fleeing ēgrediēns going out rapiēns snatching patiēns -ēns -ēns suffering impatiēns not patient* § 220, 7 *patientior -ior -ius more patient patienter patiently* § 69 *patientissimus most patient patientia -ae f. endurance*
- ī-** *veniēns, veniēns, veniēns*; Gen. *venientis (while) coming mūniēns fortifying oriēns raising-self, rising*
- se** *absēns absent praesēns present potēns able, powerful* § 84 *iēns, iēns, iēns*; Gen. *euntis going, (as he was) going* § 213, 2

98. Perfect Participles (Passive Voice)

Formation: *Participial Stem* + *us -a -um*. Sign *-t-* or *-s-*.  
Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90  
*Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.*

M.	F.	N.	SUBJECT ACTED UPON
Irr.	datus, data, datum	(having been) given, (being) given	§ 94
-ā-	imperātus -a -um	(having been) commanded or demanded	3 p
	parātus, parāta, parātum	(having been) prepared, made ready	
	parātor, parātor, parātior	better prepared, readier	§ 89
	parātissimus, parātissima, parātissimum	best prepared	§ 90
-ē-	contentus -a -um	contented	
	retentus -a -um	kept back	
	territus	terrified	
	perterritus	thoroughly frightened	
	mōtus	moved	
	visus	seen	
	commōtus, permōtus	roused	
-e-	āctus -a -um	driven, done, set in motion, discussed, spent	
	coāctus -a -um	driven together, gathered, compelled, forced	
-i-	captus	taken	
	acceptus	received	
	receptus	recovered	
	factus	done	
	cōnfectus	finished up	
	perfectus	completed	
-i-	audītus -a -um	heard	
	exaudītus -a -um	overheard	
	mūnītus -a -um	fortified	
	mūnitiō -tiōnis	f. fortification	
	impeditus (when)	hindered	
	impedimentum -i n.	hindrance	
	expeditus	unimpeded;	
	legiō expedita	legion without baggage	
	expeditior -ior -ius	more unimpeded, less impeded, easier	
	itum est, ventum est	going was done, they came or went.	
	initus (being)	entered upon	
	praeteritus	gone by, past, bygone	

99. Active

Perf. Inf.

Passive

(iuss + isse)	(See § 163 b)	iussus	esse (§ 168, n. 3)
iussisse			
(to be having ordered)	(to be	having been ordered)	
(to) have ordered	(to) have	been ordered	

**100. Perfect Participles (Deponent)**

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90  
*Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.* §§ 180-2.

**SUBJECT ACTING**

- ā-** *cōnātus -a -um* having exerted self or tried or attempted, (after)  
 having tried *cōnāta* (n. pl.) things attempted p. 16, obs. c.  
*mirātus -a -um* having wondered, because he wondered § 94  
*morātus -a -um* having detained self, (after) having delayed
- ē-** *ausus -a -um* having ventured or having dared  
*veritus -a -um* having feared, because he feared (with reason)
- e-** *locūtus -a -um* having spoken, (after or when he had) spoken  
*secūtus* having kept self near, (after) having followed  
*cōnsecūtus* (who had) followed up *insecūtus* having chased  
*ūsus -a -um* having used 6 *ūsus -ūs m.* practice, experience
- i-** *gressus -a -um* having walked *ēgressus* having gone out  
*ingressus* having gone in *prōgressus* having gone forth  
*mortuus* having died, being dead *mors, mortis f.* death  
*passus* having suffered, (after) having endured, allowed, let
- i-** *ortus -a -um* having raised self, risen, arisen, started  
*expertus -a -um* having experienced or tried

**101. a. Active**

(ea)

(Deponent verbs have  
 no perfect stem, no per-  
 fect active.)

**Perf. Ind.****Passive**

*locūta* ~~est~~  
 (she) *is* having spoken  
 (she) *has* spoken  
 (she) *spoke*

**b. Audīmus eam***We hear-about her**We hear that-she**or that-she**locūtam (esse) Cf. § 99.**having been speaking**has been speaking**has spoken or spoke*

**102. Future Participles (Active and Deponent)**

*Participial Stem* + ūrus -ūra -ūrum. Sign -ūr-.

Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90

*Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.*

Irr. datūrus, datūra, datūrum *about to give, going to give*, (as he was) *going to give*, (when he was) *going to give* § 94

-ā- cōnātūrus, cōnātūra, cōnātūrum *intending to try or attempt*  
portātūrus -a -um *going to carry, intending to take or bring*  
parātūrus *going to get ready* temperātūrus *going to refrain*

-ē- habitūrus *going to regard* prohibitūrus *going to stop*  
persuāsūrus *going to persuade* 3 obtentūrus *going to hold*

-e- āctūrus *going to drive, do, set in motion, discuss, spend*  
redditūrus *going to give back* concessūrus *going to grant*  
neglētūrus *going to overlook* secūtūrus *going to follow*

-i- captūrus *going to take* factūrus *going to do, make*  
ēgressūrus *going to go out* cōnfectūrus *going to finish*

-i- auditūrus *going to hear* ventūrus *going to come*  
itūrus *going to go* oritūrus *going to rise*

-se futūrus *going to be or stay* āfutūrus *going to be away*

**103.** Future Participles represent an action as going to occur after the time of the main verb.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| a. Hoc ūnum petō                      | Vēnī nihil aliud petitūrus                  |
| <i>I ask this one (thing)</i>         | <i>I came intending to ask nothing else</i> |
| b. Ventūrus est (§§ 74, 3)            | Itūra esse dicitur (§§ 74-3)                |
| <i>he is going to come</i>            | <i>she is said to be going to go</i>        |
| c. Coāctūrī erant                     | Itūram esse dicitur (§§ 74-3)               |
| <i>they were going to compel</i>      | <i>it is said that she will go</i>          |
| d. Sēsē coāctūrōs (esse) putāvēre     | Sē datūrum esse dicit                       |
| <i>thought that they would compel</i> | <i>says that he will give</i>               |



**104. Future Participles (Passive and Deponent) — Gerundive**

Formation : *Present Stem* + **ndus -nda -ndum**. Sign **-nd-**.

Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90

*Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.* § 28 b.

SUBJECT ACTED UPON

Compare the English words :

errands (*things*) *to be wandered* or *gone after*

dividend *to be divided* minuend *to be lessened*

memorandum (*matter that*) *has to be called to mind*

memoranda (*matters that*) *ought to be called to mind*

reverend *to be regarded with awe* or *revered* or *feared*

Irr. dandus, danda, dandum *to be given, (deserving) to be given*  
 (that *ought*) *to be given, (that have) to be given, (that*  
*must) be given, (that are) to be (or should be) given*

-ā- exspectandus -a -um *to be awaited, to be waited for; ex-*  
*spectandum est waiting ought to be done; one must wait*  
 trānsportandus -a -um *to be carried, brought, or taken over*

-ē- habendus *to be had* or *held* retinendus *to be kept back*  
 verendus *to be feared* prōvidendus *to be looked out for*

-e- concēdendus *to be granted* ferendus *to be endured*  
 dividendus *to be divided* cōnferendus *to be compared*  
 agendus *to be done, driven* tremendus *to be trembled at*

-i- capiendus *to be taken* recipiendus *to be taken back*  
 faciendus *to be done* progrediendum *to be gone forth*

-i- audiendus *to be heard* mūniendus *to be fortified*  
 veniendum *to be come* partiendus *to be separated*  
 eundum est *travelling is to be done, one must go*

**105. The Dative is used to assert ownership. § 5 e.**

Mihi studium est *there is a pursuit for me; I have an occupation;*

Cf. colloquial English "Where is the cover to the box?"

**106.** Gerundives are used to express duty or necessity.

- a. Liber legendus est      *the book is to be read*  
    *the book must be read*
- b. Liber mihi est      Liber mihi legendus est  
     (there is a book for me)      *I have a book (that is) to be read*  
     (a book belongs to me)      *I have a book to read*  
     *I have a book*      *I have to read a book*  
    *a book ought to be read by me*
- c. Legitur      Lēctum est      Legendum est  
     *it is read,*      *it was read,*      *it must be read,*  
     *reading is done*      *reading was done*      *reading is to be done*
- d. Mihi legendum est      *I have reading that is to be done*  
    *I have reading to do*  
    *I have to read I ought to read*
- Mihi legendum (esse) putō** *I think I have to read*  
     **Nōn expectandum sibi statuit** *decided he ought not to wait*
- e. Obsidēs dandī sunt *there are hostages to be given*  
     **Obsidēs dandōs cūrō** *I see to giving the hostages*

**107. a. Subjective Genitive**

**b. Objective Genitive**

- (a) **Helvētiōrum iniūriās**      (b) **populī Rōmānī nōvī**  
     (*I know the Helvetians injuries of the Roman people*)

**Helvētīi iniūriās populō Rōmānō inferunt**  
     *The Helvetians inflict injuries on the Roman people*

c. Also with verbs of remembering and forgetting and nouns and adjectives denoting desire, endurance, etc.

**contumēliae obliviscitur** *becomes forgetful of the outrage* § 223 b  
**amāns patriae** *fond of country*      **impatiens morae** *tired of delay*  
**patientia sitis** *endurance of thirst*      **studium bellandī** *desire to war*

108. *a. uter utra utrum; G. utrius, D. utri which (of two)*

## SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	uter	utra	utrum
<i>G.</i>	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>D.</i>	utri	utri	utri
<i>Ac.</i>	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	utrō	utrā	utrō
<i>L.</i>	—	—	utrobi § 119 <i>e</i>

## PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	utri	utrae	utra
<i>G.</i>	utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum
<i>D.</i>	utris	utris	utris
<i>Ac.</i>	utrōs	utrās	utra
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	utris	utris	utris

*b. uter- -one (of two) -que each, every-; uterque either, both*

## SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	uterque	utraque	utrumque
<i>G.</i>	utriusque	utriusque	utriusque
<i>D.</i>	utrique	utrique	utrique
<i>Ac.</i>	utrumque	utramque	utrumque
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	utrōque	utrāque	utrōque
<i>L.</i>	—	—	utrobique

## PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	utrique	utraeque	utraque
<i>G.</i>	utrōrumque	utrārumque	utrōrumque
<i>D.</i>	utrisque	utrisque	utrisque
<i>Ac.</i>	utrōsque, etc.	utrāsque, etc.	utraque, etc.

## 109. a.

## SINGULAR

N.	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	alteri	alteri	alteri
Ac.	alterum	alteram	alterum
V.	—	—	—
Ab.	alterō	alterā	alterō

## PLURAL

N.	alteri	alterae	altera
G.	alterōrum, etc.	alterārum, etc.	alterōrum, etc.

alter, altera, alterum *the other* (of the two) *the one . . . the other*  
 uter, utra, utrum *which* (one of the two) *utrum whether . . . an or*  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque *either* (of the two), *each* (of two) *both*  
 neuter, neutra, neutrum *neither* (of two) Cf. §§ 65, 71

## b. Genitives used to denote possession, etc.

<b>Caesaris</b>	<i>Caesar's, of Caesar</i>	<b>patris</b>	<i>father's</i>	<b>patrum</b>	<i>fathers'</i>
<b>huius</b>	<i>(this person's etc.) his, her, its</i>	<b>hōrum</b>	<i>their</i>		
<b>istius</b>	<i>(of that man by you) his, her, its</i>	<b>istōrum</b>	<i>their</i>		
<b>illius</b>	<i>(yonder man's) his, her, its</i>	<b>illōrum</b>	<i>their</i>		
<b>cuius</b>	<i>and-his, and-her, and-its, whose</i>	<b>quōrum</b>	<i>and-their, whose</i>		
<b>eius</b>	<i>(this or that man's) his, her, its</i>	<b>eōrum</b>	<i>their</i>		
<b>eiusdem</b>	<i>his also, her also, its also</i>	<b>eōrundem</b>	<i>their also</i>		

## c. Adjectives possessive in meaning (agreeing with nouns).

Caesariānus, Caesariāna, Caesariānum	Caesar's, of Caesar
paternus -a -um	father's
maternus -a -um	mother's
Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum	Rome's, of Rome, Roman
suus, sua, suum	his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)
aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum	another's, of another, of others
meus -a -um	my (of me)
noster, nostra, nostrum	our (of us)
tuus -a -um	thy (of thee)
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (of you)

## 172 Indefinite, Interrogative, and Relative Pronouns

### 110.

#### SINGULAR

N. <i>quī, quis</i> (§§ 113–114)	<i>quae</i> ( <i>qua</i> § 113)	<i>quod, quid</i> (§ 113)
G. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
Ac. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod, quid</i> (§ 113)
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>quō</i> ( <i>quī</i> §§ 113–115)	<i>quā</i> ( <i>quī</i> )	<i>quō</i> ( <i>quī</i> § 114)
L. —	—	<i>ubi</i> ( <i>cubi</i> § 113)

#### PLURAL

N. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i> ( <i>qua</i> § 113)
G. <i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Ac. <i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i> ( <i>qua</i> § 113)
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

### 111.

#### SINGULAR

N. <i>quisque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quodque, quidque</i> <sup>1</sup>
G. <i>cuiusque</i>	<i>cuiusque</i>	<i>cuiusque</i>
D. <i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>
Ac. <i>quemque</i>	<i>quamque</i>	<i>quodque, quidque</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>quōque</i>	<i>quāque</i>	<i>quōque</i>
L. —	—	<i>ubique</i>

#### PLURAL

N. <i>quīque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>
G. <i>quōrumque</i>	<i>quārumque</i>	<i>quōrumque</i>
D. <i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>
Ac. <i>quōsque</i>	<i>quāsque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>	<i>quibusque</i>

<sup>1</sup> The form *quidque* is used as a pronoun; *quodque*, as an adjective.

112. a. *is this or that* (anywhere), *such, he, etc.* § 115

SINGULAR

N. <i>is he, it, this, that</i>	<i>ea this, she, it</i>	<i>id this, that, it</i>
G. <i>eius his, its, of it</i>	<i>eius her, of her, its</i>	<i>eius its, of that</i>
D. <i>eī (to) him, it, that</i>	<i>eī (to) her, it, that</i>	<i>eī it, (to) that</i>
Ac. <i>eum him, it, this</i>	<i>eam her, it, this</i>	<i>id it, this, that</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>eō him, by it, this</i>	<i>eā her, by it, that</i>	<i>eō by it, that</i>
L. —	—	<i>ibi in it, there</i> § 28

PLURAL

N. <i>eī, ii<sup>1</sup> they, those</i>	<i>eae they, these</i>	<i>ea they, these</i> (§ 115)
G. <i>eōrum their, of these</i>	<i>eārum their, etc.</i>	<i>eōrum their, of those</i>
D. <i>eīs (to) them, those</i>	<i>eīs (to) them, etc.</i>	<i>eīs (to) them, those</i>
Ac. <i>eōs them, these</i>	<i>eās them, those</i>	<i>ea them, those things</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>eīs (by) them, etc.</i>	<i>eīs (by) them, etc.</i>	<i>eīs with them, etc.</i>

b. *idem (is + dem) this too, that also, he also, same*

SINGULAR

N. <i>idem he also, same</i>	<i>eadem she too, same</i>	<i>idem it also</i>
G. <i>eiusdem his also</i>	<i>eiusdem her also, its</i>	<i>eiusdem its also</i>
D. <i>eīdem him also, it</i>	<i>eīdem her also, it</i>	<i>eīdem it also</i>
Ac. <i>eundem him also, it</i>	<i>eandem her also, it</i>	<i>idem it also</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>eōdem him also, it</i>	<i>eādem her also, it</i>	<i>eōdem by it also</i>
L. —	—	<i>ibīdem in it also</i>

PLURAL

N. <i>eīdem<sup>2</sup> they also</i>	<i>eaedem they also</i>	<i>eadem they also</i>
G. <i>eōrundem their</i>	<i>eārundem their</i>	<i>eōrundem their</i>
D. <i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup> them also</i>	<i>eīsdem them also</i>	<i>eīsdem them also</i>

<sup>1</sup> Also I and D. and Ab. Pl. iis.    <sup>2</sup> Also iīdem, idem.    <sup>3</sup> Also iisdem.

## 113.

## Indefinite

**Qui** is indefinite after **qui** *who*, **quod** *what*, **ubi** *when*, **ut** *when*, *as, that*; **nē** *that . . . not*, **sī** *if*, **nisi** *unless*, etc.

**qui**, **qua**, **quod** (adj.) *any (some)*; **sī qua rēs** (Nom.) *if any thing*  
**quis** (indef. pron.) *one, anyone*; **quid** *anything*, (Acc.) *any, at all*  
**quod auxilium** *some sort of help*; **quid auxili** *some (of) help*  
**quō** *to any place* **cubi** *in any place* **cunde** *from any side*

## 114.

## Interrogatives

**quī**? **quae**? **quod**? (adj.) *what? what-sort-of? what kind of?*  
**quis**? (pron.) *what one? who?* **quid**? *what?* (Acc.) *to what extent?*  
**quid audet**? *to what extent does he dare? how bold is he?*  
**quī puer**? *what sort of boy?* **quis puer**? (§ 94) *who when-a-boy?*  
**quae puella**? *what sort of girl?* **quid cōsili**? *what (of) plan?*  
**quō**? *to what place?* **ubi**? *in what place?* **unde**? *from whence?*  
**quā rē**? (or **quī**? Ab.) *on account of what? why?* **quīn** *why not?*



Militēs Gallicī armātī.

## 115. a.

## Relatives

**quī, quae, quod** (adj.) *which, and-this, that-this, since-this; pl. and-these; quae rēs and-this thing, and-this fact quae castra and-this camp; quī locus and-this place*  
**quī** pron. (one) *who, and-he, that, that-he, as, since-he, though-he is quī he who, such that-he; eī quī they who, those who*  
**quae** pron. *who, and-she, that, that-she, as, since-she, though-she ea quae she who, such that-she; eae quae they who, those who*  
**quod** pron. *which, and-it, what, that, that-it, as, since-it, though-it id quod that which; ea quae those (things) which*  
**quod** (Ac.) *to what extent; quod potest as-far-as he can*  
**quīn** pron. *who . . . not; that . . . not; but, which . . . not*  
 b. **quod** *that, because quod sī but if quod nisi but unless*  
**quō** (adv.) *whither, to which (place), and-to it, and-to them § 119 c, d*  
**ubi** *in which, at which, where, and-in it; w. Ind. when § 119 c, f*  
**unde** (adv.) *whence, from which, and-from it, and-from them*  
**cum** (quom or um-) w. Ind. *when, as tum cum at the time when*  
 w. Sub. *when, as, just-as (of time), while, since, although*  
**ut, utī** w. Ind. *as, when; w. Sub. (in order) that, (so) that; how?*  
**ita utī** *just as (of manner) quī (Ab.) how, why quīn why not*  
 c. **cum primum, ubi primum, ut primum** *when first, as soon as*  
**quī cum** *and when he quod ubi audit and when he hears it*  
**quī sī** *and if he; quō plūs, eō melius the more the better (§ 74, 19)*  
**quā rē** or **quam ob rem** *why, and on account of this, and-therefore*



Carrus bōbus ductus.



## 116. a.

## Personal Pronouns

## FIRST PERSON

## SECOND PERSON

## THIRD PERSON

## SINGULAR

N. ego I § 28	tū thou	§§ 112, 115, 118 b
G. mei of me <sup>1</sup>	tui of thee (of you) <sup>1</sup>	
D. mihi me, to me	tibi thee, to thee	
Ac. me me	tē thee (you)	wanting
V. —	tū thou (you)	
Ab. me me	tē thee	
mecum with me	tēcum with thee	
de me about me	abs tē by thee, from thee	

## b.

## PLURAL

N. nōs we	vōs you, ye	§§ 112, 115, 118 b
G. nostrum, nostri of us	vestrum, <sup>2</sup> vestri <sup>1</sup> of you	
D. nōbīs us, to us	vobīs you, to you	
Ac. nōs us	vōs you	
V. —	vōs you, ye	wanting
Ab. nōbīs us	vōbīs you	
nōbīscum with us	vōbīscum with you	
in nōbīs among us	ā vōbīs by you, from you	

## c.

## Reflexive Pronouns

## SINGULAR

N. —	—	—
G. mei <sup>1</sup> of myself	tui <sup>1</sup> of thyself	sui of himself <sup>3</sup>
D. mihi myself, me	tibi thyself, thee	sibi himself, him
Ac. me myself, me	tē thyself, thee	sē, sēsē himself, him
V. —	—	—
Ab. me myself, me	tē thyself, thee	sē, sēsē himself, him

<sup>1</sup> Never means *my* or *your*; § 107 b.   <sup>2</sup> §§ 66 c, 72.   <sup>3</sup> Also of *herself* or *of itself*.

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
PLURAL		
N. — § 74, 3	—	—
G. <i>nostrī of ourselves</i>	<i>vestrī of yourselves</i>	<i>suī of themselves</i>
D. <i>nōbis ourselves, us</i>	<i>vōbis yourselves</i>	<i>sibi themselves, them</i>
Ac. <i>nōs ourselves, us</i>	<i>vōs yourselves, you</i>	<i>sē, sēsē themselves</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>nōbis ourselves, us</i>	<i>vōbis yourselves, you</i>	<i>sē, sēsē themselves</i>

117. a.	SINGULAR	
M.	F.	N.
N. <i>alius</i> § 65	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i> § 71
G. —	—	— <sup>1</sup>
D. <i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>
Ac. <i>aliū</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliud</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>
L. —	—	<i>alibi elsewhere</i>

PLURAL		
N. <i>aliī</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
G. <i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
D. <i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>
Ac. <i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>

<sup>1</sup> The genitive of *alius* has almost fallen into disuse on account of the prominence of the possessive adjective *aliēnus* -a -um *another's, others'*; *alterius* is sometimes used for the older *alius* (found in *alius modī*).



Tuba.

b.

## SINGULAR

M.	F.	N.
N. <i>hic this, he, it</i>	<i>haec this, she, it</i>	<i>hoc this, it</i>
G. <i>huius of this, his</i>	<i>huius of this, her</i>	<i>huius of this, its</i>
D. <i>huic (to) him, it</i>	<i>huic (to) her, it</i>	<i>huic (to) this, it</i>
Ac. <i>hunc this, him, it</i>	<i>hanc this, her, it</i>	<i>hoc this, it</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>hōc him, by it</i>	<i>hāc her, by this</i>	<i>hōc by this or it</i>
L. —	—	<i>hic in this, here</i>

## PLURAL

N. <i>hī these, they</i>	<i>hae these, they</i>	<i>haec these, they</i>
G. <i>hōrum their</i>	<i>hārum of these, their</i>	<i>hōrum their, of them</i>
D. <i>hīs these, them</i>	<i>hīs these, them</i>	<i>hīs these, them</i>
Ac. <i>hōs these, them</i>	<i>hās these, them</i>	<i>haec these, them</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>hīs them, by these</i>	<i>hīs them, by these</i>	<i>hīs them, by these</i>

**118. a.** The Intensive Adjective, *ipse self, very*, adds emphasis but does not reflect action upon the subject. Cf. § 116 c.

## SINGULAR

N. <i>ipse</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
G. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>
D. <i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>
Ac. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>

The plural is like the plural of *alius*, § 117 a.

<sup>1</sup> Note the -e (for -us).

b. Irregular Adjectives. (Model *ūnus*, § 120. Cf. § 108.)

<i>ūnus -a -um</i> <i>one, only (one)</i>	<i>ūllus -a -um</i> <i>any, any (one)</i>
<i>sōlus -a -um</i> <i>alone</i>	<i>nūllus -a -um</i> <i>not-any, no, none</i>
<i>tōtus -a -um</i> <i>whole, total, all</i> (of single things; cf. <i>omnis</i> <i>all</i> (of a quantity), <i>every, all</i> (many))	<i>nōnnūllus -a -um</i> <i>some; pl. several, not-a-few</i> §§ 64-65
<i>alius -a -ud</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>else, one, another; alii</i> <i>some . . . alii</i> <i>others</i> § 65	<i>ipse -a -um</i> (§ 116 c) <i>self, very</i>
1. <i>hic</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i> <i>this</i> (by me or of mine); <i>he, she, it, latter</i>	
2. <i>iste</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>that</i> (by you, you mentioned); <i>he, she, it</i>	
3. <i>ille, illa, illud</i> <i>that</i> (of his or yonder); <i>he, she, it, former</i>	

c. *Nēmō* (for *nē + homō*) and *nihil* (for *nihilum*)

N. <i>nēmō</i> <i>no-one</i>	<i>nihil, nīl</i>	<i>nihil reliquī</i> <i>no remainder</i> § 72
G. ( <i>nūllius</i> )	<i>nihilī</i>	<i>nihilī est</i> <i>is of no value</i> § 73
D. <i>nēmīnī</i>	—	Ac. <i>nihil</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>commōtus</i> <i>nothing</i>
Ac. <i>nēmīnem</i>	<i>nihil, nīl</i>	<i>daunted, not alarmed at all</i>
V. —	—	<i>nōnnihil</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>commōtus</i> <i>somewhat</i>
Ab. ( <i>nūllō</i> § 65)	<i>nihilō</i>	<i>alarmed, alarmed to-some-extent</i> <i>nihilō minus</i> <i>less by-nothing</i>

<sup>1</sup> Note the *-e* (for *-us*) and *-ud* (for *-um*).    <sup>2</sup> For *hi-ce*, *hae-ce*, *hod-ce*.

<sup>3</sup> The accusative is used to denote *extent of time, space, action, etc.*, § 74, 17.



*Alii castellum cūstōdiunt alii quīēte ūtuntur.*

**119. a.** The best way to master compound pronouns and adverbs is to make a careful study of the elements from which they are built up.

The original meaning of *quis* was evidently *one* (*some-one* or *anyone*) but when it was spoken in the manner of a *question* it meant *which-one?* The original meaning of *quī* was probably *one*, but when it was used to introduce a descriptive clause it took on the meaning *who*, just as the English *once* (meaning *one time*) often assumes the character of a relative adverb and means *when-once*, as in :

“Trees grow rapidly, *once* they have become rooted.”

Closely allied with *quī* *and-he, who*, *quis* *one* and *quis?* *which one?* *what one?* *who?* are the adverbs below :

<i>quō</i> <i>whither, to</i>	<i>ubi</i> ( <sup>1</sup> <i>quobi</i> ) <i>cubi, which place, to</i>	<i>undē</i> ( <sup>1</sup> <i>quonde</i> ) <i>cunde, from which place,</i>
	<i>in which place,</i>	
<i>whom, and to it</i>	<i>where, among whom</i>	<i>whence, from whom</i>

<i>cum</i> ( <i>quom</i> or <i>um</i> -)	<i>quandō</i> <i>when, at a</i>	<i>ūs-</i> <i>where, in a</i>
<i>when, at a time</i>	<i>time; when?</i>	<i>place, at a point</i>

<i>quam</i> <i>in a degree,</i>	<i>ut, utī</i> <i>in a way,</i>	<i>quā</i> ( <i>viā</i> or <i>parte</i> ) <i>by</i>
<i>as, how? than</i>	<i>how? as, that</i>	<i>a way, on a side</i>

**c. Pronouns (Adjectives) <sup>2</sup>**

**d. Place to which or persons to whom**

<i>hic</i> <i>he, it</i>	<i>haec</i> <i>she, it</i>	<i>hoc</i> <i>it</i>	<i>hūc</i> <i>to this place, to it,</i>
<i>this (by me or that I mention)</i>			<i>to them, hither</i> § 61 b

<i>iste</i> <i>he, it</i>	<i>ista</i> <i>she, it</i>	<i>istud</i> <i>it</i>	<i>istō, istūc</i> <i>to that place</i>
<i>that (by you), that (you mention)</i>			<i>(where you are), to it</i>

<i>ille</i> <i>he, it</i>	<i>illa</i> <i>she, it</i>	<i>illud</i> <i>it</i>	<i>illō, illūc</i> <i>to that place</i>
<i>that (of his, of theirs), that yonder</i>			<i>(yonder or by them), to it</i>

<sup>1</sup> Not used; *qu-* dropped, cf. *ubi, umquam*. <sup>2</sup> Continued on p. 182.

119. b. SIMPLE ELEMENTS		COMPOUNDS
<b>alic-, aliqu-</b> some, any	<b>quam diū</b> as long as	<b>aliquamdiū</b> for some length of time, for a while
<b>-dam</b> a certain	<b>quī</b> one <b>quom</b> <sup>1</sup> at a time	<b>quīdam</b> a certain (one) <b>quondam</b> at a certain time
<b>-dem</b> also, same (identical)	<b>is</b> he, that <b>ita</b> so, thus	<b>īdem</b> he also, the same <b>itidem, item,</b> likewise
<b>-libet</b> <sup>2</sup> pleases	<b>quī</b> who	<b>quīlibet</b> who you please
<b>-nam?</b> for? pray?	<b>ubi?</b> where?	<b>ubinam</b> where in the world?
<b>-piam</b> some	<b>quis</b> one.	<b>quispiam</b> some one
<b>-quam</b> (with a neg- ative) any-	<b>quā</b> in a way <b>um-</b> <sup>1</sup> at a time	<b>nēquāquam</b> by no means <b>umquam</b> at any time, ever
<b>-que</b> each, § 65 every, universally	<b>quis</b> one § 113 <b>cum</b> at a time	<b>quisque</b> each, every (one) <b>-cumque</b> -ever, -soever <b>plērique</b> most of § 76
<b>-vīs</b> <sup>2</sup> you wish § 186 (doubling) -ever	<b>nam</b> for <b>quam paucī</b> how few	<b>namque</b> for, at any rate <b>quamvīs paucī</b> how few you like, however few
<b>-cumque</b> -soever	<b>quis</b> who	<b>quisquis</b> whoever
<b>-versus</b> -ward	<b>quī</b> who	<b>quīcumque</b> whosoever
<b>-rsus</b> (-rsum) -ward re- back	<b>ad</b> to	<b>adversus</b> to-ward Cf. 217 c
		<b>rūrsus</b> backwards, again

e. Place in which or  
persons among whom<sup>3</sup>

**hic** in this place, in  
it, among them

**istic** in that place  
there (by you)

**illic** in that place,  
among them

f. Place from which or  
persons from whom

**hinc** from this place,  
from it, hence

**istinc** thence, from  
there (by you)

**illinc** thence, from  
there (by them)

g. Way by which or  
side on which

**hāc** by this way,  
on this side, here

**istāc** by that way,  
there (by you)

**illā, illāc** on that  
side (yonder)

<sup>1</sup> Another form of **cum** at a time, when.    <sup>2</sup> Verb.    <sup>3</sup> Continued on p. 183.

## 119. c. Adjective Pronouns

**is** *he, it, this, that; ea she; id it;**(pl.) these, those, they***idem** *he also, the same***qui** *who, that, as, and-he, and-it***quis?** *who? which?* **quid?** *what?***quis** *one, anyone***quispiam** *someone***quisquam** *any-one***quid** *anything***quippiam** *-thing***quicquam** *anything***aliquis** *someone***quisquis** } *who-*  
**quicumque** } *ever***aliquid** *something***quicquid** } *what-*  
**quodcumque** } *ever***alius** *other, another, else***uter?** *whether? which (one of the two)?***neuter** *neither (one of the two)***uterque** *each (one of the two)***quisque** *every, each (one)***quidam** *a, a certain (one), certain***quinam?** *(for) who? who-in-the-world? who pray? pray tell who?***quilibet** } *who-it-pleases, who you please,*  
**quivis** } *anyone you please*

## d. Place to which or persons to whom

**eō** *to this place, to it, thither, on them***eōdem** *to this place also, to it also***quō** *to which place, and to this place***quō?** *to what place? in which direction?***quō** *to any place***quōpiam** *to some place***quōquam** *to any place, in any direction***aliquō** *to some place***quōquō** } *to what-*  
**quōcumque** } *ever place***aliō** *to another place***utrō?** *to which place? in which direction?***neutrō** *to neither place, in neither direction***utrōque** *to both places, in both directions***quōque-versum** *in every direction Cf. 61 b***quōnam?** *to what place in the world?***quōlibet** } *to what place*  
**quōvis** } *you please*

# Compound Pronouns and Adverbs (Continued) 183

<i>e. Place in which or persons among whom</i>	<i>f. Place from which or persons from whom</i>	<i>g. Way by which or side on which</i>
<i>ibi in this place, in it, here</i>	<i>inde from this place, from it, hence</i>	<i>eā by this way, on this side, here</i>
<i>ibidem in it also, in the same place</i>	<i>indidem from the same place, from it also</i>	<i>eādem by the same route, there also</i>
<i>ubi in which place, and in it, where</i>	<i>unde from which place, and from it, whence</i>	<i>quā and on this side, where</i>
<i>ubi ? in what place? where? in whom?</i>	<i>unde ? from what place? whence? where from?</i>	<i>quā ? by which way? on which side?</i>
<i>cubi in any place ūspiam any-where ūsquam any-where umquam ever</i>	<i>cunde from any place alicunde from any side undeunde undecumque</i>	<i>quā in any way nēquīquam } in no nēquāquam } way, by no means</i>
<i>alicubi any-where ubiubi } wher- ubicumque } ever</i>	<i>alicunde from any side undeunde undecumque</i>	<i>aliquā in any way quāquā quācumque</i>
<i>alibi elsewhere</i>	<i>aliunde from other sides</i>	<i>aliās elsewhere</i>
<i>utrobi ? in which place (of two) ?</i>	<i>utrinde ? from which side (of two) ?</i>	<i>utrā ? on which side (of two) ?</i>
<i>neutrobi in neither place (of two)</i>		<i>neutrā on neither side, neither way</i>
<i>utrobi-que in both places, in both</i>	<i>utrimque from either side or direction</i>	<i>utrāque on either side, both ways</i>
<i>ubique everywhere ūsque all the way</i>	<i>undique from every side, on all sides</i>	<i>quāque on every side, every way</i>
<i>quondam one time ubinam ? where in the world ?</i>		<i>quānam ? by what way in the world ?</i>
<i>ubilibet } where you ubivis } like</i>	<i>undelibet } from where undevīs } you please</i>	<i>quālibet by what way you please</i>



## 120. a.

## SINGULAR

N. <i>ūnus one</i>	<i>ūna one</i>	<i>ūnum one</i>
G. <i>ūnius of one</i>	<i>ūnius of one</i>	<i>ūnius of one</i>
D. <i>ūnī one</i>	<i>ūnī one</i>	<i>ūnī one</i>
Ac. <i>ūnum one</i>	<i>ūnam one</i>	<i>ūnum one</i>
Ab. <i>ūnō one</i>	<i>ūnā one</i>	<i>ūnō by one, etc.</i>

## PLURAL

N. <i>ūnī only (ones)</i>	<i>ūnae only (ones)</i>	<i>ūna only (ones)</i>
G. <i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>
D. <i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>
Ac. <i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūna</i>
Ab. <i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>

## b.

## PLURAL

N. <i>duo two</i>	<i>duae two</i>	<i>duo two</i>
G. <i>duōrum of two</i>	<i>duārum of two</i>	<i>duōrum of two</i>
D. <i>duōbus two</i>	<i>duābus two</i>	<i>duōbus two</i>
Ac. <i>duōs (duo) two</i>	<i>duās two</i>	<i>duo two</i>
Ab. <i>duōbus two</i>	<i>duābus two</i>	<i>duōbus by two</i>

## c.

## PLURAL

N. <i>trēs three</i>	<i>trēs three</i>	<i>tria three</i>
G. <i>trium of three</i>	<i>trium of three</i>	<i>trium of three</i>
D. <i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus three</i>
Ac. <i>trīs three</i>	<i>trīs three</i>	<i>tria three</i>
Ab. <i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus three</i>	<i>tribus by three</i>

d. The next cardinal numeral declined is **ducentī -ae -a** *two hundred*. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **ūnus**. **Mille thousand** is indeclinable.

e. **Mīlia thousands** is a neuter noun declined like **tria three** and is followed by the Genitive Case. (See § 72.)

**Mille librī 1000 books**      **Duo mīlia librōrum 2000 books**

quot ? <i>how many ?</i>	quotus ? <i>what one ?</i>	quotēni ? <i>how many each ?</i>
ūnus ūna ūnum	primus <i>first</i>	singuli <i>one each</i>
duo duae duo	alter <i>second</i>	bīni <i>two each</i>
trēs trēs tria	tertius <i>third</i>	terni <i>three each</i> p. 28
quattuor iv.	quārtus <i>fourth</i>	etc.
quīnque v.	quīntus <i>fifth</i>	f. (Cf. p. 29 and § 78 a)
sex vi.	sextus <i>sixth</i>	simplex <i>simple</i>
septem	septimus	duplex <i>double, twofold</i>
octō	octāvus	triplex <i>triple,</i>
novem ix.	nōnus	etc.
decem x.	decimus	quotiēns ? <i>how many</i>
ūndecim xi.	ūndecimus	<i>times ?</i> p. 29 and § 67
duodecim	duodecim	semel <i>once</i>
tredecim	tertius decimus	bis <i>twice</i>
quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	ter <i>thrice, 3-times</i>
quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quater <i>4-times</i>
sēdecim	sextus decimus	etc.
septendecim	septimus decimus	g. Elements
duodēvigintī	duodēvicēnsimus	-decim <i>-teen -us -tus -th</i>
ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēnsimus	vi- <i>twain, twen-</i>
vigintī	vicēnsimus	-gintī or -gintā <i>-ty</i>
vigintī ūnus	vicēnsimus primus	-dē- <i>from -iēns -times</i>
duodētrigintā	duodētricēnsimus	-cent- or -gent- <i>hundred</i>
ūndētrigintā	ūndētricēnsimus	-plex -plicis <i>-ple -fold</i>
trigintā	tricēnsimus	compare audāx § 85
quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	prīmum <i>first (thing)</i>
quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	deinde <i>then, next</i>
sexāgintā	sexagēnsimus	tertium <i>third (thing)</i>
septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	prīmum <i>for the 1st time</i>
octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	iterum <i>again, 2nd time</i>
nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	tertium <i>for the 3rd time</i>
centum	cēntēnsimus	quārtum <i>for the 4th time</i>

**121.** The plain Infinitive is the simplest form of the verb and cannot be satisfactorily defined <sup>1</sup> except by telling where it occurs. Infinitives are found as objects:

a. after <i>may</i>	It <i>may be</i>	Esse potest
	He <i>might wish</i>	Velle posset
after <i>can</i>	She <i>can read</i>	Legere potest
after <i>will</i>	He <i>would not go</i>	Īre nōlēbat § 186
after <i>do</i> , etc.	<i>Don't speak</i> so	Nōli ita loquī
b. after <i>to</i>	He <i>ought to read</i> it	Id legere dēbet
	<i>Ready to read</i>	Ad legendum parātus
	Is <i>compelled to give</i>	Dare cōgitur § 155
	I know <i>it to be</i> Mark	Eum Mārcum esse sciō
c. and as subject of a verb or predicate noun.		
subj.	<i>Call</i> is speak	Vocāre loquī est
pred.	<i>Call</i> is <i>speak</i>	Vocāre loquī est

**122.** Infinitives with subject Accusative are used in object clauses:

after <i>let</i>	He lets <i>them go</i> (allows <i>them to go</i> )	Eōs ire patitur § 142
after <i>bid</i>	He bids <i>us try</i> (orders <i>us to try</i> )	Nōs cōnārī iubet Cf. § 153
after <i>see</i>	They saw <i>me go</i> (observed <i>that I went</i> )	Mē ire vidērunt
after <i>hear</i>	I heard <i>her speak</i> (heard <i>that she spoke</i> )	Eam loquī audīvī § 142

<sup>1</sup> We find about half the infinitives in ordinary English are introduced by the preposition *to*. English infinitives not introduced by *to* are nearly always translated by Latin infinitives, whereas a large part of those introduced by *to* are not translated by infinitives in Latin (see §§ 148-9).

**123.** Infinitives in **-ing** (Gerunds) may be used as subject, as a predicate noun, or as object of a verb or preposition.

a. subj.	<b>Seeing</b> is believing	<b>Vidēre</b> crēdere est
b. pred.	Calling is <b>speaking</b>	Vocāre loquī est
c. obj.	I began <b>calling</b> him	Eum vocāre coepī
d. w. prep.	Finds upon <b>inquiring</b>	Reperit in quaerendō
	He prevents me <b>from going</b>	Mē ire prohibet
	I am prevented <b>from going</b>	Īre prohibeor

<b>124.</b>	<b>ACTIVE</b> (subject acting)		<b>PASSIVE</b> (subject acted upon) (Deponent § 182)	
<i>Infinitive</i>				
<i>present</i>		<b>-re (-se or -le)</b>	<b>-rī, -ī</b>	
<i>Indicative or</i>				
<i>Subjunctive</i>				(subject)
1st Pers. sing.	<b>-ō, -m</b>	<b>-ī<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>-or, -r</b>	( <i>I</i> )
2nd Pers. sing.	<b>-s</b>	<b>-istī</b>	<b>-ris, -re</b>	( <i>thou</i> )
3rd Pers. sing.	<b>-t</b>	<b>-it</b>	<b>-tur</b>	( <i>he, she, it</i> )
1st Pers. plur.	<b>-mus</b>	<b>-imus</b>	<b>-mur</b>	( <i>we</i> )
2nd Pers. plur.	<b>-tis</b>	<b>-istis</b>	<b>-mini</b>	( <i>you</i> )
3rd Pers. plur.	<b>-nt</b>	<b>-ērunt or</b> <b>-ēre</b>	<b>-ntur</b>	( <i>they</i> )
<i>Imperative Pres.</i>				
2nd Pers. sing.	—		<b>-re</b>	( <i>thou</i> )
2nd Pers. plur.	<b>-te</b>		<b>-mini</b>	( <i>ye, you</i> )

**125.** The **ending** of an Infinitive shows merely whether its subject is *acting* or *acted upon* (in deponent verbs *acting upon itself* or in some way *concerning itself*).

The **ending** of a Finite Verb shows (a) whether the subject it refers to is *I* or *we*, *thou* or *you*, or some *other person* or

<sup>1</sup> Used in the Perfect Indicative Active only. See § 168, note.

persons; (b) whether it is *acting* or *being acted upon* (in deponent verbs *acting on for self*. §§ 180-2).

**126.** The **Present Stem** of a Latin verb is found by dropping **-re**, **-rī** or **-ī** from the *present infinitive*. Cf. § 163.

In **-e-** verbs restore **-e-** where it disappears before **-ī**.

In **-i-** verbs restore **-i-** where it becomes **-e-** before **r** or has disappeared before **-ī**.

	1	2	3	3	3 i	3 i	4
	-ā-	-ē-	-e-	-e-	-i-	-i-	-ī-
Pres. }	vocāre	iubēre	legere	—	capere	—	audire
Inf. }	vocārī	iubērī	legī	ūtī	capī	pati	audīrī
Pres. }	vocā-	iubē-	lege-	ūte-	capi-	pati-	audi-
Stem }	call	order	pick	use	take	let	hear

**127. Present Infinitives. Nouns and Verbs at Once**

-ā-	vocāre (to) call, (be) calling, (do) calling § 190 e	vocation
	vocārī (to) be called, (being) called, calling (be) done	revoke
	cōnārī (to) exert-self, try, (be) trying, make effort	conative
-ē-	iubēre (to) order, bid, (be) ordering, give orders	jussive
	iubērī (to) be ordered, (being) ordered, order (be) given	
	licēre (to) be allowed, be lawful, be right	license
-e-	legere (to) pick, read, (be) reading, (do) reading	legible
	legī (to) be read, (being) read, reading (be) done	eligible
	loquī (to) speak, talk, (be) talking, (do) talking	eloquent
-i-	capere (to) take, contain, (be) taking, (do) taking	capacity
	capī (to) be taken, captured, (being) taken	captive
	pati (to) suffer, allow, let, (be) letting	patient, passive
-ī-	audire (to) hear, heed, (be) hearing § 207 e	obedient
	audīrī (to) be heard, (being) heard, heed (be) given	audible
	largīrī (to) give in self interest, give bribe	largess

**128. Infinitives of Irregular Verbs: § 184**

<b>-a-</b>	<b>dare</b> (to) put, give, send, (be) giving, (do) giving	<b>dative</b>
	<b>dari</b> (to) be put, given, (being) given, giving (be) done	<b>render</b>
<b>-i-</b>	<b>ire</b> (to) go, travel, (be) going, (do) traveling	<b>transient</b>
	<b>iri</b> be gone, traveling be done	
<b>-se</b>	<b>esse</b> (to) be, exist, belong (last, remain)	<b>essential</b>
	<b>posse</b> (to) be able, be powerful; can, may	<b>possible, power</b>
<b>-le</b>	<b>velle</b> (to) wish, will, be willing § 186	<b>will, voluntary</b>
	<b>nolle</b> (to) wish not, will not, be unwilling	<b>willy-nilly</b>
	<b>malle</b> (to) wish rather, prefer, will rather	<b>magistrate</b>

**129.** As *nouns*, infinitives are declined in the singular and called Gerunds. The accusative in **-um** is used only with the preposition **ad** or in apposition with another noun.

	1	2	3	3 i	4
	-ā-	-ē-	-e-	-i-	-i-
<i>N.</i>	cōnārī	vidēre	agere	fugere	audire
<i>G.</i>	cōnandī	videndī	agendī	fugiendī	audiendī
<i>D.</i>	cōnandō	videndō	agendō	fugiendō	audiendō
<i>Ac.</i>	cōnandum <sup>1</sup>	videndum	agendum	fugendum	audiendum
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	cōnandō	videndō	agendō	fugiendō	audiendō

**130.** As *nouns*, infinitives stand as the direct object of verbs meaning *may, can, ought, will, try, dare, begin*, etc. (§ 121)

<b>Legere</b> (cōnātur)	<b>Legere</b> (potest)	<b>Legi</b> (potest)
(he tries) to read,	(she can) read,	(it can) be read,
(tries) to do reading	(may) be reading	reading (may) be done

<sup>1</sup> When used as the subject of another infinitive (see § 142) the accusative has the same form as the nominative.

**131.** As *nouns*, infinitives stand *as subject* of verbs meaning *be*, *be allowed*, etc., and *as predicate nouns*.

Velle posse (est)

to be willing (is) *to be able*,

will (is) *be able*,

to will (is) *to be able*,

willing (is) *being able*

Vocārī (licet) § 121 c

*being called* (is permitted),

(it is permitted) *to be called*,

(one may) *be called*,

*calling* (may) *be done*

**132.** As *nouns*, infinitives stand *in various case relations*.

Pati (cogor) § 155 a

ire (vetor) § 123 d

ire (prohibeor)

(I am forced) *to let*

(am forbidden) *to go*

(am kept) *from going*

**133.** As *verbs*, infinitives *take objects, predicates, etc.*

Puerōs vocāre (placet)

Amicus esse (incipit) § 5 a

*calling the boys* (is decided on)

(he begins) *to be friendly*

(it is decided) *to call the boys*

(is beginning) *to be a friend*

**134. a.** The *subject* of an infinitive is *Accusative*. (p. 4)

Puerōs vocāre (audiō)

Darī (vidī)

(I hear) *boys call or calling*

(I saw) *it (being) given*

b.

#### The Historical Infinitive

Where its meaning is unmistakable, the Infinitive is occasionally put for the Indicative, referring to the past.

Ille nihil respondēre = ille nihil respondēbat (respondit) or ille nihil respondet (historical present) *he did not reply at all.*

**135.**

#### Uses of the Gerund

Fugiendī quae causa est? *what is the cause of (his) fleeing?*

Videndī causā eunt *they go for the sake of seeing; they go to see*

Diēs oppugnandō est dictus *a day is set (named) for attacking*

Ad cōnandum parātus est *he is prepared to try; ready for trying*

Hoc reperit in quaerendō *he finds out this upon inquiring*

**136. Present Indicative.** Used to represent a thing as an actual occurrence or fact, whether it is true or untrue.

<b>-ā-</b>	<b>vocat</b> ( <i>he, she, or it</i> ) <i>calls, is calling, does call</i>	<i>in vocation</i>
	<b>vocant</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>call, summon, are calling, do call</i>	<i>advocate</i>
	<b>vocātur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>is (being) called, calling is done</i>	<i>in voke</i>
	<b>vocantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are (being) called, summoned</i> § 187	<i>provoke</i>
	<b>cōnātur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>exerts-himself, tries, is trying, etc.</i>	<i>conative</i>
	<b>cōnantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>exert-themselves, try, are trying</i>	§ 191
<b>-ē-</b>	<b>iubet</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>orders, bids, is ordering, does order</i>	<i>jussive</i>
	<b>iubent</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>order, bid, are ordering, give orders</i>	
	<b>iubētur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>is (being) ordered or bidden, order is given</i>	§ 192
	<b>iubentur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are ordered, are being ordered</i>	
	<b>licet</b> <i>it is lawful, permission is given, one may</i>	<i>leisure</i>
<b>-e-</b>	<b>legit</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>reads, picks, is reading, does reading</i>	<i>legend</i>
	<b>legunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>read, choose, are reading, do read</i>	<i>elect</i>
	<b>legitur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>is read, picked, reading is done</i> § 197	<i>lesson</i>
	<b>leguntur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are read, chosen, are being read</i> § 218	<i>lecture</i>
	<b>loquitur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>speaks, is speaking, does speak</i>	<i>colloquy</i>
	<b>loquuntur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>speak, are speaking, do speak</i>	<i>colloquial</i>
<b>-i-</b>	<b>capit</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>takes, is taking, does take or contain</i>	<i>capable</i>
	<b>capiunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>take, capture, are taking, do take</i>	<i>catch</i>
	<b>capitur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>is taken, capture is made</i> § 202	<i>receive</i>
	<b>capiuntur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are taken, are being caught</i>	<i>receipt</i>
	<b>patitur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>suffers, lets, is letting, does let</i>	<i>perpetual</i>
	<b>patiuntur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>suffer, allow, are letting</i> § 206	<i>compassion</i>
<b>-i-</b>	<b>audit</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>hears, heeds, is hearing, does hear</i>	<i>obedient</i>
	<b>audiunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>hear, heed, are hearing, do hear</i>	<i>auditor</i>
	<b>auditur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>is heard, attention is paid</i> § 207	<i>auditorium</i>
	<b>audiuntur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are heard, are being heard</i>	<i>inaudible</i>
	<b>largitur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>gives lavishly, gives bribe</i>	<i>largess</i>
	<b>largiuntur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>give-in-self-interest, give bribes</i>	<i>large</i>

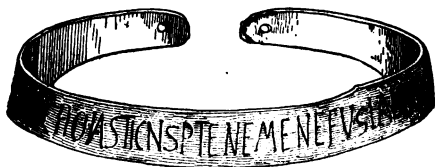


## 137. a. Irregular Indicative Forms. §§ 183-6

-a-	<b>dat</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>puts, sends, gives, is giving, does give</i>	<i>date</i>
	<b>dant</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>put, send, give, are giving, do give</i>	<i>data</i>
	<b>datur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>is put, given, gift is made, giving is done</i>	<i>add</i>
	<b>dantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are put, given, are being given</i>	<i>edit</i>
-i-	<b>it</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>goes, travels, is going, does go</i> § 212	<i>preterit</i>
	<b>eunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>go, come, travel, are going, do go</i>	<i>transit</i>
	<b>itur</b> <i>traveling is done, they're going, one goes</i>	<i>circuit</i>
-se	<b>est</b> ( <i>he, she, it</i> ) <i>is, (there) is, (it) belongs</i> § 183	<i>absent</i>
	<b>sunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are, (there) are, (they) belong</i>	<i>present</i>
	<b>potest</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>is able, can, may, is powerful</i>	<i>potent</i>
	<b>possunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>are able, can, may, are powerful</i>	<i>power</i>
-le	<b>vult</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>wishes, is determined, will, is willing</i>	<i>volunteer</i>
	<b>volunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>wish, will, are determined, willing</i>	<i>volition</i>
	<b>nōn vult</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>does not wish, will not, is unwilling</i>	ME. <i>nill</i>
	<b>nōlunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>do not wish, will not, are unwilling</i>	ME. <i>molde</i>
	<b>māvult</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>wishes rather, will rather, prefers</i>	<i>majesty</i>
	<b>mālunt</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>wish rather, will sooner, prefer</i>	<i>magistrate</i>

b. Rule for changing the Present Indicative to the Present Subjunctive.

In the -ā- verbs,	change the -ā- to -ē-	§ 170
In -le and -se verbs,	the sign is -i-	§ 140
In all others,	insert the sign -ā-	§ 136-9



Servus sum Scholasticī. Tenē mē nē fugiam domō.

c. The Indicative must be changed to the Subjunctive in many situations. See §§ 139, 140-3.

Direct Statement (or Discourse)	Indirect Statement. § 143
Eae parvae videntur, quod tantum spatium absunt ... <i>seem small, because they are so great a distance away</i>	Sciō eās parvās vidērī, quod tantum spatium absint
Is agrum Sēquanum, quī erat optimus, occupāvit ( <i>I read that</i> )- <i>he seized the Sequanian land which was the best</i>	Legō eum agrum Sēquanum, quī esset optimus, occupāvisse
Ubi tū fuisti? § 183 c <i>where were you?</i>	Scīmus ubi fueris <i>we know where you were</i>

d. The Truth	The Opposite of the Truth
Is nōn vocāverat § 187	Sī mē vocāvisset,
Ego nōn audīveram § 207	ego audīvissem § 156
<i>If he had called me, I should have heard (him)</i>	

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

**138. a.** The Subjunctive Mode is a form of the verb used to represent an action not as actually occurring but as wished for, as uncertain or unlikely, but possible.

We may say either :

IND.

- (1) *I insist that the boy starts early; or*

SUB.

- (2) *I insist that the boy start early*

according to which we mean. The first gives the impression that I know the boy *starts* early, and therefore insist that it is true. The second shows that the boy *does not* start early now, but that I intend that he *shall* hereafter.

b. We use the Subjunctive when we *suppose true* what we *know to be false or unlikely*, simply in order to discuss what might happen under such circumstances, as :

(3) *I wish I were rich. I would travel.*

(Giving the impression that I *am not* and *will not*.)

(4) *If I had a million, I would travel.*

(I *have not* and therefore *will not*.)

(5) *He would lift it, if he could.*

(He *probably will not*; *likely cannot*.)

(6) *If he were behind that screen, he would hear what I say.*

(Likely *is not* and *will not*.)

The Present Subjunctive, *start* (2) points to the *future*. The Past Subjunctives, *were, would, had, and could* (3, 4, 5, 6), refer to the same time as the Present Indicatives, *am, will, have, can, and is*.

c. It is a mistake to imagine that the words *that* and *if* are used more with the Subjunctive than with the Indicative.

(7) *If he is behind that screen, he hears what I say.*

(8) *If he was behind that screen, he heard what I said.*

(9) *If he has been behind it, he has heard what I said.*

(10) *If he gets behind that screen, he will hear what I say.*

*Is, hears, was, heard, has, gets, and will* are all Indicative to show that I do not wish to imply that I care anything about *his presence* behind the screen. *Gets* and *say* (Pres. Ind.) in (10) refer to the future.

d. The Subjunctive lurks (usually unnoticed) in many corners of books, lectures, speeches, legal documents, and newspapers and is sometimes heard in the spontaneous utterances of many who make no pretense of fine distinctions.

## INDICATIVE FORMS

*Thy kingdom comes.**Thy will is done.**He pays his debts.**It is known that, . . .**He went home at eight.**He could not read it.**He would not answer.**I had often seen it there.**He was here yesterday.**We sit down. We go home.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE FORMS

*"Thy kingdom come."**"Thy will be done."**They insist that he pay it now.**Be it known that, . . .**It is time he went home.**It is time he could.**He would, if he could.**Had I only seen it in time, etc.**(I) Would that he were here now!**"Sit we down." "Go we home."*

e.

## Substitutes and Periphrases

In many expressions the Subjunctive is unnecessary and we substitute the Indicative; or we get at the same meaning in a roundabout way by using *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, etc., with the Infinitive. §§ 121-3

## MODERN PERIPHRASES

*I hope he starts early.**I hope he may start early.**I hope he can start early.**I hope he will start early.**I hope he is to start early.*

## EARLIER SUBJUNCTIVES

*I desire that he start early.**Let it be known, etc.**Let his will be done.**Let us sit down. Let us go.**Be it known, etc.**His will be done.**Sit we down. Go we.*

f. The Latin Subjunctive is more used than ours.

1. It is often translated by the English Indicative.

2. The Latin Subjunctive must often be rendered in a roundabout way by using *may*, *can*, *is to*, *shall*, and *must*, followed by infinitives.

**139. Present Subjunctive.** Used to represent something (not as actually occurring but) *as looked forward to, desired, conceived of as possible, or supposed.* §§ 137 c, 188, 198, 203

<b>-ā-</b>	<b>vocet</b> ( <i>he, she, or it</i> ) <i>call, be calling, do call</i>	<i>provocation</i>
	<b>vocent</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>call, summon, be calling, do call</i>	<i>vocative</i>
	<b>vocētur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>be called, calling be done</i> § 156 b	<i>invoking</i>
	<b>vocentur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>be called, (shall) be summoned</i>	<i>revoke</i>
	<b>cōnētur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>exert-himself, try, be trying, etc.</i>	<i>conative</i>
	<b>cōnentur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>exert-themselves, try, be trying</i>	§ 191
<b>-ē-</b>	<b>iubeat</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>order, bid, be ordering, do order</i>	<i>jussive</i>
	<b>iubeant</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>order, bid, be ordering, give orders</i>	
	<b>iubeātur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>be ordered or bidden, order be given</i>	§ 193
	<b>iubeantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>be ordered, (should) be ordered</i>	
	<b>liceat</b> <i>it be lawful, permission be given, one may</i>	<i>license</i>
<b>-e-</b>	<b>legat</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>read, pick, be reading, do reading</i>	<i>illegible</i>
	<b>legant</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>read, choose, be reading, do read</i>	<i>elective</i>
	<b>legātur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>be read, picked, reading be done</i> § 218	<i>collection</i>
	<b>legantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>be read, chosen, (may) be read</i>	<i>diligent</i>
	<b>loquātur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>speak, be speaking, do speak</i>	<i>eloquence</i>
	<b>loquantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>speak, be speaking, do speak</i>	<i>grandiloquent</i>
<b>-i-</b>	<b>capiat</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>take, be taking, do take, or contain</i>	<i>recipient</i>
	<b>capiant</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>take, capture, be taking, do take</i>	<i>reception</i>
	<b>capiātur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>be taken, capture be made</i>	<i>captive</i>
	<b>capiantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>be taken, captured, caught</i>	<i>capsule</i>
	<b>patiātur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>suffer, let, be letting, do let</i>	<i>perpetuate</i>
	<b>patiantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>suffer, allow, be letting</i>	<i>impatient</i>
<b>-i-</b>	<b>audiat</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>hear, heed, be hearing, do hear</i>	<i>audit</i>
	<b>audiant</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>hear, heed, be hearing, do hear</i>	<i>obedience</i>
	<b>audiātur</b> ( <i>it</i> ) <i>be heard, attention be paid</i>	<i>disobey</i>
	<b>audiantur</b> ( <i>they</i> ) <i>be heard, would be heard</i>	§ 208
	<b>largiātur</b> ( <i>he</i> ) <i>give lavishly, give bribe, bribe</i>	<i>largesses</i>

**140. The Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. § 185**

- a-** *det* (*he*) *put, send, give, be giving, do give* *addition*  
*dent* (*they*) *put, send, give, be giving, do give* *editor*  
*dētur* (*it*) *be put, given, gift be made, giving be done* *dative*  
*dentur* (*they*) *be put, given, should be given* *editorial*
- i-** *eat* (*he*) *go, travel, be going, do go* § 213 *transition*  
*eant* (*they*) *go, come, travel, be going, do go*  
*eātur* *traveling be done, they be going, one go*
- se** *sit* (*he, she, it*) *be, (there) be, (it) belong*  
*sint* (*they*) *be, (there) be, (they) belong* § 183  
*possit* (*he*) *be able, (can), be powerful, may* *potential*  
*possint* (*they*) *be able, (can), be powerful, may* *impossible*
- le** *velit* (*he*) *wish, be determined, will, be willing* *volitive*  
*velint* (*they*) *wish, will, be determined, willing*  
*nōlit* (*he*) *do not wish, will not, be unwilling*  
*nōlint* (*they*) *do not wish, will not, be unwilling* § 186  
*mālit* (*he*) *wish rather, will rather, prefer*  
*mālint* (*they*) *wish rather, would sooner, prefer*



Villa Rōmāna ad mare.

**141.** In independent clauses the Latin Subjunctive **has** to be rendered in a roundabout way in English — usually by the subjunctive or imperative or by *will, shall, may, can, do, let, etc.*, followed by the infinitive. §§ 121–3

*a.*Negative *nē*

Exhortation	<b>Expectēmus</b> ( <i>wait we!</i> ), <i>let us wait</i>	§ 188
(1st person)	<b>Nē expectēmus</b> ( <i>wait we not!</i> ), <i>let us not wait</i>	
Prohibition	<b>Nē expectēs</b> <i>wait thou not! don't wait!</i> (less used	
(2d person)	than <b>nōlī expectāre</b> or <b>nē expectā!</b> <i>don't wait!</i> )	
Command	<b>Expectet</b> ( <i>wait he!</i> ), <i>he shall wait, let him wait!</i>	
(3d person)	<b>Nē expectet</b> ( <i>wait he not!</i> ), <i>let him not wait!</i>	
Concession	<b>Expectet, mē vidēre nōn potest</b> <i>should-he-wait or granted-that-he-wait, he cannot see me</i>	
Wish, Hope	<b>Ō sī expectet! Utinam expectet!</b> <i>oh that he may wait! (I) would that he may wait!</i>	
	<b>Utinam nē expectet!</b> <i>oh that he may not wait!</i>	

*b.*Negative *nōn*

Deliberation	<b>Mārcus expectet?</b> <i>Mark wait? shall Mark wait?</i>	
	<b>Cūr nōn expectet?</b> <i>why will (would) he not wait?</i>	
Possibility	<b>Expectem, sī rogētur</b> <i>I would wait, if it should be</i>	
Cf. § 156 b	<i>asked; I could or might wait if a request be made</i>	
	<b>Nōn expectem, nisi rogētur</b> <i>I'll not wait, unless it be asked or unless a request be made</i>	

**142.** When a former thought (statement, question, command) is mentioned in the course of a new statement or question,

(a) its form is changed;

See p. 4, notes

(b) its asserting, asking, or commanding power is lost, and

(c) it becomes the subject or object of a verb, or is used as

a predicate noun or an appositive.

§§ 152–5

In a Direct Statement or Declaration the main verb is changed to the Infinitive with the Subject Accusative.

Direct: <b>Pueri</b> eunt	<b>Liber</b> fertur	§ 212
a. the boys go, are going	the book is (being) brought	
Indirect: <b>Puerōs</b> ire <sup>1</sup> patitur	<b>Librum ferri</b> <sup>1</sup> patitur	
he lets the boys go	allows the book to be brought	
<b>Puerōs</b> ire <sup>1</sup> videt	<b>Librum ferri</b> <sup>1</sup> videt	
he sees the boys go	he sees the book (be) <sup>1</sup> brought	
sees the boys (be) going	the book (being) <sup>1</sup> brought	
notices (that) the boys go	(that) the book is brought	
<b>Nūntiātur puerōs</b> ire	<b>Librum ferri</b> oportet	
that the boys go is re-	that the book be brought is	
ported; word is brought	necessary; it is necessary	
that the boys are going	that the book be brought	
Direct: <b>Quis</b> it? who is going?	<b>Quid</b> fertur? what is brought?	
Indirect: <b>Quem</b> <sup>2</sup> ire dicit?	<b>Quid ferri</b> videt?	
b. whom does he declare to	what does he see brought?	
be going? is going?	what does he see is brought?	

**143.** In Indirect Questions and Commands the main verb, if Indicative or Imperative, is changed to the Subjunctive.

Direct. **Quis** it? who is going? **Īte**, pueri go, boys!

Indirect. **Quaerit quis**<sup>3</sup> eat asks who is going § 138 d, e

Indirect Commands may stand in any person

**Dicit eāmus**<sup>4</sup> says we may<sup>5</sup> go or we must<sup>6</sup> go § 141

**Dicit eātis** says you shall<sup>7</sup> go or you may go § 213

**Dicit eant** says they shall go or let them go

<sup>1</sup> **Ire** and **ferri** no longer assert; the only assertions are **patitur** and **videt**.

<sup>2</sup> The interrogative, **quem**, still asks. <sup>3</sup> **Quis** no longer asks. <sup>4</sup> **eāmus**, **eātis**, and **eant** mention a former command without commanding (§ 142 b).

<sup>5</sup> Some commands merely give permission, <sup>6</sup> others urge, <sup>7</sup> others order.



**144.** An interrogative word may be used in a sentence to ask for any element that is represented as unknown.

**145.** The whole sentence may be turned into a question by using the Latin *Question Marks* **-ne?** **ec-?** and **Num?**

**Galba Titō amicus est** *Galba is friendly to Titus*

**Galbam aliquid movet** *it moves or influences Galba somewhat*

(a) *Questions seeking information.*

The question marks **-ne** or **ec-** are attached to the first word in Latin. The English sentence does not contain the word **not** or **no**.

**Galbane Titō amicus est?** *is Galba a friend to Titus?*

**Ecquid Galbam movet?** *does it affect Galba at all?*

(b) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer “yes.”

The Latin sentence begins with **Nōn** or **Nihil**, etc., and **-ne** is attached to the first word. The English contains the word **not** or **not-at-all** or **nothing**. The parenthesis is negative.

**Nōnne Galba Titō amicus est?** *is Galba not friendly to Titus?*

*Galba is friendly to Titus (isn't he)?*

**Nihilne Galbam movet?** *doesn't it affect Galba at-all?*

(c) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer “no.”

With the sign **Num?** but does not contain **-ne?** nor **ec-?** nor the words **nōn** nor **nihil**. A virtual exclamation, or may contain the word **not** and a positive parenthesis.

**Num Galba Titō amicus est?** *Galba is a friend to Titus!*

*Galba isn't friendly to Titus (is he)?*

**Num quid Galbam movet?** *does it affect Galba at all?*

*it doesn't affect Galba at all (does it)?*

**146.** In English many noun clauses are introduced by *that*. There are three ways of expressing such clauses in Latin :

- (1) *that* (not expressed) Infinitive with subject Accusative ;
- (2) *that* = *ut* (*utī*), *quō* or (*timēre*) *nē* with the Subjunctive ;  
*that*—*not* = *nē*, *quō minus* or *quīn*, (*timēre*) *ut* or (*verēri*)  
*nē nōn* with the Subjunctive.
- (3) *that* = *quod* with the Indicative.

The nature and meaning of the governing word must be taken into consideration in order to determine whether such a clause is represented

- (a) as an *actual occurrence* or *fact* ;

**Dominum abesse dicit** *he says (that) the master is away*

or as *something sure to be executed*, if commanded or willed ;

**Dominum vocārī iubet** *he orders that the master be called*, or

**Dominum vocārī vult** *he wishes the master to be called* (§ 127)

or as an Indirect Question or Command ;

**Quid cōsili sit ostendit** *he shows what the plan is.*

**Dicit puerōs vocent** *he says they shall call the boys.* § 143

- (b) as something (not yet occurring) looked forward to ;

**Postulant ut vocētur** *they request that he be called*

or as something *likely to result from* the nature of the case ;

**Cōnsuetūdō est, ut eōs iuvet** *his custom is that he aid them.*

**Nōn dubitō quīn eat** *I don't doubt but he is going, I have no hesitation about why he shall not go.*

- (c) a *cause* mentioned by way of explanation, etc.

**Causa mittendī est, quod eōs vocārī vult** *the cause of sending (him) is, that he wishes them (to be) called.*



## f. Primary or Principal Sequence of Tenses.

<i>Pres.</i> Hoc facit <i>he is doing this</i>	} Cf. § 148 ut nōs terrēat <i>that he may</i> <i>frighten us; to frighten</i> <i>us.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Hoc fēcit <i>he has done this</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> Hoc faciet <i>he will do it</i>	
<i>Futp.</i> Hoc fēcerit <i>will have done it</i>	

Hostium tanta est ut ad arma capienda  
celeritās the enemy's tempus dēsit that there is  
quickness is so great, no time to take up arms

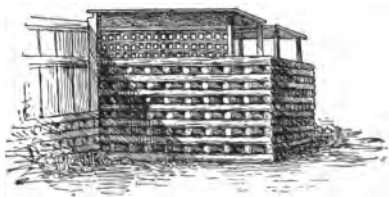
Ita celeriter prō- ut spatium pīla coniciendi  
currunt they run nōn dētur that time to hurl  
forward so quickly, javelins is not given

## g. Secondary or Historical Succession of Tenses.

<i>Imp.</i> Id faciēbat <i>was doing it</i>	} Cf. § 148 ut nōs terreret <i>that he might</i> <i>frighten us; to frighten us.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Id fēcit <i>did do or did it</i>	
<i>Plup.</i> Id fēcerat <i>had done it</i>	

Hostium tanta fuit ut ad galeās induendās tem-  
celeritās so great was pus dēfuerit that there was no  
the enemy's quickness, time to put on helmets § 181 b

Ita celeriter prōcu- ut spatium arma capiendi  
currere they came nōn darētūr that time to seize  
on so quickly, weapons was not given



Agger.

## 148.

## Purpose Clauses

(*in order*) *that*, (*in order*) *to* = *ut*, *utī*, *quō*, *quō plūs*, *quī*, etc., with the Subjunctive. §§ 139-40

(*in order*) *that* . . . *not*, (*in order*) *not to* = *nē*, *quō minus* with the Subjunctive.

- a. Hoc faciunt, *ut servōs terreant* *they do this (in order) that they may terrify the servants* or (*in order*) *to terrify the servants*
- b. Hoc facit, *quō inimicōs prohibeat* *he does this (in order) that (by it) he may keep enemies away* or (*in order*) *to keep*, etc.
- c. Hoc facit, *nē inimicī servōs terreant* *he does this that enemies may not frighten the slaves*
- d. Hoc facit, *quō minus servōs terreant*—*that (-on-account-of-it) they may not frighten the slaves so much* or *that they may frighten the servants less* or *may not frighten*, etc.
- e. Hoc facit, *quō plūs pābuli habeat* *he does it (in-order-) that (by-this-means) he may have more fodder* or *to have more*
- f. Hoc facit, *quō facilius hostis prohibeat* . . . (*in-order-)* *that (-by-this-means) he may keep the enemy away more easily* or (*in-order-by-this-means-)* *to keep the enemy away more easily*
- g. *Mārcum mittit, quī hostis prohibeat* *sends Mark (in-order) that-he may stop the enemy* or *sends Mark to stop the enemy*
- h. *Nihil habet, quō pābulum vehat* *he has nothing on-which he may carry fodder* or *has nothing to carry fodder on* § 115 a
- i. *Nōn habent, quō fugiant* *they have no (place) to-which they may flee* or *they have no (place) to flee to* § 119 d
- j. *Nōn habet, ubi pābulum pōnat* *he has not where he may put fodder* § 119 e
- k. *Nōn habet, unde pābulum comparet* *he has no (source) from which he may get fodder* or *to get fodder from* § 119 f

Result Clauses

**149.** Result Clauses are usually foreshadowed by some word meaning *so* or *such*; as the Latin *sic*, *ita so*, *in such a manner*, *tam so*, *tantum so much*, etc.

<i>so . . . that</i> = <i>sic . . ut</i> , <i>ita . . uti</i> or <i>tam . . qui</i>	} with the Sub- junctive
<i>so that not</i> = <i>ut nōn</i> ; ( <i>such</i> ) <i>that not</i> = <i>qui nōn</i>	
<i>not so . . that not</i> , <i>not so . . but</i> = <i>nōn tam . . quin</i>	

- a. *Tam multī sunt, ut servōs terreant* *there are so many that they frighten the slaves* or *so many as to frighten the slaves*
- b. *Tam paucī sunt, utī inimicōs nōn terreant* *they are so few that they do not terrify their enemies; so few as not to terrify*, etc.
- c. *Ita dicit, quō servōs terreat* *he is speaking in-such-a-manner that- (by-it) he is terrifying the slaves; so as to terrify*, etc.
- d. *Nēmō tam audāx est, quī id facere cōnētur* *no one is so bold that-he would try to do it* or *so bold as to try to do it* § 139
- e. *Nēmō tam fortis est, quin interdum terreātur* *no one is so brave but that he is terrified at times; so brave as not to*, etc.
- f. *Tantulum est, quod carrō vehātur* *there is so little that-it*, etc.
- g. *Nōn tantum est, quin carrō vehātur* *there is not so much but-it can be carried on a cart.* § 115 a

**150.**

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	—	—	plūs § 72	minor	minor	minus § 72
G.	—	—	plūris § 73	minōris	minōris	minōris
D.	—	—	—	minōrī	minōrī	minōrī
Ac.	—	—	plūs § 68 a	minōrem	minōrem	minus § 68
V.	—	—	—	minor	minor	minus
Ab.	—	—	plūre	minōre	minōre	minōre

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
G.	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium	minōrum	minōrum	minōrum
D.	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus	minōribus	minōribus	minōribus
Ac.	plūris	plūris	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
V.	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
Ab.	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus	minōribus	minōribus	minōribus

plūs *more, more (value) too much*    minus *less, less (value) too little,*  
 plūrēs *more (persons), several*    not so much, not (§ 148 d)  
 plūribus *praesentibus when too*    minōrēs *younger (persons),*  
     *many were present § 96 a, quid*    minors, descendants  
 plūra? *why more (things)?*    maiōrēs *older (men), elders*

## Descriptive and Characteristic Clauses

151. a. A *Descriptive Clause* seeks to describe or identify a person or thing that is already in mind. (Verb Indicative.)

Hic est, quī Mārcum laudat *this is (the one) who praises Mark*  
 Multi sunt, quī id volunt *there are many, who wish that*  
 (Flūmen) quod in Rhodanum influit *that flows into the Rhone*

b. A *Characteristic Relative Clause* seeks persons or things to fit a particular description that it contains.

(Verb Subjunctive.)

Nōn is est, quī Titum laudet *he is not one, that praises Titus*  
 Multi sunt, quī id velint *there are many who (would) wish this*  
 Quis est, quī eum laudet? *who is there that would praise him?*  
     *who is there (such) that he praises him? § 115 a*  
 Nēmō est, quīn eum laudet *there is no-one but will praise him*  
     *there is no-one who would not praise him*

152. a. Noun Clauses are used as Subject or Predicate.

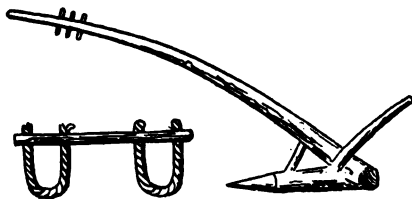
**Eōs vocārī oportet** *that they be called is necessary*, etc. § 131  
**Fit ut veniat** *that he come happens; it happens that he comes*  
**Concēditur uti eant** *that they go is granted; permission is given . . .*

b. Noun Clauses are used as Predicate Nouns.

**Suspiciō est id dōlō fierī** *the suspicion is that it is done slyly*  
**Condiō est ut nunc eat** *the condition is that he go now*  
**Causa est quod insidiās verētur** *the reason is that he fears ambush*

153. Noun Clauses are used as Direct Object.

**Eōs ingredi prohibet** *he keeps them from entering* §§ 123, 132  
**Eōs nōn dēterret, quān ingrediantur** *he does not prevent them from entering; does not stop them so that they may not enter*  
**Id eis facile persuādet** *he persuades them this easily* § 74, 4, 6  
**Eis persuādet Mārcum abesse** *he persuades them (that) Mark is away* Cf. § 146 a, e  
**Eis persuādet uti exeant** *he persuades them that they should leave*  
**Nōn dubitō eōs vocārī** *I (believe) don't doubt their being called*  
**Nōn dubitō quān vocentur** *I don't doubt but they are called*  
**Timeō nē veniat** *(I doubt his not coming) I fear that he will come*  
**Timeō ut veniat** *(I doubt his coming) I fear that he will not come*  
**Nōn timeō nē nōn veniat** *I don't fear that he will not come*



Iugum et Arātrum.



**154.** Noun Clauses are used in Apposition with certain words; as, *id it, this; illud that (this) or the following; hōc or eō (Abl.) on account of this, for the reason.*

*eā ratiōne, eā dē causā for this reason, etc. § 74, 15*

<i>hōc . . . . .</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	} <i>for the reason, that . . . ,</i> <i>on account of this, that . . . ,</i>
<i>eō . . . . .</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	
<i>proptereā . . .</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	
<i>eā dē causā . .</i>	<i>quod . . .</i>	

*eō cōnsiliō . . . ut . . . . with the intention that; cf. § 96 a*

*Id nūtiātūr, eōs morārī it is reported that they are delaying*

*Id contendunt, nē ēnūtiētūr they seek this, that it be not told*

*Venit eō cōnsiliō, ut mē videat comes with the idea of seeing me*

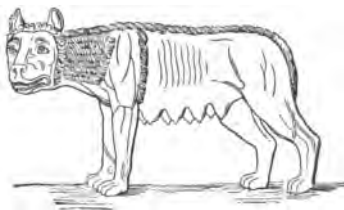
*Id eō magis faciunt, quod abest they are doing this all-the more because he is away*

*Hōc facilius eīs persuādet, quod continentur he persuades them the more easily because they are hemmed in*

*Eō proptereā minus ūtī potest, quod abit he cannot use it so well for the reason that he is going away § 182 b*

*Id eā dē causā facit, quod abire vult he is doing this for the reason that he wishes to go away*

*Satis est causae, quā rē domum revertātūr there is enough (of) reason (§ 72) why he should go back home*



Lupa.

**Nihil est causae quā eat** *there is no reason why he should not go*  
**Multa hortantur, quā rē eat** *many (things) on account of which*  
*fact he should go are pressing-upon him; there are many reasons*  
*why he should go* § 115 c

**Recusat nē morētur** *he gives back reason that he may not delay*  
**Recusat quō minus morētur** *(he gives reason on-account-of-*  
*which he should delay not-so-much); he refuses to delay*  
 (§§ 68 a, 150) [-cūsā- = causa]

**Nōn recusat quō minus eat** *(he makes no refusal whereby he shall*  
*go any less); he does not refuse to go* § 219, 1

**Nōn recusat quā eat** *he gives no reason why he should not go;*  
*he does not refuse to go*

**155. a. Object Clauses are retained with passive verbs.**

**Mē nōmen rogat** *he asks me my name* (Direct Object retained  
**Ego nōmen rogor** *I am asked my name* with the passive.)  
**Certior fit eōs ire** *(he is made aware that they are going) he is*  
*informed that they are going* § 230

**b. Noun Clauses are used in various case relations.**

**Ā maleficiō nōn temperant** *they do not refrain from mischief*  
**Pueri sibi nōn temperant, quā iniuriās inferant** *the boys do not*  
*put restraint upon themselves on-account-of-which they will*  
*not inflict injuries; do not refrain from inflicting* § 115 b  
**Servōs dēterrent nē frumentum cōferant** *they dissuade slaves so*  
*that they will not bring grain; keep slaves from bringing grain*  
**Nōn dēterrentur, quā frumentum ferant** *they are not dissuaded*  
*from bringing grain*  
**Retinentur, quō minus nobis iniuriās inferant** *they are kept from*  
*inflicting injuries upon us* § 74, 4, 6  
**Nōn retinentur, quā nobis iniuriās inferant** *they are not kept*  
*from inflicting injuries upon us* § 230

**156. a. Simple Conditions***Nothing implied. See § 138 c.**Indicative (or Imperative).*

**Sī eum rogō,**  
**Quem sī rogō,** } **venit**  
**Mē rogante,** }  
*if I ask him, he comes.*

**Sī cōsentiētis itūra sum**  
*if you (will) agree, I shall go;*

**sīn recūsābitis, ire nōlō**  
*but-if you refuse, I will not.*

**Etsī vōs vīdit, tamen nōn dīxit**  
*even-if he yet he did not*  
*did see you, say so*

**Nisi rogātus erit, nōn ibō**  
*unless he's asked I'll not go.*

**b. Contingent Conditions***Fulfillment regarded possible.**Present or Perfect Subjunctive.*

**Sī rogētur, veniat or**  
**sī rogātus sit vēnerit**  
*if he should he would*  
*be asked, come § 141 b*

**c. Contrary to Fact or Unreal***Conditions. See § 138 b.**Imp. or Plup. Subjunctive.*

**Sī rogārētur, veniret § 137 d**  
*were he asked, he would come.*

**Nisi rogātus esset, nōn vēnisset**  
*had he not he wouldn't*  
*been asked, have come.*

**157. a. Both Third and Fourth Declension nouns are**  
**formed on the participial stems of verbs. See § 163 c.**

*Supines are Fourth Declension noun forms. (Cf. § 129.)*

**Vocātus audiō Cōnātus tuōs compressī Cōnātū dēsistit**  
*I hear calls I foiled thy attempts desists from-trying*

**b. The Accusative Singular of Supines is used (chiefly after**  
**mittere, venīre, and ire) to denote Purpose. §§ 195 d, 196 d**

**Venit auxilium rogātum (Cf. Domum it Rōmam vēnit**  
*comes to-ask aid § 61 b goes home came to-Rome)*

**c. The Ablative often denotes in what respect, etc. § 190 d**  
**Facile est rogātū (§ 74-16). (Cf. Virtūte praestāns**  
*is easy (in the asking) to-ask excelling in-bravery)*

- d. In petendō or In pāce petendā versātur or  
in petitiōne in petitiōne pācis versātur § 107 b, c  
in or upon seeking is busied or active in seeking peace
- e. Facile factū easy to do Miserābile vīsū pitiable to see  
Eius rogātū at his request Cōnārī dēsistunt cease to-try  
(Erat) difficilī trānsitū flūmen a river of difficult passage

158. A Gerundive and its noun are treated as a single noun and declined together.

- a. Pōns (faciendus) est there is a-bridge (-to-be-built)
- b. Ratiō pontis (faciendī) the plan of (-building-) the-bridge
- c. Diēs pontī faciendō dictus day set for the-bridge-to-be-built  
a day set for-building-the-bridge
- d. Ad (pontem) faciendum tempus deest time to-build (-the-bridge) is lacking; there-is-no-time for building-a-bridge
- e. Pontem (faciendum) cūrat he sees to (the-building-of-) a-bridge
- f. Dē ponte (faciendō) dēspērat despairs of (-building-) a-bridge

159. Purpose is expressed in many ways.

- |   |         |   |
|---|---------|---|
| a. Lēgātōs mittit pācem petītum                           | § 157 b | } He sends<br>envoys<br>to seek a<br>settlement |
| b. Lēgātōs ad pācem petendam mittit                       | § 158 d |   |
| c. Lēgātōs pācis petendae causā mittit cf. § 129          |         |   |
| d. Lēgātōs, quī pācem petant, mittit                      | § 148 g |   |
| e. Lēgātōs, utī pācem petant, mittit                      | § 148 a |   |
| f. Lēgātōs dē pāce (petendā) mittit                       | § 58    |   |
| g. Equitēs eis auxiliō mīsit sent cavalry for aid to them | § 73 e  |   |

### THE VERB

160. Every one who learns Latin thoroughly, sooner or later comes to summarize the essential facts about verbs in the way most convenient for himself and reduce them to the smallest possible compass, somewhat as follows:

## Essential Facts

161. A Latin verb is built up of three kinds of elements:

1. *Stems* (containing the root of the word). § 163
2. *Mode and Tense Signs*. §§ 164-7
3. *Endings* (showing the person and number of the subject). § 168

The *Principal Parts* of verbs are necessary in order

- (a) to know to which class the verb belongs, § 169
- (b) to be able to get the stems, and thus
- (c) build up any other form we wish to use.

A great deal of confusion is avoided by learning the list of *-iō* verbs given below, since they are the only verbs whose present stem cannot be obtained from the present infinitive active by dropping *-re*. § 126

162. Stems in *-i-* or *-iō-* verbs (Third Conjugation).

<i>capiō, capere</i> ; <sup>1</sup> <i>-cipiō, -cipere</i>	<i>take, catch</i>	captive, recipient
<i>cupiō, cupere</i>	<i>wish, desire</i>	cupidity, Cupid
<i>faciō, facere</i> ; <i>-ficiō, -ficere</i>	<i>make, do, cause</i>	facility, proficient
<i>fodiō, fodere</i>	<i>dig</i> (p.p. <i>fossus dug</i> )	foss, fossil
<i>fugiō fugere</i>	<i>flee</i>	fugitive, refuge
<i>iaciō, iacere</i> ; <i>-iciō, -icere</i>	<i>throw, hurl</i>	abject, reject
<i>-liciō, -licere</i>	<i>lure, entice</i>	elicit
<i>pariō, parere</i>	<i>bring forth, bear</i>	parent, apparition
<i>quatiō, quatere</i> ; <i>-cutiō, -cutere</i>	<i>shake</i>	quash, concussion
<i>rapiō, rapere</i> ; <i>-ripiō, -ripere</i>	<i>snatch, seize</i>	rapid, rapine
<i>sapiō, sapere</i> ; <i>-sipiō, -sipere</i>	<i>know (by taste)</i>	sapid, insipid
<i>gradior</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>gradi</i> ; <i>-gredior, -gredi</i>	<i>walk, go</i>	grade, ingredient
<i>morior, mori</i>	<i>die, perish</i>	mortal, immortal
<i>patior, pati</i> ; <i>-petior, -peti</i>	<i>suffer, let, allow</i>	patient, perpetual

<sup>1</sup> *-i-* becomes *-e-* before *r*.      <sup>2</sup> *-i-* disappears before *-i*.

## 163.

## The Three Essential Parts

- a. To find the *Present Stem*, drop *-re, -rī,* or *-i* from the *Present Infinitive*. § 126
- b. To find the *Perfect Stem*, drop *-i* from the *Perf. Ind. Act.* 1st person, sing.
- c. To find the *Supine*<sup>1</sup> *Stem*, drop *-us, -a,* *-um* from the *Perf. Part.* or *-um* from *Ac. Supine*. § 157 b

vocō,	vocāre	vocāvī	vocātus -a -um
1	vocā-	vocāv- § 99	vocāt-
	<i>call</i> § 136	<i>having called</i>	<i>having been called</i>
§ 169	<i>be calling</i>	<i>have called</i>	<i>being called</i> § 99
cōnor	cōnārī § 127	—	cōnātus -a -um
1	cōnā- <i>try</i>	— <sup>5</sup>	cōnāt- <i>having tried</i>
videō	vidēre	vidī <i>saw</i>	vīsus -a -um § 98
2	vidē- <i>see</i>	vid- <i>have seen</i>	vīs- <i>having been seen</i>
vereor	verērī	—	veritus -a -um § 101
2	verē- <i>fear</i>	— <sup>5</sup>	verit- <i>having feared</i>
agō	agere	ēgi <i>did</i> Cf. § 101	āctus -a -um
3	age- <i>do</i>	ēg- <i>have done</i>	āct- ( <i>having been</i> ) <i>done</i>
ūtor	ūtī <sup>2</sup>	—	ūsus -a -um § 182 b
3	ūte- <i>use</i>	— <sup>5</sup>	ūs- <i>having used</i>
capiō	capere <sup>3</sup>	cēpī <i>took</i> § 192	captus -a -um
3 i	capi- <i>take</i>	cēp- <i>have taken</i>	capt- ( <i>having been</i> ) <i>taken</i>
patior	patī <sup>4</sup>	—	passus -a -um
3 i	pati- <i>let</i>	— <sup>5</sup>	pass- <i>having let</i>
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus -a -um
4	audī-	audiv-	audīt-
	<i>hear</i>	<i>have heard</i>	<i>having been heard</i>
potior	potīrī	—	potītus -a -um § 211
4	potī- <i>get</i>	— <sup>5</sup>	potīt- <i>having gotten</i>

<sup>1</sup> Also called the *Participial Stem*.<sup>2</sup> Restore *-e-*.<sup>3</sup> Restore *-i-* from *-e-*.<sup>4</sup> Restore *-i-*; see § 162, note.<sup>5</sup> Deponents (§ 182) have no *Perf. stem*.

## 164.

## Indicative

I AND II CONJ.		III AND IV CONJ.	LEADING VERBS IN ENGLISH PERIPHRASES
<i>Pres.</i>	—	—	<i>am</i> —, <i>are</i> —, <i>is</i> —, <i>do</i> —
<i>Imp.</i>	-bā-	-bā-	<i>was</i> —, <i>were</i> —, <i>did</i> —, <i>-ed</i> , etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	-bi-	{ -ā- -ē-	(1st sing.) } <i>shall</i> —, <i>will</i> — (others)
<i>Perf.</i>	— <sup>1</sup>	— <sup>1</sup>	( <i>am having</i> —) <i>have</i> —, <i>did</i> —, <i>-ed</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	-erā-	-erā-	( <i>was having</i> —) <i>had</i> —
<i>Futp.</i>	-eri-	-eri-	( <i>shall be having</i> —) <i>shall have</i> —

## 165.

## Subjunctive

I CONJ.		ALL OTHERS	
<i>Pres.</i>	-ē-	-ā-	<sup>3</sup> <i>may</i> —, <sup>3</sup> <i>shall</i> —, <sup>3</sup> <i>will</i> —, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	-rē- <sup>2</sup>	-rē- <sup>2</sup>	<sup>3</sup> <i>might</i> —, <sup>3</sup> <i>should</i> —, <sup>3</sup> <i>would</i> —
<i>Perf.</i>	-erī- <sup>5</sup>	-erī- <sup>5</sup>	<sup>3</sup> <i>should</i> —, <sup>3</sup> <i>would</i> — § 156 b, c
<i>Plup.</i>	-issē- <sup>6</sup>	-issē- <sup>6</sup>	( <i>were having</i> —) <i>had</i> —, etc.

## 166.

## Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	—	—	<i>be</i> —, <i>do</i> —, <i>do be</i> —
<i>Fut.</i>	-tō-	-tō-	<i>shall</i> —

## 167. a.

## Participles (Adjectives)

	ACTIVE			PASSIVE			MEANING
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Pres.</i>	-ns, -ntis,	-ns, -ntis,	-ns -ntis			§ 97	-ing
<i>Perf.</i>		§ 98		-tus, or -sus,	-ta, -sa,	-tum -sum	-d, -ed, -t <sup>4</sup> -n, -ne, -en
<i>Fut.</i>	-ūrus	-ūra,	-ūrum	-ndus,	-nda,	-ndum	going to —

<sup>1</sup> Perfect stem.<sup>2</sup> -sē- and -lē- in -se and -le verbs.<sup>3</sup> Sometimes.<sup>4</sup> As in heard, burnt, seen, done, written.<sup>5</sup> si-.<sup>6</sup> essē-.

168. Endings — Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative

	Subject Acting	Subject Acted upon, or Acting on or for self	Meaning of the Endings
Indicative	-ō	-or	I
Present,	-s	-ris, -re	thou, (you)
Future	-t	-tur	he, she, it, there
Perfect,	-mus	-mur	we
and	-tis	-mini	you
Future. <sup>1</sup>	-nt	-ntur	they, there
Subjunctive	-m	-r	I
(all tenses);	-s	-re, -ris	thou, (you)
Indicative	-t	-tur	he, she, it, there
Imperfect,	-mus	-mur	we
Pluperfect,	-tis	-mini	you
and	-nt	-ntur	they, there
Future. <sup>2</sup>	-i <sup>3</sup>	(sum) <sup>4</sup>	I
Perfect	-isti	(es)	thou, (you)
Indicative	-it	(est)	he, she, it, there
only.	-imus	(sumus)	we
	-istis	(estis)	you
	-ērunt, -ēre	(sunt)	they, there
Present	—	-re	thou § 173
Imperative.	-te, etc.	-mini, etc.	you, ye

169. Stem Vowels

In the *First Conjugation* the present stem ends in -ā-.

In the *Second Conjugation* the present stem ends in -ē-.

In the *Third Conjugation* the present stem ends in -e- or -i-.

In the *Fourth Conjugation* the present stem ends in -ī-.

<sup>1</sup> First and Second Conjugations.    <sup>2</sup> Third and Fourth Conjugations.

<sup>3</sup> A modified form of *sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt*.

<sup>4</sup> Separate words. §§ 99, 101



170. In combining the stems, mode and tense signs, and endings, the vowel changes must be carefully learned.

The signs **-bi** and **-eri**- (§ 164)

- bi**- and **-eri**- become **-b-** and **-er-** before *another vowel*;
- bi**- becomes **-be-** before **-re** and **-ris**;
- bi**- becomes **-bu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**.

The stem vowels **-ā-** and **-ē-**; **-ā-** and **-ē-** in tense signs

- ā-** becomes **-a-** before **nd**, **nt**, and final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.
- ā-** disappears before *another vowel*.
- ē-** becomes **-e-** before **nd**, **nt**, or *another vowel*. § 28 b
- ē-** becomes **-e-** before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

The stem vowels **-e-**, **-i-**, and **-ī-**

- e-** disappears before *another vowel*;<sup>1</sup>
- e-** remains unchanged before **r** and **nd**;
- e-** becomes **-i-** before **m**, **s**, or **t**;
- e-** becomes **-u-** before **-nt** and **-ntur** (sometimes before **-nd-**);
- e-** becomes **-ē-** before **-bā-**;
- e-** becomes **-ē-** before **-ns** and **-e-** before **-ntis**, etc. § 28 a
- i-** disappears before **-ī** in the *Present Infinitive*;
- i-** becomes **-e-** before **-r-** and *when final*;<sup>1</sup>
- i-** becomes **-iu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**; **-iē-** before **-bā-**;
- i-** becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-** before **-nd-**);
- i-** becomes **-iē-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-ntis**, etc.
- ī-** becomes **-i-** before *another vowel* (cf. also § 183 a, c);
- ī-** (not **-erī-** § 165) becomes **-iu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**;
- ī-** becomes **-iē-** before **-bā-**; **-erī-** > **-eri-m**, **-t**, **-nt**.
- ī-** becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-**) before **-nd-**;
- ī-** becomes **-iē-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-ntis**, etc.

<sup>1</sup> In *ferre* the stem vowel **-e-** is lost before **r**, **s**, **t**, or *a vowel*. Final **-e** is also lost in the imperative forms, *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. §§ 212-4; B. § 116, 3.

## 171.

## Indicative

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE, DEPONENT

*Pres.* Pres. Stem + *ō*, etc. § 168    Pres. Stem + *or*, etc.

*Imp.* Pres. Stem + *bā* + *m*<sup>1</sup>    Pres. Stem + *bā* + *r*<sup>1</sup>

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

*Fut.* Pres. Stem + *bi* + *ō*    Pres. Stem + *bi* + *or*

## THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Pres. Stem + *ā* + *m*    Pres. Stem + *ā* + *r*  
                                   + *ē*<sup>2</sup> + *s*, etc.    + *ē*<sup>2</sup> + *re* or *ris*

*Perf.* Perf. Stem + *i*, etc.    P. P. and Pres. Ind. of *esse*

*Plup.* Perf. Stem + *erā* + *m*    P. P. and Imp. Ind. of *esse*

*Futp.* Perf. Stem + *eri* + *ō*    P. P. and Fut. Ind. of *esse*

## 172.

## Subjunctive

## FIRST CONJUGATION

§ 137 *b*

*Pres.* Pres. Stem + *ē* + *m*, etc.    Pres. Stem + *ē* + *r*, etc.

## ALL OTHER CONJUGATIONS

Pres. Stem + *ā* + *m*    Pres. Stem + *ā* + *r*

*Imp.* Pres. Stem + *rē*<sup>3</sup> + *m*    Pres. Stem + *rē*<sup>3</sup> + *r*

*Perf.* Perf. Stem + *erī* + *m*    P. P. and Pres. Sub. of *esse*

*Plup.* Perf. Stem + *issē* + *m*    P. P. and Imp. Sub. of *esse*

## 173.

## Imperative

*Pres.* Pres. Stem    Pres. Stem + *re*

Pres. Stem + *te*    Pres. Stem + *mini*

*Fut.* Pres. Stem + *tō* § 183 *c*    Pres. Stem + *tor* § 191 *b*

Pres. Stem + *tō*    Pres. Stem + *tor*

Pres. Stem + *tōte*    —

Pres. Stem + *ntō*    Pres. Stem + *ntor*

<sup>1</sup> § 168.    <sup>2</sup> -*ē*- throughout except the first person singular.

<sup>3</sup> -*sē*- in *esse* and its compounds; -*lē*- in *velle*, *nōlle*, *mālle*.

## 174. Participles (Adjectives) § 97-104

ACTIVE, DEPONENT			PASSIVE, DEPONENT		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	{ +ns -ns -ns	—	—	—
	<i>Stem</i>	{ +ntis -ntis -ntis			
<i>Perf.</i>	—	—	<i>Part.</i>	{ +us -a -um	
			<i>Stem</i>	{ +ī -ae -ī	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Part.</i>	{ +ūrus -ūra -ūrum	<i>Pres.</i>	{ +ndus -nda -ndum	
	<i>Stem</i>	{ +ūrī -ūrae -ūrī	<i>Stem</i>	{ +ndī -ndae -ndī	

175. Gerund (Noun) *Pres. Stem* + ndī, etc. § 129176. Supine (Noun) *Part. or Sup. Stem* + us, -ūs, etc. § 81 a

## 177. Infinitives (Nouns)

ACTIVE		PASSIVE, DEPONENT	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Pres. Stem</i> + re	{ <i>Pres. Stem</i> + rī (I, II, IV) <i>Pres. Stem</i> + ī (III Conj.)	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Perf. Stem</i> + isse	P. P. and esse	
	ACTIVE, DEPONENT	PASSIVE	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Fut. Part. and esse</i>	P. P. and fore § 183 e	
	<i>Ac. Supine and ire</i>	<i>Ac. Supine and īrī</i> § 215 g	

## 178. Contractions

-v-, -ve-, -vē-, and -vi- are often omitted; § 217 c.

179. The Active Voice represents the *subject* as *acting*.*Act. Puer librum domum fert* the boy is-taking the book home.180. a. The Passive Voice represents the *subject* as *acted upon*. The passive developed from the Middle Voice (which represents the *subject* as *acting upon itself*) as follows:b. The reflexive pronoun *sē* *self* was annexed to active verbs, as *fert* is-carrying, making \* *fertise* is-carrying-him-

*self*, which became (\* *fertere*, then \* *ferter*, then) *fertur*; -s- between vowels becoming -r-; cf. "was" and "were," "us" and "our" (formerly "ure," then "oure").

c. *Fertur* had to mean not only *he-carries-himself* or *rushes*, but also *he-is carried* (by something or somebody), e.g.

*Mid.* Puer in domum fertur *the boy takes-himself to the house.*

*Pass.* Liber ā puerō fertur *a book is-being-brought by the boy.*

181. a. But *sē* reappears elsewhere in the sentence, as in  
Puer *sē* domum cōnfert *the boy is-betaking-himself to his home.*  
*Sē* parātum arbitrātur (*for-himself*) *he considers himself ready.*

b. Middle forms still replace *sē* in some verbs.

Domōs revertuntur

(*turn-themselves-back home*),  
*they return to their homes.*

In flūmine lavātur

(*he washes-self in the river*),  
*he bathes in the river.*

Galeam induitur

*he puts a helmet on-self,*  
*he puts his helmet on.*

Gladium cingitur

*he girds a sword on-himself,*  
*he girds his sword on.*

182. a. Deponent verbs have lost the active forms.

Inimicōs verētur

*he dreads the enemies down-in-*  
*his-heart or he fears his ene-*  
*mies.*

Librīs ūtitur

*he avails-himself of books,*  
*he enjoys-himself with books,*  
*makes-use of or uses books.*

Graditur

*he is-moving-himself gradually,*  
*is-taking-steps, comes, goes.*

Gladiō potitur

*makes-himself-able with a sword,*  
*he takes possession of a sword,*  
*he gets hold of or gets a sword.*

b. The verbs, *ūtī help-self* and *potiri make-self-able*, and a few others take the Ablative Case. See Int. 5, i; also § 56, 6.

183. **sum, esse, fui, — possum, posse, potui, —**  
*am be was been am able be able was able*

## PRESENT

<i>Ind. a.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>	<i>Ind. b.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>
<u>sum</u> * <i>am</i>	<i>sim I be, may be</i>	<u>possum</u> <i>I can</i>	<i>possim be able,</i>
<u>es</u> <i>art</i>	<i>sis thou be</i>	<u>potes</u> <i>thou canst</i>	<i>possis may</i>
<u>est</u> <i>is</i>	<i>sit he be</i> § 137 c	<u>potest</u> <i>he can</i>	<i>possit</i>
<u>sumus</u> <i>are</i>	<i>sīmus we be</i>	<u>possumus</u> <i>we can</i>	<i>possimus</i>
<u>estis</u> <i>are</i>	<i>sitis you be</i>	<u>potestis</u> <i>you can</i>	<i>possitis</i>
<u>sunt</u> <i>are</i>	<i>sint they be</i> § 28 b	<u>possunt</u> <i>they can</i>	<i>possint</i>

## IMPERFECT (continuing in the past)

<i>eram was</i>	<i>essem were</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>poteram could or</i>	<i>possem might,</i>
<i>erās wast</i>	<i>essēs were</i>	<i>poterās was</i>	<i>possēs could or</i>
<i>erat was</i>	<i>esset were</i>	<i>poterat able</i>	<i>posset were</i> <sup>2</sup>
<i>erāmus were</i>	<i>essēmus were</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>possēmus able</i>
<i>erātis were</i>	<i>essētis were</i>	<i>poterātis</i>	<i>possētis</i>
<i>erant</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>were</i>	<i>essent</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>were</i>	<i>poterant</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>possent</i> <sup>4</sup>

## FUTURE

<i>erō I shall be</i> cf. § 170 -bi-	<i>poterō shall be able</i>
<i>eris thou wilt be</i>	<i>poteris wilt be able</i>
<i>erit he will be</i> § 156 a	<i>poterit will be able</i> § 156 a
<i>erimus we will be</i>	<i>poterimus shall be able</i>
<i>eritis you will be</i>	<i>poteritis will be able</i>
<i>erunt they will be</i>	<i>poterunt will be able</i>

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *might be, should be, or would be*; <sup>2</sup> *might be able, should be able, would be able*. <sup>3</sup> Note that -s- of the stem *es-* becomes -r- between vowels; cf. the English *is* and *are, was* and *were*. <sup>4</sup> Note that the element *pot- able* becomes *pos-* before -s-; *ts* becomes *ss* or *s* in Latin.

\* Forms underlined are the *Principal Parts* (§ 161). Note that, both in meaning and use, they correspond to the Principal Parts of English verbs, but that the meaning of the Latin forms is broader. See §§ 98-9: 101, 121-3; 127-135.

c.	PERFECT (finished in the past)		d.
<u>fui</u> <i>I was</i> <sup>1</sup>	<u>fu</u> <i>erim</i> <i>were</i> <sup>1</sup>	<u>potui</u> <i>I could</i> <sup>2</sup>	<u>potu</u> <i>erim</i> <i>could</i> <sup>2</sup>
<u>fuisti</u> <i>wast</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>eris</i> <i>were</i>	<u>potuisti</u> <i>couldst</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>eris</i>
<u>fuit</u> <i>was</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>erit</i> <i>were</i> § 28 b	<u>potuit</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erit</i> § 156 b
<u>fuimus</u> <i>were</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>erimus</i> <i>were</i>	<u>potuimus</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erimus</i>
<u>fuistis</u> <i>were</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>eritis</i> <i>were</i>	<u>potuistis</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>eritis</i>
<u>fuērunt</u> or <u>fuēre</u> <i>were</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>erint</i> <i>were</i>	<u>potuērunt</u> or <u>potuēre</u> <i>could</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erint</i>

## PLUPERFECT

§ 156 c

<u>fu</u> <i>eram</i> <i>had</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>issem</i> <i>had been</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>eram</i> <i>had</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>issem</i> <i>had</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erās</i> <i>been</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>issēs</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erās</i> <i>been</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>issēs</i> <i>been</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erat</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>isset</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erat</i> <i>able</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>isset</i> <i>able</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erāmus</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>issēmus</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erāmus</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>issēmus</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erātis</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>issētis</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erātis</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>issētis</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erant</i>	<u>fu</u> <i>issent</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erant</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>issent</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<u>fu</u> <i>rō</i> <i>I shall have been</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>rō</i> <i>I shall have been able</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>eris</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>eris</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erit</i> § 156 a	<u>potu</u> <i>erit</i> § 156 a
<u>fu</u> <i>erimus</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erimus</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>eritis</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>eritis</i>
<u>fu</u> <i>erint</i>	<u>potu</u> <i>erint</i>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <u>es</u> <i>be (thou)</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <u>estō</u> <sup>4</sup>	<u>estōte</u> <sup>4</sup>
<u>este</u> <i>be (ye)</i>	<u>estō</u> <sup>5</sup>	<u>suntō</u> <sup>5</sup> § 173

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives)

<i>Pres.</i> — — <u>ēns</u> <i>a being</i> <sup>3</sup>	<u>potēns</u> -ns -ns <i>(being) able</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <u>futūrus</u> -a -um	§§ 84, 102, -se

<sup>1</sup> or *have been*; <sup>2</sup> or *have been able*.<sup>4</sup> *Thou shalt be, ye shall be.*<sup>3</sup> In Eng. *entity*.<sup>5</sup> *He shall be, they shall be.*

## e. INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i>	<u>esse</u> (to) be, being	<u>posse</u> (to) be able, being able
<i>Perf.</i>	fuisse (to) have been	potuisse (to) have been able
<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus esse or fore <sup>1</sup>	—

184. dō, dare, dedī, datus, §§ 98, 121 b, 128  
give gave given

## INDICATIVE

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives)

<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	dāns § 97	<u>datus</u> § 98
<u>dat</u>	datur	datūrus § 102	dandus § 104
dabat	dabātur <sup>2</sup>		
dabit	dabitur	GERUND (Noun)	GERUNDIVE (Adj.)
<u>dedit</u>	datus est	dare giving	—
dederat	datus erat	dandī § 129	dandī -ae -i
dederit	datus erit		

## SUPINE (Noun)

*Ac.* datum datum ibat was

*Ab.* datū § 157 b, c going to give

## SUBJUNCTIVE

det	dētur
daret	darētur
dederit	datus sit
dedisset	datus esset

## INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i>	<u>dare</u> (to) give	darī (to) be put
<i>Perf.</i>	dedisse	datus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	datūrus esse	datus fore or
	datum ire	datum iri

## IMPERATIVE

dā, <sup>3</sup> date, etc., cf. § 189

Cf. §§ 103 d, 215 g

<sup>1</sup> to be going to be (the only Fut. Inf. having a single word form), cf. § 130 b.

<sup>2</sup> The only short vowel in Latin before -bā- or -bi-; the only short a in Latin verbs before -mus -tis or before -tur -mur -mini occur in the forms of dare and its compound circumdare.

<sup>3</sup> Only the forms dās givest and dā give (thou) have -a- in the stem.

185. a. **dēsum, deesse** ; **absum, abesse**, etc. (see § 183).

*am lacking* 3

*am away* ab 6 § 221 b

*fail* § 56, 3

*am absent or wanting*

## PRESENT

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>b.</i>	<i>Sub.</i>
<u>dēsum</u> <i>fail</i> <sup>1</sup>		<u>dēsim</u> <i>fail</i>	<u>absum</u> <i>am away</i>		<u>absim</u> <i>be away</i>
<u>dees</u> <i>fail</i> <sup>est</sup>		<u>dēsīs</u> <i>fail</i>	<u>abes</u> <i>art away</i>		<u>absīs</u> <i>be away</i>
<u>deest</u> <i>fails</i>		<u>dēsīt</u> <i>fail</i>	<u>abest</u> <i>is away</i>		<u>absīt</u> <i>be away</i>
<u>dēsumus</u> <i>fail</i>		<u>dēsīmus</u> <i>fail</i>	<u>absumus</u> <i>are away</i>		<u>absīmus</u> §147 a
<u>deestis</u> <i>fail</i>		<u>dēsītīs</u> <i>fail</i>	<u>abestis</u> <i>are away</i>		<u>absītīs</u>
<u>dēsunt</u> <i>fail</i>		<u>dēsīnt</u> <i>fail</i>	<u>absunt</u> <i>are away</i>		<u>absīnt</u>

p. 10, l. 18

## IMPERFECT (continuing in the past)

<u>deeram</u> <i>failed</i>	<u>deessem</u> <i>failed</i> <sup>2</sup>	<u>aberam</u> <i>was</i>	<u>abessem</u> <i>were</i> <sup>3</sup>
<u>deerās</u>	<u>deessēs</u>	<u>aberās</u> <i>away</i>	<u>abessēs</u> <i>away</i>
<u>deerat</u> § 156 a	<u>deesset</u> § 156 c	<u>aberat</u> § 147 b	<u>abesset</u> § 147 a
<u>deerāmus</u>	<u>deessēmus</u>	<u>aberāmus</u>	<u>abessēmus</u>
<u>deerātīs</u>	<u>deessētīs</u>	<u>aberātīs</u>	<u>abessētīs</u>
<u>deerant</u>	<u>deessent</u>	<u>aberant</u> § 221	<u>abessent</u>

## FUTURE

<u>deerō</u> <i>shall fail</i>	<u>aberō</u> <i>shall be away</i>
<u>deerīs</u> <i>wilt fail</i>	<u>aberīs</u> <i>wilt be away</i>
<u>deerit</u> <i>will fail</i> § 156 a	<u>aberit</u> <i>will be away</i> § 156 a
<u>deerīmus</u> <i>shall fail</i>	<u>aberīmus</u> <i>shall be away</i>
<u>deerītīs</u> <i>will fail</i>	<u>aberītīs</u> <i>will be away</i>
<u>deerunt</u> <i>will fail</i>	<u>aberunt</u> <i>will be away</i>

<sup>1</sup> Note that to form the compounds of **esse** it is necessary merely to prefix the prepositions **ā, ab, dē, in, inter**, etc., to its various forms. **dē-** becomes **dē-** and **prō-** becomes **prōd-**, before **e-**. <sup>2</sup> *might fail, should be lacking, would be lacking (to)*, etc. <sup>3</sup> *might be away, should be wanting, would be absent, were to be away*, etc. § 138 a, f



c.	PERFECT (finished in the past)		d.
<u>dēfui</u> <i>failed</i> <sup>1</sup>	dēfuerim <i>failed</i> <sup>1</sup>	<u>āfui</u> <i>was away</i> <sup>2</sup>	āfuerim
dēfuistī	dēfueris § 147 g	āfuistī	āfueris
dēfuit	dēfuerit § 156 b	āfuit	āfuerit
dēfuimus	dēfuerimus § 149	āfuimus	āfuerimus
dēfuistis	dēfueritis	āfuistis	āfueritis
dēfuērunt or dēfuerint § 28 b		āfuērunt or	āfuerint
dēfuēre		āfuēre	

## PLUPERFECT

dēfueram	dēfuissem <i>had</i>	āfueram	āfuissem
dēfuerās	dēfuissēs <i>failed</i>	āfuerās	āfuissēs
dēfuerat	dēfuisset § 156 c	āfuerat	āfuisset § 156 c
dēfuerāmus	dēfuissēmus	āfuerāmus	āfuissēmus
dēfuerātis	dēfuissētis	āfuerātis	āfuissētis
dēfuerant	dēfuissent	āfuerant	āfuissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

dēfuerō <i>shall have failed</i>	āfuerō <i>shall have been away</i>
dēfueris, etc.	āfueris, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dees be (thou) lacking</i>	<i>abes be (thou) away</i>
	<i>deeste fail (ye), etc.</i>	<i>abeste be (ye) away, etc.</i>

## PARTICIPLES (Adjective)

<i>Pres.</i>	—	absēns § 97
<i>Fut.</i>	<u>dēfutūrus</u> -a -um	<u>āfutūrus</u> § 102, -se

## INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i>	<u>deesse</u> (to) <i>be lacking</i>	<u>abesse</u> (to) <i>be away</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	dēfuisse	āfuisse § 99
<i>Fut.</i>	dēfutūrus esse, dēfore <sup>3</sup>	āfutūrus esse, ābfore <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> have failed, did fail.<sup>2</sup> have been away.<sup>3</sup> § 183 e

186. **volō, velle, voluī**, — *will, (to) wish, be willing* § 130  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, — *will not, not wish, be unwilling*  
**mālō, mälle, māluī**, — *will rather, prefer*

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <b>volō</b> <i>I will</i>	<b>nōlō</b> <i>I will not</i>	<b>mālō</b> <i>I will rather</i>
<b>vīs</b> <i>thou wilt</i>	<b>nōn vīs</b> <i>wilt not</i>	<b>māvīs</b> <i>preferest</i>
<b>vult</b> <i>he will</i>	<b>nōn vult</b> <i>will not</i>	<b>māvult</b> <i>prefers</i>
<b>volumus</b> <i>we will</i>	<b>nōlumus</b> etc.	<b>mālumus</b> etc.
<b>vultis</b> <i>you will</i>	<b>nōn vultis</b>	<b>māvultis</b>
<b>volunt</b> <i>you will</i>	<b>nōlunt</b> cf. § 170, -e	<b>mālunt</b> § 137
<i>Imp.</i> <b>volēbam</b> <i>I would</i>	<b>nōlēbam</b> <i>wouldn't</i>	<b>mālēbam</b> <i>preferred</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <b>volam</b> <i>shall wish</i>	<b>nōlam</b> § 164	<b>mālam</b>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>voluī</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>I would</i>	<b>nōluī</b> <i>would not</i>	<b>māluī</b> <i>preferred</i>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>volueram</b>	<b>nōlueram</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>mālueram</b>
<i>Futp.</i> <b>voluerō</b>	<b>nōluerō</b>	<b>māluerō</b> <sup>1</sup>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <b>velim</b> <i>be willing</i>	<b>nōlim</b> §§ 140-1	<b>mālim</b> <i>prefer</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <b>vellem</b> <i>wished</i>	<b>nōllem</b> § 156 b, c	<b>māllem</b> <i>preferred</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>voluerim</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>nōluerim</b>	<b>māluerim</b>
<i>Plup.</i> <b>voluisssem</b>	<b>nōluisssem</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>māluisssem</b>

## INFINITIVE (Noun)

<i>Pres.</i> <b>velle</b> <i>(to) will</i>	<b>nōlle</b> <i>wish not</i>	<b>mälle</b> <i>(to) prefer</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <b>voluisse</b>	<b>nōluisse</b> § 121 a	<b>māluisse</b>
<i>Part.</i> <b>volēns</b> <i>willing</i> ; <b>nōlēns</b> <i>unwilling</i> .	<i>Imp.</i> <b>nōlī</b> , <sup>2</sup> <b>nōlīte</b> <i>don't</i>	

<sup>1</sup> All verbs are perfectly regular in the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses. The forms of **esse** and its compounds may be used as a model for all verbs in these tenses.

<sup>2</sup> § 141 a.

## 187. Prin. Parts : vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

		INDICATIVE	
		Active	Passive
Pres.	<u>vocō</u> <i>I call, am calling</i>		vocor <i>I am called</i>
§ 171	vocās		vocāris
	vocat § 136		vocātur § 136
	vocāmus		vocāmur
	vocātis		vocāmini
	vocant		vocantur
Imp.	vocābam <i>I was calling</i>		vocābar <i>I was called</i>
§ 171	vocābās		vocābāre, vocābāris
	vocābat		vocābātur
	vocābāmus		vocābāmur
	vocābātis		vocābāmini
	vocābant		vocābantur
Fut.	vocābō <i>I shall call</i>		vocābor <i>I shall be called</i>
§ 171	vocābis		vocābere, vocāberis
	vocābit		vocābitur
	vocābimus		vocābimur
	vocābitis		vocābimini
	vocābunt		vocābuntur
Perf.	<u>vocāvī</u> <i>I called, have</i>	vocātus <sup>1</sup>	sum <i>I was called</i>
§ 171	vocāvistī <i>called</i>	vocātus	es
§ 178	vocāvit	vocātus	est
	vocāvimus	vocātī	sumus
	vocāvistis	vocātī	estis
	vocāvērunt, <sup>2</sup> vocāvēre	vocātī	sunt

<sup>1</sup> Agrees with the subject in gender and number.<sup>2</sup> -runt is a modified form of sunt § 168, note 3.

Note that Indicative and Subjunctive forms have *only twenty-two* different endings. Learn the stem (§ 163) used in each tense, the signs of the tenses and the vowel changes in the same.

188. English: (to) *call, called, called*

		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		Active	Passive
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vocem I call</i>		<i>vocer I be called</i>
§ 172	<i>vocēs</i>		<i>vocēre, vocēris</i>
	<i>vocet he call, etc.</i>	§ 139	<i>vocētur he be called</i>
	<i>vocēmus § 141</i>		<i>vocēmur</i>
	<i>vocētis</i>		<i>vocēminī</i>
	<i>vocent</i>		<i>vocentur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>vocārem I called</i>		<i>vocārer I were called</i>
§ 172	<i>vocārēs</i>		<i>vocārēre, vocārēris</i>
	<i>vocāret</i>		<i>vocārētur</i>
	<i>vocārēmus</i>		<i>vocārēmur</i>
	<i>vocārētis</i>		<i>vocārēminī</i>
	<i>vocārent</i>		<i>vocārentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§137 *b, c*), always change -*bā-* to -*rē-*, -*erā-* to -*issē-*, and *erā-* to *essē-*.

Always change -*bi-* to -*rē-*, -*eri-* to -*issē-*, *eri-* to *essē-*, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(1st Conj.) Change -*bi-* to -*ē-*, -*eri-* to -*eri-*, *eri-* to *si-*, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>vocāverim I have called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>sim I have been</i>
§ 172	<i>vocāveris</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>sis called</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāverit</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>sit § 156 b</i>
	<i>vocāverimus</i>	<i>vocāti</i>	<i>simus</i>
	<i>vocāveritis</i>	<i>vocāti</i>	<i>sitis</i>
	<i>vocāverint</i>	<i>vocāti</i>	<i>sint</i>

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-*ā-* disappears before another vowel.

-*ā-* and -*ē-* become short before *nt* and before final -*m*, -*t*, or -*r*.

-*bi-* and -*eri-* become -*b-* and -*er-* before -*o*. -*eri-* (see § 170 *i*).

-*bi-* becomes -*be-* before -*r* and -*bu-* before -*nt*. § 170

## 187. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>vocāveram I had called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>eram I had been</i>
§ 171	<i>vocāverās</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erās called</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāverat</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>vocāverāmus</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>vocāverātis</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>vocāverant</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>vocāverō I shall have</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erō I shall have</i>
§ 171	<i>vocāveris called</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>eris been called</i>
§ 178	<i>vocāverit</i>	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>vocāverimus</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>vocāveritis</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>vocāverint</i>	<i>vocātī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

## 190. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vocāns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>		—	—	—
	<i>vocantis</i>	<i>calling</i>					
<i>Perf.</i>	—				<u><i>vocātus, vocāta, vocātum</i></u>		
					<i>(having been) called</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vocātūrus</i>	<i>-ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>		<i>vocandus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to call</i>				<i>(deserving) to be called</i>		

## d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plu.	
N.	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>vocātūs</i>	<i>Eōrum vocandōrum facultās</i>
G.	<i>vocātūs</i>	<i>vocātuum</i>	<i>opportunity to call them</i>
D.	<i>vocātui</i>	<i>vocātibus</i>	<i>Ad eōs vocandōs parātus</i>
Ac.	<u><i>vocātum</i></u>	<i>vocātūs</i>	<i>ready to call them</i>
V.	<i>vocātus</i>	<i>vocātūs</i>	<i>Dē eis vocandis dēspērat</i>
Ab.	<i>vocātū</i>	<i>vocātibus</i>	<i>despairs of calling them</i>

188. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

Active	Passive
<i>Plup.</i> vocāvīssē I <i>had called</i>	vocātus essem I <i>had been</i>
§ 172 vocāvīssēs	vocātus essēs <i>called</i>
§ 178 vocāvīssēt	vocātus esset § 156 e
vocāvīssēmus	vocātī essēmus
vocāvīssētis	vocātī essētis
vocāvīssent	vocātī essent

189.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> vocā call thou	vocāre be thou called
§ 173 vocāte call ye	vocāminī be ye called
<i>Fut.</i> vocātō thou shalt call	vocātor thou shalt be called

190. b. GERUND (Noun) § 129 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

Singular	Singular		
N. vocāre to call; calling	—	—	—
G. vocandī of calling, to call	vocandī	-ndae	-ndī
D. vocandō (for) calling	vocandō	-ndae	-ndō
Ac. vocandum, vocāre calling	vocandum	-ndam	-ndum
ad vocandum to call	—		
Ab. vocandō by calling, etc.	vocandō	-ndā	-ndō
Spatium vocandī est		Plural	
there is time to call	vocandōrum	-ndārum	-ndōrum
Eōs vocātum vēnit § 157	vocandīs	-ndīs	-ndīs
he came to call them	vocandōs	-ndās	-nda, etc.

e.

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

<i>Pres.</i> vocāre (to) call, be calling	vocārī (to) be called § 127
<i>Perf.</i> vocāvisse (to) have called	vocātus esse § 99
<i>Fut.</i> vocātūrus esse } be going	vocātus fore } be going to
§ 215 g vocātum ire } to call	vocātum irī } be called

The stem vowel -ā- becomes short before -nd and -nt. § 28 b

## 191. a. cōnor, cōnārī, —, cōnātus exert self, attempt

## INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
Pres.		<u>cōnor</u> I exert myself, try
Imp.		cōnābar I tried, was trying
Fut.	§ 171	cōnābor I shall try
Perf.	§§ 100–1	cōnātus sum I (have) tried
Plup.		cōnātus eram I had tried
Futp.		cōnātus erō shall have tried

## SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		cōner I try, may try, etc.
Imp.	§ 172	cōnārer I tried, should try
Perf.	§ 156 b, c	cōnātus sim I (have) tried
Plup.		cōnātus essem I had tried

## b.

## IMPERATIVE

Pres.		cōnāre exert thyself, try
	§ 173	cōnāminī exert yourselves
Fut.		cōnātor thou shall try cōnātor he shall try cōnantor they shall try

## c.

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	cōnāns -āns -āns	—
	cōnantis trying	
Perf.	—	<u>cōnātus</u> -a -um having tried
Fut.	cōnātūrus -ūra -ūrum	cōnandus -nda -ndum
	going to try	(deserving) to be tried

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

N. cōnārī to try, trying

G. cōnandī to try, of trying

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. cōnātus cōnātūs

G. cōnātūs cōnātuum

D. cōnātui cōnātibus

Ac. cōnātum cōnātūs

Ab. cōnātū cōnātibus

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

—

cōnandī -ndae -ndī of trying

Cōnātūs tuos compressi I put  
down your attempts

Cōnātum eunt are going to try

Cōnātū dēsistunt they leave  
off (from) trying

f.

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176

Pres.

cōnārī (to) try, trying

Perf.

cōnātus esse (to) have tried

Fut. cōnātūrus esse

(to) be going to try



Legiōnārii Militēs.



192. Prin. Parts: *videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus*

## INDICATIVE

	<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>videō I see, am seeing</i>		<i>videor I am seen, seem</i>
§ 171	<i>vidēs</i>		<i>vidēris</i>
	<i>videt § 136</i>		<i>vidētur § 136</i>
	<i>vidēmus</i>		<i>vidēmur</i>
	<i>vidētis</i>		<i>vidēmini</i>
	<i>vident</i>		<i>videntur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>vidēbam I was seeing</i>		<i>vidēbar I was seen</i>
§ 171	<i>vidēbās</i>		<i>vidēbāre, vidēbāris</i>
	<i>vidēbat</i>		<i>vidēbātur</i>
	<i>vidēbāmus</i>		<i>vidēbāmur</i>
	<i>vidēbātis</i>		<i>vidēbāmini</i>
	<i>vidēbant</i>		<i>vidēbantur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vidēbō I shall see</i>		<i>vidēbor I shall be seen</i>
§ 171	<i>vidēbis</i>		<i>vidēbere, vidēberis</i>
	<i>vidēbit</i>		<i>vidēbitur</i>
	<i>vidēbimus</i>		<i>vidēbimur</i>
	<i>vidēbitis</i>		<i>vidēbimini</i>
	<i>vidēbunt</i>		<i>vidēbuntur</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>vidī I saw, have seen</i>		<i>vīsus<sup>1</sup> sum I was seen or</i>
§ 171	<i>vīdistī</i>		<i>vīsus es seemed</i>
	<i>vīdit</i>		<i>vīsus est</i>
	<i>vidimus</i>		<i>vīsi sumus</i>
	<i>vīdistis<sup>2</sup></i>		<i>vīsi estis<sup>2</sup></i>
	<i>vidērunt, vidēre</i>		<i>vīsi sunt</i>

<sup>1</sup> Agrees with the subject in gender and number.<sup>2</sup> -istis = estis, cf. § 213, note 2.

Note that *vidēre* has exactly the same endings as *vocāre* and the same tense signs except in the Present Sub. See note, § 187.

193.

English: (to) *see, saw, seen*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	Passive
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>videam I see</i>	<i>videar I be seen</i>
§ 172	<i>videās thou see</i>	<i>videāre, videāris</i>
	<i>videat he see</i> § 139	<i>videātur he be seen</i>
	<i>videāmus</i> § 141	<i>videāmur</i>
	<i>videātis</i>	<i>videāminī</i>
	<i>videant</i>	<i>videantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>vidērem I saw, should</i>	<i>vidērer I were seen, etc.</i>
§ 172	<i>vidērēs see, etc.</i>	<i>vidērēre, vidērēris</i>
	<i>vidēret</i>	<i>vidērētur</i>
	<i>vidērēmus</i>	<i>vidērēmur</i>
	<i>vidērētis</i>	<i>vidērēminī</i>
	<i>vidērent</i>	<i>vidērentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -*bā*- to -*rē*-, -*erā*- to -*issē*-, and *erā*- to *essē*-.

Always change -*bi*- to -*rē*-, -*eri*- to *issē*-, *eri*- to *essē*-, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(2d Conj.) Change -*bi*- to -*ā*-, -*eri*- to -*erī*-, and *eri*- to *sī*-, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>viderim I have seen</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>sim I have been</i>
§ 172	<i>videris</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>sīs seen</i>
	<i>viderit</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>sit</i> § 156 <i>b</i>
	<i>viderimus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
	<i>videritis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>sītis</i>
	<i>viderint</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>sint</i>

## VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-*ē*- becomes short before *another vowel*.

-*ā*- and -*ē*- become *short* before *nt* and *final -m, -t, or -r*.

-*bi*- and -*eri*- become -*b*- and -*er*- before *o*. -*eri*- (see § 170 *i*).

-*bi*- becomes -*be*- before -*r* and -*bu*- before -*nt*. § 170.

## 192. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>videram I had seen</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>eram I had been seen</i>
§ 171	<i>viderās</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erās</i>
	<i>viderat</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>viderāmus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>viderātis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>viderant</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>viderō I shall have</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erō I shall have been</i>
§ 171	<i>videris seen</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>eris seen</i>
	<i>viderit</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>viderimus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>videritis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>viderint</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

## 195. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vidēns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	—	—	—
	<i>videntis</i>	<i>seeing</i>				
<i>Perf.</i>	—			<u><i>vīsus</i></u>	<i>vīsa</i>	<i>vīsum</i>
				<i>(having been) seen</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>visūrus</i>	<i>-ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>	<i>videndus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to see</i>			<i>(deserving) to be seen</i>		

## d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>vīsus sight</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>Mātris videndae facultās</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>vīsuum</i>	<i>opportunity to see mother</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>visuī</i>	<i>visibus</i>	<i>Diēs mātři videndae dicta</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<u><i>vīsum</i></u>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>day set to see mother</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>vīsūs</i>	<i>Miserābile vīsū § 157</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>visū</i>	<i>visibus</i>	<i>pitiāble to look upon</i>

193. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

Active		Passive	
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>vidissem I had seen</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>essem I had been seen</i>
§ 172	<i>vidissēs</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>essēs § 156 c</i>
	<i>vidisset</i>	<i>vīsus</i>	<i>esset</i>
	<i>vidissēmus</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
	<i>vidissētis</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>essētis</i>
	<i>vidissent</i>	<i>vīsī</i>	<i>essent</i>

194.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vidē see thou</i>	<i>vidēre be thou seen</i>
§ 173	<i>vidēte see ye</i>	<i>vidēmini be ye seen</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vidētō thou shalt see</i>	<i>vidētor thou shalt be seen</i>

195. b. GERUND (Noun) § 175 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

Singular		Singular		
<i>N.</i>	<i>vidēre to see, seeing</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i>	<i>videndī of seeing, to see</i>	<i>videndī</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>videndō for) seeing</i>	<i>videndō</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>videndum, vidēre seeing</i>	<i>videndum</i>	<i>-ndam</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>ad videndum to see</i>	—		
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>videndō by seeing, etc.</i>	<i>videndō</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Videndī spatium datur</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>time to see is given</i>	<i>videndōrum</i>	<i>-ndārum</i>	<i>-ndōrum</i>
<i>Hōra</i>	<i>videndō dicta est</i>	<i>videndis</i>	<i>-ndis</i>	<i>-ndis</i>
	<i>the hour is set to see</i>	<i>videndōs</i>	<i>-ndās</i>	<i>-nda, etc.</i>

INFINITIVE (Noun) §§ 177, 127

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vidēre (to) see, be seeing</i>	<i>vidērī (to) be seen or seem</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>vidisse (to) have seen</i>	<i>vīsus esse (to) have been seen</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>vīsūrus esse } be going to</i>	<i>vīsus fore } be going to</i>
§ 215 g	<i>vīsum ire } see</i>	<i>vīsum īrī } be seen</i>

The stem vowel *-ē-* becomes *short* before *-nd* and *-nt*.

196. a. vereor, verērī, —, veritus *reverence, dread*

## INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
<i>Pres.</i>		<u>vereor</u> <i>I am afraid, fear</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		verēbar <i>was afraid, feared</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	§ 171	verēbor <i>I shall fear</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 100-1	veritus sum <i>I (have) feared</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		veritus eram <i>I had feared</i>
<i>Futp.</i>		veritus erō <i>shall have feared</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		verear <i>I fear, may fear, etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 171	verērer <i>feared, might fear</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 156 b, c	veritus sim <i>I (have) feared</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		veritus essem <i>I had feared</i>

## b.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		verēre <i>fear (thou), reverence</i>
	§ 173	verēmini <i>fear (ye), dread</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		verētor <i>thou shalt fear</i>
		verētor <i>he shall fear</i>
		verentor <i>they shall fear</i>

## c.

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Pres.</i>	verēns -ēns -ēns	—
	verentis <i>fearing</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<u>veritus</u> -a -um <i>having feared</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	veritūrus -ūra -ūrum	verendus -nda -ndum
	going to fear	(deserving) to be feared

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

N. *verēri to fear, fearing*

G. *verendi of fearing, to fear*    *verendi    -ndae    -ndi*

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. —

G. —

D. —

Ac. [*veritum*]

Ab. [*veritū*]

Many case forms of  
supines are wanting.

In many verbs, only forms  
in -um or -ū are found.

f.

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

Pres.

*verēri (to) fear, be afraid*

Perf.

*veritus esse (to) have feared*

Fut. *veritūrus esse*

*(to) be going to fear*

### Examples

*Nē eius animum offendat verētur fears he will offend his mind*

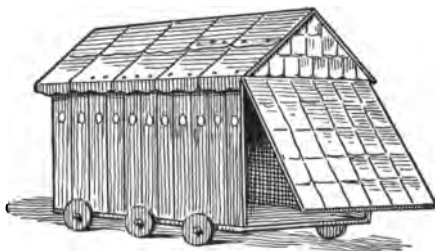
*Nē eum offenderet verēbatur feared that he might offend him*

*Nōne id verēbere? will you not fear that?*

*Veritus est ut mē vidēret he feared that he wouldn't see me*

*Insidiās veritus (because he) feared an ambush*

*Verendum mihi nōn erit I'll not have to fear § 106 d*



Vinea.

## 197. Prin. Parts.: agō, agere, ēgī, āctus

		INDICATIVE	
		Active	Passive
Pres.	agō <i>I drive, am driving</i>	agor <i>I am driven</i>	
§ 171	agis	ageris	
	agit § 136	agitur	
	agimus	agimur	
	agitis	agimini	
	agunt	aguntur	
Imp.	agēbam <i>I was driving</i>	agēbar <i>I was driven</i>	
§ 171	agēbās	agēbāre, agēbāris	
	agēbat	agēbātur	
	agēbāmus	agēbāmur	
	agēbātis	agēbāmini	
	agēbant	agēbantur	
Fut.	agam <i>I shall drive</i>	agar <i>I shall be driven</i>	
§ 171	agēs	agēre, agēris	
	aget	agētur	
	agēmus	agēmur	
	agētis	agēmini	
	agent	agentur	
Perf.	ēgī <i>I drove, I have driven</i>	āctus <sup>1</sup>	sum <i>I have been driven</i>
§ 171	ēgistī	āctus	es
	ēgit <sup>2</sup>	āctus	est <sup>2</sup>
	ēgimus	āctī	sumus
	ēgistis	āctī	estis
	ēgērunt, ēgēre	āctī	sunt

<sup>1</sup> Agrees with the subject in gender and number.    <sup>2</sup> -it and -erit are modified forms of *est* and *sit*; *ēgit* = *is having driven* = *has driven* or *drove*, etc. Cf. §§ 99, 183, note 3.

Note that *agere* has exactly the same tense signs as *vidēre* and *vocāre* except in the Future Ind. Cf. § 192.

198. English : (to) *drive, drove, driven*, or (to) *do, did, done*

		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		Active	Passive
Pres.	agam I drive		agar I be driven
§ 172	agās thou drive		agāre, agāris
	agat he drive	§ 139	agātur he be driven
	agāmus § 141		agāmur
	agātis		agāminī
	agant		agantur
Imp.	agerem I drove		agerer I were driven
§ 172	agerēs		agerēre, agerēris
	ageret		agerētur
	agerēmus		agerēmur
	agerētis		agerēminī
	agerent		agerentur

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- to -rē-, -eri- to -issē-, eri- to essē-, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -ē- to -ā-, -eri- to -erī-, and eri- to sī- if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	ēgerim I have driven	āctus	sim I have been driven
§ 172	ēgeris	āctus	sīs § 156 <i>b</i>
	ēgerit <sup>2</sup>	āctus	sit <sup>2</sup>
	ēgerimus	āctī	sīmus
	ēgeritis	āctī	sītis
	ēgerint	āctī	sint

#### VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-e- disappears before *another vowel*.

-e- becomes -i- before *m, s, or t*; -u- before *nt*.

-e- becomes ē before *b*. -eri- (see § 170 *i*).

-ā- and -ē- become *short* before -nt or *final -m, -t, or -r*.



## 197. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>ēgeram I had driven, had</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>eram I had been driven</i>
§ 171	<i>ēgerās been driving</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>erās</i>
	<i>ēgerat</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>ēgerāmus</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>ēgerātis</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>ēgerant</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>ēgerō I shall have driven</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>erō I shall have been</i>
§ 171	<i>ēgeris</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>eris driven</i>
	<i>ēgerit</i>	<i>actus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>ēgerimus</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>ēgeritis</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>ēgerint</i>	<i>actī</i>	<i>erunt</i>

## 200. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>agēns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	—	—	—
	<i>agentis</i>	<i>driving, doing</i>				
<i>Perf.</i>	—			<i>actus</i>	<i>acta</i>	<i>actum</i>
				<i>(having been) done, driven</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>actūrus</i>	<i>-ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>	<i>agendus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to drive or do</i>			<i>(deserving) to be driven</i>		

## d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plur.	
N.	<i>actus act</i>	<i>actūs acts</i>	<i>Omnia erant agenda</i>
G.	<i>actūs</i>	<i>actuum</i>	<i>everything had to be done</i>
D.	<i>actui</i>	<i>actibus</i>	<i>Tempus rei agendae</i>
Ac.	<i>actum</i>	<i>actūs</i>	<i>time to do the thing</i>
V.	<i>actus</i>	<i>actūs</i>	<i>Bovēs actum it</i>
Ab.	<i>actū</i>	<i>actibus</i>	<i>is going to drive the cows</i>

198. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>ēgissem I had driven</i>	<i>āctus</i>	<i>essem I had been</i>
§ 172	<i>ēgissēs</i>	<i>āctus</i>	<i>essēs driven § 156 c</i>
	<i>ēgisset</i>	<i>āctus</i>	<i>esset</i>
	<i>ēgissēmus</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
	<i>ēgissētis</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>essētis</i>
	<i>ēgissent</i>	<i>āctī</i>	<i>essent</i>

199.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>age drive thou § 214</i>	<i>agere be thou driven</i>
§ 173	<i>agite drive ye</i>	<i>agimini be ye driven</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>agitō thou shalt drive</i>	<i>agitor thou shalt be driven</i>

200. b. GERUND (Noun) § 175 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>agere to drive, driving</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i>	<i>agendī of driving, to drive</i>	<i>agendī</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>agendō (for) driving</i>	<i>agendō</i>	<i>-ndae</i>	<i>-ndō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>agendum, agere driving, etc., ad agendum to drive</i>	<i>agendum</i>	<i>-ndam</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>agendō by driving, etc.</i>	<i>agendō</i>	<i>-ndā</i>	<i>-ndō, etc.</i>
<i>Agere oportet</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
<i>to act is necessary</i>		<i>agendōrum</i>	<i>-ndārum</i>	<i>-ndōrum</i>
<i>Tempus agendī est</i>		<i>agendīs</i>	<i>-ndīs</i>	<i>-ndīs</i>
<i>it is time to act</i>		<i>agendōs</i>	<i>-ndās</i>	<i>-nda</i>

e.

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177 e

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>agere (to) drive, be doing</i>	<i>agī (to) be driven</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ēgisse (to) have driven</i>	<i>āctus esse (to) have been</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>āctūrus esse } be going</i>	<i>āctus fore } be going to</i>
§ 215g	<i>āctum ire } to drive</i>	<i>āctum irī } be driven</i>

-e- becomes long before -ns; disappears before another vowel.

201. a. ūtor, ūtī, —, ūsus *help self (with), use, enjoy*

## INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
Pres.		<u>ūtor</u> <i>I help myself, use 6</i>
Imp.	§ 182 b	ūtēbar <i>I used, was enjoying</i>
Fut.	§ 171	ūtar <i>I shall use or enjoy</i>
Perf.	§ 100-1	ūsus sum <i>I (have) used</i>
Plup.		ūsus eram <i>I had used</i>
Futp.		ūsus erō <i>I shall have used</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		ūtar <i>I use, may or shall use</i>
Imp.	§ 171	ūterer <i>I used, would use</i>
Perf.	§ 156 b, c	ūsus sim <i>I (have) used</i>
Plup.		ūsus essem <i>I had used</i>

b.

## IMPERATIVE

Pres.		ūtere <i>help thyself, use</i>
	§ 173	ūtiminī <i>help yourselves, use</i>
Fut.		ūtitor <i>thou shalt use</i>
		ūtitor <i>he shall use</i>
		ūtuntor <i>they shall use</i>

c.

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	ūtēns, ūtēns, ūtēns	—
	ūtentis <i>using</i>	
Perf.	—	<u>ūsus</u> , ūsa, ūsum <i>having used</i>
Fut.	ūsūrus, ūsūra, ūsūrum	ūtendus, ūtenda, ūtendum
	<i>going to use or enjoy</i>	<i>(deserving) to be used</i>

## The Third Conjugation — Deponents in -or 243

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

Ab. *ūtī to use, using*

G. *ūtendī of using, to use*

*ūtendī, ütendae, ütendī*

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. *ūsus use*      *ūsūs uses*

G. *ūsūs*      *ūsuum*

D. *ūsui*      *ūsibus*

Ac. *ūsūm*      *ūsūs*

Ab. *ūsū*      *ūsibus*

*Quī magnō nobīs ūsui ad*

*bellum gerendum erant*

*which were (for) great use to*

*us for carrying on the war*

*Ex ūsū fuit was of advantage*

f.

INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres.

*ūtī (to) use, using*

Perf.

*ūsus esse (to) have used*

Fut. *ūsūrus esse*

*(to) be going to use*



Kalendārium Rei Rūsticae.

## 202. Prin. Parts : capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

## INDICATIVE

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>capiō</u> <i>I take, am taking</i>	<u>capior</u> <i>I am taken</i>
§ 171	<u>capis</u>	<u>caperis</u>
	<u>capit</u>	<u>capitur</u> § 136
	<u>capimus</u>	<u>capimur</u>
	<u>capitis</u>	<u>capimini</u>
	<u>capiunt</u>	<u>capiuntur</u>
<i>Imp.</i>	<u>capiēbam</u> <i>I was taking</i>	<u>capiēbar</u> <i>I was taken</i>
§ 171	<u>capiēbās</u>	<u>capiēbāre, capiēbāri</u>
	<u>capiēbat</u>	<u>capiēbātur</u>
	<u>capiēbāmus</u>	<u>capiēbāmur</u>
	<u>capiēbātis</u>	<u>capiēbāmini</u>
	<u>capiēbant</u>	<u>capiēbantur</u>
<i>Fut.</i>	<u>capiam</u> <i>I shall take</i>	<u>capiar</u> <i>I shall be taken</i>
§ 171	<u>capies</u>	<u>capiēre, capiēris</u>
	<u>capiet</u>	<u>capiētur</u>
	<u>capiemus</u>	<u>capiēmur</u>
	<u>capietis</u>	<u>capiēmini</u>
	<u>capient</u>	<u>capientur</u>
<i>Perf.</i>	<u>cēpī</u> <i>I took, have taken</i>	<u>captus</u> <sup>1</sup> <u>sum</u> <i>I was taken</i>
§ 171	<u>cēpisti</u>	<u>captus</u> <u>es</u>
	<u>cēpit</u>	<u>captus</u> <u>est</u>
	<u>cēpimus</u>	<u>capti</u> <u>sumus</u>
	<u>cēpistis</u>	<u>capti</u> <u>estis</u>
	<u>cēpērunt</u> , <sup>2</sup> <u>cēpēre</u>	<u>capti</u> <u>sunt</u> <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Agrees with the subject in gender and number.<sup>2</sup> -runt = sunt; cēpērunt = *are having taken* = *have taken*.

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have only twenty-two different endings. See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193.

203. English : (to) *take, took, taken*

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	<i>capiam I take</i>	<i>capiar I be taken</i>
§ 172	<i>capiās thou take</i>	<i>capiāre, capiāris</i>
	<i>capiat he take § 139</i>	<i>capiātur he be taken</i>
	<i>capiāmus § 141</i>	<i>capiāmur</i>
	<i>capiātis</i>	<i>capiāmini</i>
	<i>capiant</i>	<i>capiantur</i>
Imp.	<i>caperem I took</i>	<i>caperer I were taken</i>
§ 172	<i>caperēs</i>	<i>caperēre, caperēris</i>
	<i>caperet</i>	<i>caperētur</i>
	<i>caperēmus</i>	<i>caperēmur</i>
	<i>caperētis</i>	<i>caperēmini</i>
	<i>caperent</i>	<i>caperentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- to -rē-, -erī- to -issē-, erī- to essē-, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -ē- to -ā-, -erī- to -erī-, and erī- to sī-, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	<i>cēperim I have taken</i>	<i>captus sim I have been</i>
§ 172	<i>cēperis</i>	<i>captus sis taken § 156 b</i>
	<i>cēperit</i>	<i>captus sit</i>
	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>capti sīmus</i>
	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>capti sītis</i>
	<i>cēperint</i>	<i>capti sint</i>

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The stem vowel -i- becomes -e- before *r*;

becomes -iu- before *nt* and -iā- before *b*.

-ā- and -ē- become short before *nt* and *final -m, -t, or -r*. § 170

## 202. INDICATIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>cēperam I had taken</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>eram I had been</i>
§ 171	<i>cēperās</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erās taken</i>
	<i>cēperat</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erat</i>
	<i>cēperāmus</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
	<i>cēperātis</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erātis</i>
	<i>cēperant</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erant</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>cēperō I shall have</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erō I shall have</i>
§ 171	<i>cēperis taken</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>eris taken</i>
	<i>cēperit</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erimus</i>
	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>eritis</i>
	<i>cēperint</i>	<i>capti</i>	<i>erunt</i>

## 205. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiēns</i>	<i>-ns</i>	<i>-ns</i>		—	—	—
	<i>capiētis</i>	<i>taking</i>					
<i>Perf.</i>	—				<i>captus, capta, captum</i>		
					<i>(having been) taken</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>captūrus</i>	<i>ūra</i>	<i>-ūrum</i>		<i>capiendus</i>	<i>-nda</i>	<i>-ndum</i>
	<i>going to take</i>				<i>(deserving) to be taken</i>		

## d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	Plur.	
N.	<i>captus</i>	<i>captūs</i>	<i>Arma capiendi facultās</i>
G.	<i>captūs</i>	<i>captuum</i>	<i>opportunity to take arms</i>
D.	<i>captui</i>	<i>captibus</i>	<i>Sui recipiendi facultās</i>
Ac.	<i>captum</i>	<i>captūs</i>	<i>opportunity to take them-</i>
V.	<i>captus</i>	<i>captūs</i>	<i>selves back or withdraw</i>
Ab.	<i>captū</i>	<i>captibus</i>	

203. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Plup.</i> cēpissem <i>I had taken</i>	captus essem <i>I had been</i>
§ 172 cēpissēs	captus essēs <i>taken</i> § 156 c
cēpisset	captus esset
cēpissēmus	capti essēmus
cēpissētis	capti essētis
cēpissent	capti essent

204.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> cape <i>take thou</i>	capere <i>be thou taken</i>
§ 173 capite <i>take ye</i>	capiminī <i>be ye taken</i>
<i>Fut.</i> capitō <i>thou shalt take</i>	capitor <i>thou shalt be taken</i>

205. b. GERUND (Noun) § 157 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>		
<i>N.</i> capere <i>to take; taking</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i> capiendī <i>of taking</i>	capiendī	-ndae	-ndī
<i>D.</i> capiendō <i>(for) taking</i>	capiendō	-ndae	-ndō
<i>Ac.</i> capiendum, capere <i>taking</i> ad capiendum <i>to take</i>	capiendum	-ndam	-ndum
<i>Ab.</i> capiendō <i>by taking, etc.</i>	capiendō	-ndā	-ndō
		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Spatium arma capiendī</i> <i>time to take arms</i>	—	—	—
<i>Tempus ad arma capienda</i>	capiendīs	-ndīs	-ndīs
dēfuit <i>time was lacking</i> —	capiendōs	-ndā	-nda

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

<i>Pres.</i> capere <i>(to) take, be taking</i>	capī <i>(to) be taken</i>	§ 127 -i-
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse <i>(to) have taken</i>	captus esse <i>(to) have been taken</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse } <i>be going</i>	captus fore } <i>be going to</i>	
§ 215 g captum ire } <i>to take</i>	captum irī } <i>be taken</i>	

-i- becomes -i- before ns and -ie before nt in present participles;

-i- becomes -ie (sometimes -iu) before nd.



206. a. gradior, gradi, —, gressus *move self, walk*

## INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
<i>Pres.</i>		<u>gradior</u> <i>I move myself, go</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 182	gradiēbar <i>I was walking</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	§ 171	gradiar <i>I shall walk or go</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 100-1	gressus sum <i>I (have) walked</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		gressus eram <i>had walked</i>
<i>Futp.</i>		gressus erō <i>shall have walked</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		gradiar <i>I walk or shall walk</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 172	graderer <i>walked, should walk</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 156 b, c	gressus sim <i>I (have) walked</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		gressus essem <i>had walked</i>

## b.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		gradere <i>move thyself, walk</i>
	§ 173	gradimini <i>move yourselves, walk</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		graditor <i>thou shalt walk</i>
		graditor <i>he shall walk</i>
		gradiuntor <i>they shall walk</i>

## c.

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Pres.</i>	gradiēns, -ēns, -ēns	——
	gradientis <i>walking</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	——	<u>gressus</u> , -a, -um <i>having walked</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	gressūrus, -a, -um	gradiendus, -a, -um
	<i>going to walk</i>	<i>(deserving) to be walked</i>

## The Third Conjugation -ior Verbs (Deponent) 249

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175	e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104
N. <u>gradī</u> to walk, walking	—
G. <u>gradiendī</u> of walking	<u>gradiendī</u> , -ae, -ī of walking
SUPINE (Noun) § 157	<u>Gradientis</u> saepsit wrapped them as they walked (along)
N. <u>gressus</u> gressūs	<u>Gressū</u> patuit dea the goddess was evident in her gait
G. <u>gressūs</u> gressuum	<u>Eā</u> dirige gressum direct your steps that way § 119 g
D. <u>gressuī</u> gressibus	
Ac. <u>gressum</u> gressūs	
Ab. <u>gressū</u> gressibus	
f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176	
Pres.	<u>gradī</u> (to) walk, walking
Perf.	<u>gressus</u> esse (to) have walked
Fut. <u>gressūrus</u> esse	—
(to) be going to walk	

### Suggestions for Word Study

The root of gradī appears in *grade*, *gradient*,<sup>1</sup> *gradation*, *graduate*, *undergraduate*, *ungraduated*, *graduation*, etc.

Using the prefix *con-*, we have *congressional*, *congressman*.<sup>1</sup>

How many of the prefixes in §§ 219, 2-3 ; 220 are used with this root? Use a dictionary. Cf. also p. 26, line 19, note, and p. 40.

Make a list of words containing this root.

Make lists of words containing other common Latin roots.

Underscore the parts representing the various forms the original roots assume in Latin, thus:

progressive, convention, efficient, convenient

How does a knowledge of the vowel changes in Latin affect your ability to spell English words correctly?

<sup>1</sup> Study the meaning of the English additions to the Latin roots in word-building. Write definitions showing their effect on the meaning of the original roots.

## 207. Prin. Parts : audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

## INDICATIVE

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>audiō</u> <i>I hear</i>	audior <i>I am heard</i>
§ 171	audīs	audīris
	audīt	audītur § 136
	audīmus	audīmur
	audītis	audīmini
	audiunt	audiuntur
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbam <i>I was hearing</i>	audiēbar <i>I was heard</i>
§ 171	audiēbās	audiēbāre, audiēbāris
	audiēbat	audiēbātur
	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
	audiēbātis	audiēbāmini
	audiēbant	audiēbantur
<i>Fut.</i>	audiam <i>I shall hear</i>	audiar <i>I shall be heard</i>
§ 171	audiēs	audiēre, audiēris
	audiet	audiētur
	audiēmus	audiēmur
	audiētis	audiēmini
	audient	audientur
<i>Perf.</i>	<u>audīvī</u> <i>I hear, have heard</i>	audītus <sup>1</sup> sum <i>I was heard</i>
§ 171	audīvistī	audītus es
§ 178	audīvit	audītus est <sup>2</sup>
	audīvimus	audītī sumus
	audīvistis	audītī estis
	audīvērunt, audīvēre	audītī sunt

<sup>1</sup> Agrees with the subject in gender and number.<sup>2</sup> The e- of est is lost in sit; -erit = sit.

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have *only twenty-two* different endings.  
See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193, 197, 198, 202, 203.

208. English: (to) *hear, heard, heard*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>audiam I hear</i>		<i>audiar I be heard</i>
§ 172	<i>audiās</i>		<i>audiāre, audiāris</i>
	<i>audiat he hear § 139</i>		<i>audiātur he be heard</i>
	<i>audiāmus § 141</i>		<i>audiāmur</i>
	<i>audiātis</i>		<i>audiāminī</i>
	<i>audiant</i>		<i>audiantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>audirem I heard</i>		<i>audirer I were heard</i>
§ 172	<i>audirēs</i>		<i>audirēre, audirēris</i>
	<i>audiret</i>		<i>audirētur</i>
	<i>audirēmus</i>		<i>audirēmur</i>
	<i>audirētis</i>		<i>audirēminī</i>
	<i>audirent</i>		<i>audirentur</i>

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change *-bā-* to *-rē-*, *-erā-* to *-issē-*, and *erā-* to *essē-*.

Always change *-ē-* to *-rē-*, *-eri-* to *-issē-*, *eri-* to *essē-*, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change *-ē-* to *-ā-*, *-eri-* to *-erī-*, and *eri-* to *si-* if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>audiverim I have heard</i>	<i>audītus sim I have been heard</i>
§ 172	<i>audiveris</i>	<i>audītus sis § 156 b</i>
§ 178	<i>audiverit<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>audītus sit<sup>2</sup></i>
	<i>audiverimus</i>	<i>audītī simus</i>
	<i>audiveritis</i>	<i>audītī sitis</i>
	<i>audiverint</i>	<i>audītī sint</i>

## VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The stem vowel *-i-* becomes *short* before *another vowel*;

becomes *-iu-* before *nt*, and *-iē-* before *b*.

*-ā-* and *-ē-* becomes *short* before *nt* and *final -m, -t, or -r*. § 170

207. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

	<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	audiveram <i>I had heard</i>	auditus	eram <i>I had been</i>
§ 171	audiverās	auditus	erās <i>heard</i>
§ 178	audiverat	auditus	erat
	audiverāmus	audīti	erāmus
	audiverātis	audīti	erātis
	audiverant	audīti	erant
<i>Futp.</i>	audiverō <i>I shall have</i>	auditus	erō <i>I shall have</i>
§ 171	audiveris <i>heard</i>	auditus	eris <i>been heard</i>
§ 178	audiverit	auditus	erit
	audiverimus	audīti	erimus
	audiveritis	audīti	eritis
	audiverint	audīti	erunt

## 210. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	audiēns	-ns	-ns	—	—	—
	audientis	<i>hearing</i>				
<i>Perf.</i>	—			auditus,	audīta,	audītum
				<i>(having been) heard</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	audītūrus	-ūra	-ūrum	audiendus	-nda	-ndum
	<i>going to hear</i>			<i>(deservin.) to be heard</i>		

## d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	audītus	audītūs	Audiendī causā vēnī
<i>G.</i>	audītūs	audītuum	<i>I came to hear</i>
<i>D.</i>	audītui	audītibus	Eōrum audiendōrum causā or
<i>Ac.</i>	audītum	audītūs	ad eōs audiendōs vēnī <i>I</i>
<i>V.</i>	audītus	audītūs	<i>came to hear them</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	audītū	audītibus	

## 208. • SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Plup.</i> audīvissem <i>I had heard</i>	audītus essem <i>I had been heard</i>
§ 172 audīvisēs	audītus essēs § 156 c
§ 178 audīvisset	audītus esset
audīvissemus	audīti essēmus
audīvissetis	audīti essētis
audīvissent	audīti essent

## 209.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> audī <i>hear thou</i>	audīre <i>be thou heard</i>
§ 173 audīte <i>hear ye</i>	audīmini <i>be ye heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i> audītō <i>thou shalt hear</i>	audītor <i>thou shalt be heard</i>

## 210. b. GERUND (Noun) § 175 c. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>		
<i>N.</i> audīre <i>to hear, hearing</i>	—	—	—
<i>G.</i> audiendī <i>of hearing</i>	audiendī	-ndae	-ndī
<i>D.</i> audiendō <i>(for) hearing</i>	audiendō	-ndae	-ndō
<i>Ac.</i> audiendum, audīre <i>hearing, ad audiendum to hear</i>	audiendum	-ndam	-ndum
<i>Ab.</i> audiendō <i>by hearing, etc.</i>	audiendō	-ndā	-ndō
<i>Multōrum audītū by the hearing of many</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	audiendōrum	-ndārum	-ndōrum
<i>Nihil praeter audītum nothing but hearsay</i>	audiendis	-ndis	-ndis
	audiendōs	-ndās	-nda

## e.

## INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

<i>Pres.</i> audīre <i>hear, be heeding</i>	audīri (to) <i>be heard</i> § 127 -i-
<i>Perf.</i> audīvisse (to) <i>have heard</i>	audītus esse (to) <i>have been heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus esse } <i>be going to hear</i>	audītus fore } <i>be going to be heard</i>
§ 215 g audītum ire }	audītum īri }

-i- becomes -iē- before -ns and -ie- before -nt- in present participles;  
 -i- becomes -ie- (sometimes -iu-) before -nd. § 170

211. a. potior, potiri, —, potitus *make self able, get*

## INDICATIVE

	Active	Deponent
<i>Pres.</i>		<u>potior</u> <i>I get (hold of) 6</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 182	potiēbar <i>was getting, got</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	§ 171	potiar <i>I shall get</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 100-1	potitus sum <i>I (have) got</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		potitus eram <i>had gotten</i>
<i>Futp.</i>		potitus erō <i>shall have got</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		potiar <i>I get or may get</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	§ 172	potirer <i>got, might get</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	§ 156 b, c	potitus sim <i>I (have) got</i>
<i>Plup.</i>		potitus essem <i>had gotten</i>

b.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>		potire <i>get thou</i>
	§ 173	potimini <i>get ye</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		potitor <i>thou shalt get</i>
		potitor <i>he shall get</i>
		potiuntor <i>they shall get</i>

c.

## PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

<i>Pres.</i>	potiēns, -ēns, -ēns	—
	potientis <i>getting</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<u>potitus</u> , -a, -um <i>having got</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	potitūrus, -a, -um	potiendus, -a, -um
	<i>going to get</i>	<i>(deserving) to be got</i>

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175

N. *potiri* to get, getting

G. *potiendi* of getting

SUPINE (Noun) § 157

N. —

G. —

D. —

Ac. potitum

Ab. *potitū*

e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104

—

*potiendi*, -ae -ī of getting

Many case forms of supines are wanting. In many verbs, only forms in -um or -ū are found.

f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176

Pres.

potiri (to) get, getting

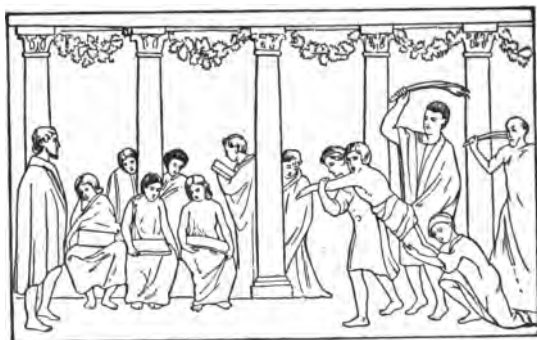
Perf.

*potitus esse* (to) have got

Fut. *potitūrus esse*

—

(to) be going to get



Lūdus Litterārius — The Game of Letters (School).



## 212. INDICATIVE

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>ferō</u> <i>I bear</i>	<i>feror</i> <i>am borne</i>	<u>eō</u> <i>I go</i>	<u>fiō</u> <i>am made</i>
§ 171	<u>fers</u>	<u>ferris</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>fis</u>
	<u>fert</u> § 170, 1	<u>fertur</u>	<u>it</u> § 137	<u>fit</u>
	<u>ferimus</u>	<u>ferimur</u>	<u>imus</u>	<u>finus</u>
	<u>fertis</u>	<u>feriminī</u>	<u>itis</u>	<u>fitis</u>
	<u>ferunt</u>	<u>feruntur</u>	<u>eunt</u>	<u>fiunt</u>
<i>Imp.</i>	<u>ferēbam</u>	<u>ferēbar</u>	<u>ībam</u>	<u>fiēbam</u>
§ 171	<u>ferēbās</u>	<u>ferēbāre -ris</u>	<u>ībās</u>	<u>fiēbās</u>
	<u>ferēbat</u>	<u>ferēbātur</u>	<u>ibat</u>	<u>fiēbat</u>
	<u>ferēbāmus</u>	<u>ferēbāmur</u>	<u>ibāmus</u>	<u>fiēbāmus</u>
	<u>ferēbātis</u>	<u>ferēbāminī</u>	<u>ibātis</u>	<u>fiēbātis</u>
	<u>ferēbant</u>	<u>ferēbantur</u>	<u>ibant</u>	<u>fiēbant</u>
<i>Fut.</i>	<u>feram</u>	<u>ferar</u>	<u>ibō</u>	<u>fiam</u>
§ 171	<u>ferēs</u>	<u>ferēre -ris</u>	<u>ibis</u>	<u>fiēs</u>
	<u>feret</u>	<u>ferētur</u>	<u>ibit</u>	<u>fiet</u>
	<u>ferēmus</u>	<u>ferēmur</u>	<u>ibimus</u>	<u>fiēmus</u>
	<u>ferētis</u>	<u>ferēminī</u>	<u>ibitis</u>	<u>fiētis</u>
	<u>ferent</u>	<u>ferentur</u>	<u>ibunt</u>	<u>fient</u>
<i>Perf.</i>	<u>tulī</u> <i>I bore</i>	<u>lātus</u> <i>sum</i>	<u>ivī</u> <i>I went</i>	<u>factus</u> <i>sum</i>
§ 171	<u>tulistī</u>	<u>lātus</u> <i>es</i>	<u>ivistī</u>	<u>factus</u> <i>es</i>
§ 178	<u>tulit</u>	<u>lātus</u> <i>est</i>	<u>ivit</u>	<u>factus</u> <i>est</i>
	<u>tulimus</u>	<u>lātī</u> <i>sumus</i>	<u>ivimus</u>	<u>factī</u> <i>sumus</i>
	<u>tulistis</u>	<u>lātī</u> <i>estis</i>	<u>ivistis</u>	<u>factī</u> <i>estis</i>
	<u>tulērunt</u> <i>or</i>	<u>lātī</u> <i>sunt</i>	<u>ivērunt</u> <sup>1</sup> <i>or</i>	<u>factī</u> <i>sunt</i>
	<u>tulēre</u>		<u>ivēre</u>	

<sup>1</sup> *ivērunt* or *ivēre*, *iērunt* or *iēre*; -v- is usually dropped in forms of *ire* and its compounds.

Ind. and Sub. forms have only *twenty-two* different endings.

## 213. SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>		
<i>Prcs.</i> feram <i>I bear</i>	ferar <i>be borne</i>	eam <i>I go</i>	fiam <i>be made</i>
§ 172 ferās	ferāre -ris	eās <sup>2</sup>	fiās <sup>3</sup>
ferat	ferātur	eāt § 140	fiat
ferāmus	ferāmur	eāmus	fiāmus
ferātis	ferāmini	eātis	fiātis
ferant	ferantur	eant	fiant
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem <sup>1</sup>	ferrer <sup>4</sup>	irem	fierem
§ 172 ferrēs	ferrēre -ris	irēs	fierēs
ferret	ferrētur	iret	fieret
ferrēmus	ferrēmur	irēmus	fierēmu :
ferrētis	ferrēmini	irētis	fierētis
ferrent	ferrentur	irent	fierent

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b, c*), always change -*bā*- to -*rē*-, -*erā*- to -*issē*-, and *erā*- to *essē*-.

Always change -*ē*- or -*bi*- to -*rē*-, -*eri*- to -*issē*-, *eri*- to *essē*-, if the writer's standpoint is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -*ē*- or -*bi*- to -*ā*-, -*eri*- to -*erī*- and -*eri*- to *sī*-, if the writer's standpoint is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

<i>Perf.</i> tulerim	lātus sim	īverim	factus sim
§ 172 tuleris	lātus sis	īveris	factus sis
§ 178 tulerit	lātus sit	īverit	factus sit
tulerimus	lāti sīmus	īverimus	facti sīmus
tuleritis	lāti sītis	īveritis	facti sītis
tulerint	lāti sint	īverint	facti sint

## PECULIARITIES OF VOWELS IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

<sup>1</sup> See § 170 note. <sup>2</sup> -*i*- becomes -*i*- before another vowel (cf. § 170 -*i*-) but *i*- becomes *e*- at the beginning of a word or before a vowel (except *e*).

<sup>3</sup> Note the -*i*- before another vowel in *fiā*. <sup>4</sup> See § 170 note.

212. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

<i>Plup.</i> tuleram	lātus	eram	iveram	factus	eram
§ 171 tulerās	lātus	erās	iverās	factus	erās
§ 178 tulerat	lātus	erat	iverat	factus	erat
tulerāmus	lāti	erāmus	iverāmus	facti	erāmus
tulerātis	lāti	erātis	iverātis	facti	erātis
tulerant	lāti	erant	iverant	facti	erant
<i>Futp.</i> tulerō	lātus	erō	iverō	factus	erō
§ 171 tuleris	lātus	eris	iveris	factus	eris
§ 178 tulerit	lātus	erit	iverit	factus	erit
tulerimus	lāti	erimus	iverimus	facti	erimus
tuleritis	lāti	eritis	iveritis	facti	eritis
tulerint	lāti	erunt	iverint	facti	erunt

## 215. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> ferēns § 97	—		iēns § 97	—	—
ferentis			euntis		
<i>Perf.</i> —		lātus § 98	—	itum § 98	factus
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus		ferendus	itūrus	eundum § 104	-i-

## b. GERUND (Noun) § 175

## c. GERUNDIVE (Adj.) § 158

<i>N.</i> ferre	ire			
ferendī	eundī	-eundī	-eundae	-eundi

## d. SUPINE (Noun) § 157

<i>N.</i> —	-itus	Mihi eundum est <i>I must go</i>
<i>G.</i> —	-itūs	Dē flūmine trānseundō spēs
<i>D.</i> —	-ituī	<i>hope of crossing the river</i>
<i>Ac.</i> lātum	-itum	Difficili trānsitū flūmen
<i>Ab.</i> lātū	-itū	<i>a river of difficult passage</i>

213. SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

	Active		Passive	
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem	lātus	essem	ivissem	factus essem
§ 172 tulissēs	lātus	essēs	ivissēs	factus essēs
§ 178 tulisset	lātus	esset	ivisset	factus esset
tulissēmus	lāti	essēmus	ivissēmus	factī essēmus
tulissētis	lāti	essētis	ivissētis	factī essētis
tulissent	lāti	essent	ivissent	factī essent

214.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> fer <sup>1</sup> bring	ferre <sup>1</sup>	i go (thou)	fi become
ferte	ferimini	ite	fite
<i>Fut.</i> fertō	fertor	itō	
§ 173 fertō	fertor	itō	
fertōte	—	itōte.	
feruntō	feruntor	euntō <sup>2</sup>	

215. e.

INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
<i>Pres.</i> ferre bear	ferri	—	feri	feri be done
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse	lātus esse	—	factus esse	
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus esse	lātus fore	—	factus fore	
latum ire	lātum iri		factum iri	

f.

<i>f.</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<u>ire</u> go, be going	<u>iri</u> traveling be done
<i>Perf.</i>	<u>iisse</u> (to) have been going	<u>itum esse</u> " have been done
<i>Fut.</i>	<u>itūrus esse</u> be going to go	<u>itum iri</u> be going to be traveled

g. Occasionally used instead of the future.

(ii) Sē perditum eunt they are going to ruin themselves.

Videō sē perditum ire

Videō eōs perditum iri

I see they are going to destroy themselves

I see that they are going to be destroyed

<sup>1</sup> See § 170. <sup>2</sup> See Note 2, § 213.

**216. a. Forms<sup>1</sup> made on the Present Stem (§ 163 a).**

**-a-** before final **-m** or **-r** may be the *sign* either of the *Present Subjunctive* or *Future Indicative* :

**legam, loquar, fiam, ferar, patiar, audiam**

**-ā-** or **-a-** (when shortened before **-t**, **-nt**, or **-ntur**)

**First Conjugation<sup>2</sup> — Stem Vowel — Present Indicative**

**vocās, cōnāris** (cōnāre § 191 b) ; **rogat, nūntiātur** ;  
**stāmus, vagāmur** ; **amātis, laudāmini** ; **dant,<sup>3</sup> iuvantur**

**Second Conjugation — Sign of the Present Subjunctive**

**iubeās, videāre, teneāris** ; **liceat, polliceātur** ;  
**audeāmus, iubeāmur** ; **habeātis, doceāmini** ; **audeant**

**Third and Fourth Conjugations — Sign of the Present Subjunctive** (and *First Person sing.* of the *Future Indicative*)

**capiās, patiāre, congrediāris** ; **legat, loquātur** ;  
**audiāmus, mittāmur** ; **ūtāmini, agātis** ; **fiant,<sup>4</sup> ferantur**

**b. In forms made on the Present Stem (§ 163 a).**

**-e-** before final **-m** or **-r** is always *Present Subjunctive*.

**-ē-** or **-e-** (when shortened before **-t**, **-nt**, or **-ntur**)

**First Conjugation — Sign of the Present Subjunctive**

**vocēs, cōnēre** (cōnēris) ; **roget, nūntiētur** ;  
**stēmus, vagēmur** ; **amētis, laudēmini** ; **dent,<sup>3</sup> iuventur**

<sup>1</sup> Not containing the sign **-bā-**, **-rē-**, or **-bi-**.    <sup>2</sup> The Prin. Parts must be learned.    <sup>3</sup> *Dare* resembles the first.    <sup>4</sup> *Fieri* follows the third conjugation.

Second Conjugation — *Stem Vowel* — *Present Indicative*

iubēs, tenēris, (iubēre §§ 127, 194); licet, pollicētur;  
audēmus, verēmur; habētis, vidēmini; tenent, con-  
tinentur

Third and Fourth Conjugations — *Sign of the Future Ind.*

fiēs, interficiēre, sequēre; capiet, accipiētur;  
audiēmus, potiēmur; sciētis, patiēmini; fient, ferentur

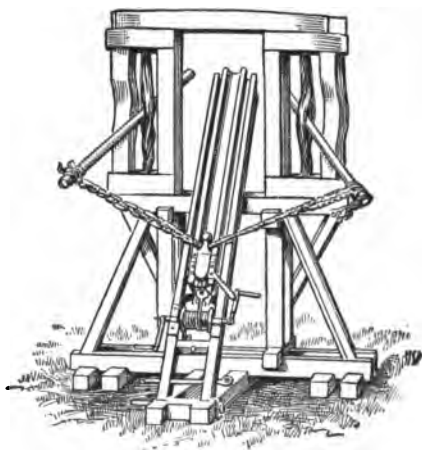
But in the third conjugation

-e-ris is Pres. Ind. loqueris, mitteris, caperis

-ē-ris is Fut. Ind. loquēris, mittēris, capiēris

c. Give Mode and Tense and translate.

audēre vocēre vidēre loquēre dētur tenētur ferētur  
nūntiāre largiāre patiēre cōnāmur cōgāmur laudāmur  
dicātur mandātur nūntient mūnient dicent



Ballista.

**217. a.** In forms made on the Perfect Stem (§ 163 b).

Any verb having the ending **-istī**, **-istis**, or **-ērunt** is instantly known to be a *perfect indicative active* form and the perfect stem may be learned from it.

**b.** Read and translate the following paragraphs and write out the principal parts of the verbs from your observations.

Gallī rebellīōnem facere volunt. Hōc cōnātū nōn dē-sistunt. Concilium convocant. Ducēs inter sē cōnsulunt. Iam bellum gerere cōstituunt, cum ūnus ē ducibus surgit; surrēctus ita loquitur:

“Iam diū, frātrēs, bellandī cupidī estis. Saepe concilium convocāvistis. Conciliō convocātō, mē cōnsuluistis. Per-saepe apud vōs surrēxī neque vōbīs ita dicere dēstitī: Rōmānōs potentīs, Gallōs fortīs esse infirmōs; hōs saepe contrā illōs coniūrāvisse; bella multa gesta esse; tum dēmum Gallōs semper victōs, arma eōrum Rōmānīs trādita esse. His dē causīs, ut saepe iam dixī, suādēō, nē bellum cum eis, quī tanta tamque multa iam bella tam bonā gessērunt fortūnā atque adhūc semper vicērunt, gerātis atque pācem servētis.”

**c.**

#### Contracted Forms

**-v-** is often dropped in the combinations **-īvī-**, **-īvi-**, **-īve-**. audīvī, petīvimus, cupīvit, audīverat, cupīvisset become audiī, petīimus, cupīit, audierat, cupīisset, cupīisset

**-ve-**, **-vē-**, and **-vi-** (not before **-t** or **-mus**) are often dropped.

**cōnsulunt** ask advice of, consult 4

**surgit** rises

**cōstituunt** are deciding      **gerere** wage

**trādita** delivered

**servētis** keep, observe      **infirmōs** unsteady

**vincere** win, defeat

d. Write out the full form of each of the following :

iērunt	vocāstis	iūrāsse	trānsissent
ierant	mandārunt	collocāsse	cōnsuērint
isse	rogāstī	servāssett	cōnsuērat
exisset	cupistī	putārō	pugnārant
petiisse	putāstī	rōgārunt	cōnsuēsse
petisse	convocārim	nūntiārit	superārint

218. a. The meaning of ancient root words is usually broader than that of modern ones. They set forth the actual facts in more primitive and simple fashion, whereas our words have become more mechanical means of conveying ideas and farther removed from the plain facts they represent. Scarcity of words formerly made it necessary to apply each one to a wide range of things.

	<b>Librōs</b>	<b>ē-ligit, (he) is selecting books.</b>
	books	out-picks
	<b>Litterās</b>	<b>legit, (he) is reading a message.</b>
	letters	picks
	<b>Fructūs</b>	<b>legit, (he) is gathering fruit.</b>
	fruits	picks
<b>Avis</b>	<b>aequor</b>	<b>legit, the bird skims the level-sea.</b>
bird	the even	picks
<b>Nāvis</b>	<b>lītus</b>	<b>legit, the ship skirts the shore.</b>
boat	shore	picks
<b>Nauta</b>	<b>lītus</b>	<b>legit, the sailor scans the shore.</b>
sailor	shore	picks

b. The original meaning of the root **leg-** is easily seen in its descendants, *legible* (writing) and *eligible* (persons).

c. The underlying idea conveyed by **leg-** is something like



*pass-along-seeing-gathering or following,*

according as it refers to the passing along of the eye and finger of a reader, the eye and hand of a picker, the eye and body of a bird, or the hull of a ship. And the sameness of the actions becomes still more apparent as we consider the spread-out surface of the ancient roll or book, the extended row of rolls to select from, the ground traversed in picking wild berries, the level expanse of the sea and the extent of shallows, beach, and coast land.

d. We must not think of the abundant fruit of cultivated trees or of glancing easily over printed pages, with separated words, for when *leg-* was first used, picking meant searching and reading once meant painfully gathering ideas from rudely carved lines of words all run together as one. And the few words of primitive peoples were made to perform many services, whereas we have borrowed words from all our neighbors in our desire to have one word for each thing.

219. The prefixing of prepositions and other particles has made vowel changes in many common root words.

1. *ae* sometimes becomes *i*; *au* sometimes becomes *ū*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<i>aestimāre</i> rate	<i>esteem</i>	<i>ex-istimāre</i> think out	<i>estimate</i>
<i>quaerere</i> seek	<i>query</i>	<i>ex-quirere</i> seek out	<i>exquisite</i>
<i>caedere</i> hew, cut	<i>chisel</i>	<i>oc-cidere</i> cut on front, kill	<i>suicide</i>
<i>prae</i> ahead of	<i>pre-</i>	<i>pri-mus</i> foremost, first	<i>primary</i>
<i>claudere</i> shut	<i>clause</i>	<i>ex-clūdere</i> shut out or off	<i>exclude</i>
<i>clausi</i> I closed	<i>enclose</i>	<i>ex-clūsi</i> I shut out or off	<i>exclusive</i>
<i>causa</i> reason	<i>causal</i>	<i>re-cūsāre</i> give back reasons (why not)	

2. Short **a** becomes **e**, especially before **r** or *two consonants*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<b>dare</b> put, give	<b>date</b>	<b>ab-dere</b> put away, conceal	<b>render</b>
<b>dedi</b> I gave, sent		<b>ab-didi</b> I concealed	
		<b>circum-dare</b> surround	
<b>crē-</b> faith, trust	<b>creed</b>	<b>crē-dere</b> put faith in	<b>credible</b>
<b>scandere</b> climb	<b>scan</b>	<b>a-scendere</b> climb up	<b>ascension</b>
<b>gradi</b> walk, go	<b>gradual</b>	<b>ag-gredi</b> go at, attack	<b>aggressive</b>
<b>pati</b> suffer	<b>patient</b>	<b>per-pēti</b> endure through	<b>perpetual</b>

3. Short **a** and **e** become **i** before single consonants, except **r**.

<b>habēre</b> hold, keep	<b>habit</b>	<b>pro-hibēre</b> keep forth, off	<b>prohibit</b>
<b>tenēre</b> hold	<b>tenant</b>	<b>con-tinēre</b> keep together	<b>contain</b>
<b>facere</b> (i) make, do	<b>fact</b>	<b>cōn-ficere</b> (i) do up, finish	<b>confection</b>
<b>tangere</b> touch	<b>tangent</b>	<b>at-tingere</b> touch upon	<b>contingent</b>
<b>frangere</b> break	<b>fragile</b>	<b>in-fringere</b> break into	<b>infringe</b>

4. In words *beginning with a vowel* or **h** contractions often occur.

<b>emere</b> take, buy	<b>redeem</b>	<b>sūmere</b> (sub-emere) take up	<b>resume</b>
<b>agere</b> drive, do	<b>agent</b>	<b>cōgere</b> (co-agere) collect, force	<b>cogent</b>
<b>habēre</b> have	<b>inhabit</b>	<b>dēbēre</b> (dē-habēre) have from, owe	<b>debt</b>

**220.** The consonants in prepositions vary greatly when used in compounds according to the first letter of the root word.

1. **ab** (**ā-**, **ab-**, **abs-**, **au-**) *from, away, aside, off*.

<b>vertere</b> turn	<b>vertex</b>	<b>ā-vertere</b> turn aside	<b>avert, averse</b>
<b>iacere</b> (i) throw	<b>jet</b>	<b>ab-icere</b> (i) cast away	<b>object</b>
<b>tenēre</b> hold, keep	<b>tenure</b>	<b>abs-tinēre</b> keep from	<b>abstinence</b>
<b>ferre</b> bear	<b>fertile</b>	<b>au-ferre</b> carry off; <b>ablātus</b>	<b>ablative</b>
<b>tuli</b> I bore		<b>abs-tuli</b> I took away	

2. *ad* (*a-*, *ac-*, *ad-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *am-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*)  
*to, for, up to, up on, toward, near, by, etc.*

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<b>scandere</b> <i>climb</i>	<b>scansion</b>	<b>a-scendere</b> <i>climb up</i>	<b>ascend, ascent</b>
<b>cēdere</b> <i>yield, go</i>	<b>cede</b>	<b>ac-cēdere</b> <i>go to</i>	<b>accede, access</b>
<b>dare</b> <i>put, give</i>	<b>dative</b>	<b>ad-dere</b> <i>put beside</i>	<b>add, addenda</b>
<b>facere</b> (i) <i>do, act</i>	<b>fact</b>	<b>af-ficere</b> <sup>1</sup> (i) <i>act toward</i>	<b>affect</b>
<b>agere</b> <i>drive</i>	<b>agent</b>	<b>ad-igere</b> <i>drive to</i>	<b>exigent</b>
<b>gradī</b> <i>walk, go</i>	<b>gradual</b>	<b>ag-gredi</b> <sup>2</sup> <i>go at, attack</i>	<b>aggressor</b>
<b>ferre</b> <i>bring</i>	<b>refer</b>	<b>ad-ferre</b> <i>bring up (to)</i>	<b>afferent</b>
<b>lātus</b> <i>brought</i>	<b>ablative</b>	<b>al-lātus</b> <sup>2</sup> <i>brought up to</i>	<b>relate</b>
<b>nūntiāre</b> <i>bring word</i>		<b>an-nūntiāre</b> <sup>2</sup> <i>bring word</i>	<b>announce</b>
<b>petere</b> <i>seek</i>	<b>petition</b>	<b>ap-petere</b> <i>seek for</i>	<b>appetite</b>
<b>sistere</b> <i>stand</i>	<b>insist</b>	<b>as-sistere</b> <i>stand by</i>	<b>assist</b>
<b>tribuere</b> <i>give</i>	<b>tribute</b>	<b>at-tribuere</b> <i>give to</i>	<b>attribute</b>
<b>rapere</b> (i) <i>snatch</i>	<b>rapid</b>	<b>ar-ripere</b> (i) <i>seize upon</i>	<b>rapture</b>

3. *ante* ahead of, before;      *circum-*, *circu-* around, about.

<i>cēdere</i> come, go	<i>cession</i>	<i>ante-cēdere</i> go ahead of	<i>antecedent</i>
<i>dare</i> put, give	<i>data</i>	<i>circum-dare</i> put around	<i>circus</i>
<i>īre</i> travel	<i>itinerant</i>	<i>circu-īre</i> go around	<i>circuit</i>

4. *cum* (*co-*, *col-*, *com-*, *comb-*, *con-*, *cor-*) together, up,  
*fully or thoroughly.*

<i>emere</i> take, buy	<i>redeem</i>	<i>co-emere</i> buy up	<i>sample, exempt</i>
<i>nōscere</i> begin to know		<i>co-gnōscere</i> learn fully	<i>cognizant</i>
<i>loquī</i> speak	<i>loquacious</i>	<i>col-loquī</i> speak with	<i>colloquial</i>
<i>parāre</i> get	<i>prepare</i>	<i>com-parāre</i> get together	<i>compare</i>
<i>ūrere</i> burn		<i>comb-ūrere</i> burn up	<i>combustion</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) make	<i>fact</i>	<i>cōn-ficere</i> (i) do up	<i>confection</i>
<i>rumpere</i> break	<i>rupture</i>	<i>cor-rumpere</i> break up	<i>corrupt</i>

<sup>1</sup> Often printed *ad-ficere*, but pronounced *af-ficere*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. note 1.

5. *dē-* down, from; *dis-* (*dī-*, *dif-*, *dir-*) from, apart, off.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<b>capere</b> (i) <i>take</i>	<b>capture</b>	<b>dē-cipere</b> (i) <i>take down</i>	<b>deceive</b>
<b>facere</b> (i) <i>make</i>	<b>factor</b>	<b>dē-ficere</b> (i) <i>fail</i>	<b>deficient</b>
<b>dare</b> <i>put, give</i>	<b>data</b>	<b>dē-dere</b> <i>lay down, give up</i>	§ 219, 2
<b>specere</b> (i) <i>look</i>	<b>spy</b>	<b>dē-spicere</b> (i) <i>look down</i>	<b>despicable</b>
<b>medius</b> <i>middle</i>	<b>mid-</b>	<b>dī-midium</b> <i>from-the-middle</i>	<b>demi-</b>
<b>ferre</b> <i>bear, carry</i>	<b>bear</b>	<b>dif-ferre</b> <i>bear apart</i>	<b>different</b>
<b>emere</b> <i>take</i>	<b>example</b>	<b>dir-imere</b> <i>break up or apart</i>	§ 219, 3
<b>pōnere</b> <i>set</i>	<b>position</b>	<b>dis-pōnere</b> <i>put at intervals</i>	<b>dispose</b>

6. *ex* (*ē-*, *ef-*, *ex-*) out, out of, forth, up out.

<i>dare</i> put, give		<i>ē-dere</i> put forth, raise out	<i>edit</i>
<i>nūntiāre</i> report	<i>nuncio</i>	<i>ē-nūntiāre</i> tell out	-nounce
<i>facere</i> (i) make	<i>fact</i>	<i>ef-ficere</i> (i) make out	§ 219, 3
<i>ferre</i> bear	<i>transfer</i>	<i>ef-ferre</i> carry away; ( <i>ē-lātus</i> )	<i>elate</i>
<i>pedēs</i> feet	<i>pedestrian</i>	<i>ex-pedire</i> free (the feet)	<i>expedient</i>
<i>sequi</i> follow	<i>sequence</i>	<i>ex-sequi</i> follow out	<i>execute</i>

7. *in* (*il-*, *im-*, *ind-*, *ir-*) in, on, into, upon, at; *in-*, *un-*.

<i>lātus</i> brought	<i>relate</i>	<i>il-lātus</i> brought upon	<i>illative</i>
<i>pedēs</i> feet	<i>pedal</i>	<i>im-pedire</i> entangle (feet)	<i>impede</i>
<i>pendēre</i> hang	<i>pending</i>	<i>im-pendēre</i> hang over	<i>impend</i>
<i>ex-uere</i> put off		<i>ind-uere</i> put on, clothe	<i>indue</i>
<i>ridēre</i> laugh	<i>ridicule</i>	<i>ir-ridēre</i> laugh at	<i>deride</i>
<i>opināns</i> thinking	<i>opinion</i>	<i>in-opināns</i> unthinking	

8. *inter-*, *intel-* between, at intervals; *intrō-* into, in.

<i>legere</i> gather	<i>legend</i>	<i>intel-legere</i> be aware	<i>intellect</i>
<i>cēdere</i> yield, come	<i>cede</i>	<i>inter-cēdere</i> come between	<i>intercede</i>
<i>facere</i> (i) make	§ 219, 3	<i>inter-ficere</i> (i) do to pieces, kill	
<i>mittere</i> let go	<i>mission</i>	<i>inter-mittere</i> let go at intervals	
<i>dūcere</i> draw, lead	<i>duke</i>	<i>intrō-dūcere</i> take into	<i>introduce</i>

9. **nec-** *not*; **ob** (**o-**, **ob-**, **obs-**, **oc-**, **of-**, **op-**) *in face of, against*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.		COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<b>ōtium</b> <i>leisure, ease</i>		<b>neg-ōtium</b> <i>not ease, work</i>	<b>negotiate</b>
<b>legere</b> <i>gather, pick</i>		<b>neg-legere</b> <i>not gather</i>	<b>negligent</b>
<b>lēgi</b> <i>I gathered</i>		<b>neg-lēxi</b> <i>I overlooked</i>	
<b>mittere</b> <i>let go</i>	<b>missile</b>	<b>o-mittere</b> <i>let go by</i>	<b>omit</b>
<b>tenēre</b> <i>hold, gain</i>	<b>tenet</b>	<b>ob-tinēre</b> <i>hold against odds</i>	§ 219, 3
<b>tendere</b> <i>stretch</i>	<b>tend</b>	<b>os-tendere</b> <i>show</i>	<b>ostensibly</b>
<b>tetendi</b> <i>I stretched</i>	4	<b>os-tendi</b> <i>I showed</i>	
<b>currere</b> <i>run</i>	<b>current</b>	<b>oc-currere</b> <i>run in the face of</i>	<b>occur</b>
<b>ferre</b> <i>bring</i>	4 <b>transfer</b>	<b>of-ferre</b> <i>bring before</i>	3 p 4 t <b>offer</b>
<b>tuli</b> <i>I brought</i>		<b>ob-tuli</b> <i>I brought before</i>	
<b>lātus</b> <i>brought</i>		<b>ob-lātus</b> <i>being offered</i>	<b>oblation</b>
<b>pōnere</b> <i>place, set</i>	<b>pose</b>	<b>op-pōnere</b> <i>put in way</i>	<b>opponent</b>

10. **per-**, **pel-** *through, over, to pieces, to destruction, very*.

<b>facere</b> (i) <i>do</i>	<b>factor</b>	<b>per-ficere</b> (i) <i>do through</i>	<b>perfect</b>
<b>īre</b> <i>go, travel</i>		<b>per-īre</b> <i>go to destruction</i>	<b>perish</b>
<b>tenēre</b> <i>hold</i>	<b>tenant</b>	<b>per-tinēre</b> <i>hold through</i>	<b>pertain</b>
<b>pauci</b> <i>few</i>	§ 64 <b>paucity</b>	<b>per-pauci</b> <i>very few (all told)</i>	§ 64

11. **prae-** *ahead of, before*; **praeter-** *beyond, past, by*.

<b>cēdere</b> <i>yield, go</i>	<b>cede</b>	<b>prae-cēdere</b> <i>go ahead of</i>	<b>precede</b>
<b>habēre</b> <i>hold, keep</i>	<b>have</b>	<b>prae-bēre</b> <i>hold before, furnish</i>	§ 219, 4
<b>facere</b> (i) <i>make, put</i>		<b>prae-ficere</b> (i) <i>put at head</i>	<b>prefect</b>
<b>īre</b> <i>go, travel</i>	<b>initial</b>	<b>praeter-īre</b> <i>go by, pass</i>	<b>preterit</b>

12. **prō-** (**pol-**, **por-**, **pro-**, **prō-**, **prōd-**) *forth, on, beforehand*.

<b>licēri</b> <i>bid, offer</i>		<b>pol-licēri</b> <i>offer beforehand, promise</i>	
<b>regere</b> <i>go straight</i>	<b>Rex</b>	<b>por-rigere</b> <i>go straight on, extend</i>	
<b>fugere</b> (i) <i>flee</i>	<b>fugitive</b>	<b>pro-fugere</b> (i) <i>flee forth</i>	
<b>gradī</b> (i) <i>go, walk</i>	<b>grade</b>	<b>prō-gredī</b> (i) <i>go on</i>	§ 219, 2 <b>progress</b>
<b>īre</b> <i>go, travel</i>	<b>exit</b>	<b>prōd-īre</b> <i>go forth</i>	

13. **sē-, sēd-** *apart, away, aside*; **re-, red-** *again, back*.

SIMPLE VERBS, ETC.	COMPOUNDS	RELATED WORDS
<b>cernere</b> <i>see</i> <b>d'scern</b>	<b>sē-cernere</b> <i>separate</i>	
<b>crētus</b> <i>seen, taken</i>	<b>sē-crētus</b> <i>taken aside</i>	<b>secret</b>
<b>parāre</b> <i>get, put</i> <b>prepare</b>	<b>sē-parāre</b> <i>set apart</i>	<b>separate</b>
<b>red-itiō</b> <i>a going back</i>	<b>sēd-itiō</b> <i>going apart</i>	<b>sedition</b>
<b>cēdere</b> <i>move</i> <b>cede</b>	<b>sē-cēdere</b> <i>go apart</i>	<b>secede</b>
<b>cessī</b> <i>I gave way</i> <b>cession</b>	<b>sē-cessī</b> <i>I withdrew</i>	<b>secession</b>
<b>cūra</b> <i>care</i> <b>curator</b>	<b>sē-cūrus</b> <i>having no care of</i>	<b>secure</b>

14. **sub** (**sub-, suc-, suf-, sug-, sum-, sup-, sū-, sus-**) *under, up; as support or help*.

<b>īre</b> <i>go, travel</i> <b>it'nerant</b>	<b>sub-īre</b> <i>undergo</i>	
<b>sequī</b> <i>follow</i> <b>sequence</b>	<b>sub-sequī</b> <i>follow up</i>	<b>subsequent</b>
<b>cēdere</b> <i>go, move</i> <b>recede</b>	<b>suc-cēdere</b> <i>come up or after</i>	<b>succeed</b>
<b>ferre</b> <i>bear</i> <b>offer</b>	<b>suf-ferre</b> <i>bear up under</i>	<b>suffer</b>
<b>gerere</b> <i>make</i> <b>belligerent</b>	<b>sug-gerere</b> <i>build up</i>	<b>suggest</b>
<b>gessi</b> <i>I made</i>	<b>sug-gessi</b> <i>I built up</i>	
<b>mittere</b> <i>let go</i> <b>remit</b>	<b>sum-mittere</b> <i>send as help</i>	<b>submit</b>
<b>petere</b> <i>seek</i> <b>petition</b>	<b>sup-petere</b> <i>be on hand</i>	
<b>portāre</b> <i>bring</i> <b>import</b>	<b>sup-portāre</b> <i>bring up</i>	<b>support</b>
<b>emere</b> <i>take, buy</i> § 219, 4	<b>sū-mere</b> <i>pick up, take</i>	<b>assume</b>
<b>ēmi</b> <i>I took</i>	<b>sū-mpsī</b> <i>I took up</i>	<b>sumptuous</b>
<b>specere</b> (i) <i>look</i> <b>species</b>	<b>su-spicere</b> (i) <i>look up</i>	<b>suspicious</b>
<b>capere</b> (i) <i>take</i> <b>capacity</b>	<b>sus-cipere</b> (i) <i>undertake</i>	<b>susceptible</b>
<b>tenēre</b> <i>hold</i> <b>tenure</b>	<b>sus-tinēre</b> <i>hold up, endure</i>	<b>sustain</b>

15. **super** *over, above*; **trāns, trā-** *across, over*.

<b>esse</b> <i>be, remain</i> <b>essence</b>	<b>super-esse</b> <i>be over or left</i>	
<b>dare</b> <i>give, put</i> <b>dative</b>	<b>trā-dere</b> <i>hand over, § 219, 2</i>	<b>tradition</b>
<b>īre</b> <i>go, travel</i> <b>exit</b>	<b>trāns-īre</b> <i>cross, go over</i>	<b>transit</b>
<b>dūcere</b> <i>lead</i> <b>induce</b>	<b>trā-dūcere</b> <i>lead or take over</i>	

**221. a.** Prepositional ideas are often reëchoed by the verb. Where there are several prepositional ideas in connection with a single verb, each is expressed separately.

**Inde per Alpīs in Italiā contendit** *from there he hurried-on over the Alps into Italy.*

**b.** But a single prepositional idea is very often expressed twice; once by a *preposition used with a noun*, and again by the *same preposition* or a particle of similar meaning *prefixed to the verb*, especially in expressions of place and position.

**Longē ā domō abest** *he is far away from home* Cf. §§ 61 e, 230

**Ā Rōmā discēdit** *he departs from-the-vicinity-of Rome*

**Ad oppidum accēdit** *he is coming-up to the town* Cf. § 220, 2

**Cum Rōmānīs contendunt** *they contend with the Romans* § 62 a

**Dē salūte dēspērant** *they give-up hope of saving themselves*

**Dē finibus suis exeunt** *they go-out of their borders* § 220, 6

**Cōpiās (ex) castrīs ēdūcit** *he leads-out his troops from camp*

**Eōs dēdūcit ex** *his regiōnibus he takes them out of these parts*

**Eōs in insidiās indūcit** *he draws them into a snare* Cf. § 60

**Intrā finīs nostrōs ingrediuntur** *they enter inside our borders*

**Inter nōs et id silva intercēdit** *there is a wood between us and it*

**Inter hunc et mē mūrus interest** *there's a wall between him and me*

**Cōpiās prō castrīs prōdūcit** *leads-forth troops in front of camp*

**Sub nostram aciem succēdunt** *they come-up (hill) under our line*

**Cōpiās (trāns) flūmen trādūcō** *I lead my troops across the river*

### Frequentative Verbs

**222.** Some verbs denote an action as repeated or intensified.

#### a. ORIGINALS

*beat, daze, spit,  
twit, wrig, shove.*

#### FREQUENTATIVES

*batter, dazzle, sputter,  
twitter, wriggle, shuffle.*

b. Latin frequentative verbs are made on the participial stems of other verbs and contain the element *-tā-* or *-sā-*.

c. ORIGINALS		FREQUENTATIVES	
<i>nāre</i> float	<i>navy, naval</i>	<i>nātāre</i> keep floating	<i>natatorium</i>
<i>volāre</i> fly	<i>volatile</i>	<i>volitāre</i> flit, bustle	
<i>habēre</i> have, hold 4	<i>have</i>	<i>habitāre</i> dwell in 6	<i>inhabit</i>
<i>dicere</i> say, tell	<i>diction</i>	<i>dictāre</i> keep telling	<i>dictate</i>
<i>specere</i> (i) see	<i>species</i>	<i>spectāre</i> keep viewing	<i>spectacle</i>
<i>verti</i> turn self	<i>invert</i>	<i>versāri</i> busy self	<i>versatile</i>
<i>iacere</i> (i) throw	<i>reject</i>	<i>iactāre</i> toss, keep throwing	<i>jet</i>
<i>venire</i> come	<i>convention</i>	<i>ventitāre</i> come and go	

d. The originals of some frequentatives are uncertain.  
*dubitāre* keep delaying, hesitate Inf.; doubt quā Sub. *dubious*  
*flāgitāre* demand insistently or urgently 4 p 4 t § 230 h  
*sollicitāre* keep urging or insisting 4; urge on 4 *solicitous*

### Inceptive Verbs

223. Verbs denoting the *beginning of an action* are formed by annexing the element *-sce-* (*grow, become, begin to*), which appears as *-ish* in the English *vanish* and *flourish*. See p. 12.

a. ORIGINALS		INCEPTIVE VERBS	
<i>lūcere</i> be bright	<i>lucid</i>	<i>lūcēscere</i> become (grow) bright	
<i>flōrere</i> bloom	<i>flower</i>	<i>flōrēscere</i> begin to bloom	<i>flourish</i>
<i>frigere</i> be cool	<i>frigid</i>	<i>frigēscere</i> grow cool	<i>refrigerator</i>
<i>alere</i> feed	<i>aliment</i>	<i>ad-olēscere</i> grow up	<i>ad-olescent</i>
<i>alitus</i> raised	<i>altitude</i>	<i>ad-ultus</i> grown up	<i>adult</i>
<i>valere</i> be well	<i>valor</i>	<i>valēscere</i> get well	<i>convalescent</i>
<i>prōficere</i> (i) make		<i>proficisci</i> begin to ad-	
forward, gain	<i>profit</i>	<i>vance, set out</i>	<i>proficient</i>
<i>creare</i> make	<i>create</i>	<i>crēscere</i> grow	<i>crescent, increase</i>





marked 0 because they show that no other verb is coming before the main verb is reached, unless another "guide" intervenes.

**225.** Each new "guide" adds one to the number of verbs expected before the main verb, and each subordinate verb reduces that number by one. Figures at any given point indicate how many verbs are thus far known to precede the main verb.

Caesar, <sup>1</sup> quoniam <sup>0</sup> senātus cēsu-<sup>1</sup> era-<sup>2</sup> t, <sup>1</sup> utī, <sup>2</sup> quī-cumque

Caesar, <sup>1</sup> inasmuch-as <sup>0</sup> senate <sup>1</sup> decreed-had-it, <sup>2</sup> that, <sup>1</sup> who-ever

Galliam <sup>1</sup> prōvinciam <sup>2</sup> obtinēret, <sup>1</sup> quod-posset, <sup>1</sup> Aeduōs dēfende-

Gaul <sup>1</sup> province <sup>2</sup> held-he, <sup>1</sup> what could-he, <sup>1</sup> Aeduans defend-

<sup>0</sup> ret, <sup>0</sup> Aeduōrum <sup>1</sup> iniūriās <sup>2</sup> neglēct-ūrus <sup>1</sup> nōn era-t.

should-he, <sup>0</sup> Aeduans' <sup>1</sup> wrongs <sup>2</sup> overlook-going-to <sup>1</sup> not was-he.

<sup>1</sup> Inasmuch as the senate <sup>0</sup> had ordered, <sup>1</sup> that, <sup>2</sup> whoever <sup>1</sup> held Gaul

(as his) <sup>0</sup> province, <sup>1</sup> should, <sup>0</sup> as far as he was able, <sup>1</sup> defend the Aeduans, <sup>0</sup> Caesar was not going to overlook the Aeduans' wrongs.

The first verb after a "guide" belongs with it, unless another "guide" intervenes.

Iūs est, ut, <sup>1</sup> quī vincant, <sup>2</sup> eis, <sup>1</sup> qu-ōs vinca-nt <sup>2</sup> imper-e-nt.<sup>1</sup>

Law is, <sup>1</sup> that, <sup>2</sup> they who win, <sup>1</sup> those, <sup>2</sup> who-m win-they, <sup>1</sup> rule-may. <sup>0</sup>

It is a law, <sup>1</sup> that <sup>2</sup> those <sup>1</sup> who win <sup>0</sup> may <sup>1</sup> rule <sup>0</sup> those, <sup>1</sup> whom <sup>0</sup> they subdue.

<sup>1</sup> The figures should be reduced to 0 before a period. A semicolon requires the same, as it indicates the practical completion of the sense. Parts between semicolons may be treated as complete sentences.

**Iūs** <sup>1</sup>era-t <sup>2</sup>bell-i, <sup>1</sup>ut, <sup>2</sup>quī <sup>1</sup>vīc-isse-nt, <sup>2</sup>eīs, <sup>2</sup>qu-ōs  
*Right was-it war-of, that they-who won-had-they, those, who-m*  
<sup>1</sup>vīc-isse-nt, <sup>2</sup>quem ad modum vel-le-nt <sup>1</sup>imperā-re-nt.<sup>0</sup>  
*subdued-had-they, what after fashion like-d-they, rule-might-they.*

*It was the right of war, that those who had conquered, might rule those, whom they had subdued, after what fashion they liked.*

**226.** If a word meaning *and* (or *or* or *nor*) stands immediately after the main verb, it points to another main verb farther on; but if it follows a subordinate verb, it revives the force of the "guide" to which the subordinate verb belongs.

**Caesar** <sup>1</sup>duās <sup>0</sup>legiōnēs <sup>1</sup>cōscrips-it et <sup>1</sup>init-ā <sup>0</sup>aestāt-e,  
*Caesar two legions enrolled-he and begun-at summer-at,*  
in Galliam <sup>1</sup>quī <sup>0</sup>dēdūce-re-t, <sup>0</sup>Quīntum <sup>0</sup>Pedium <sup>0</sup>mīs-it.  
to Gaul <sup>1</sup>that-he take-might-he, <sup>0</sup>Quintus <sup>0</sup>Pedius <sup>0</sup>sent-he.  
*Caesar enlisted two legions and at the beginning of summer*  
*sent Quintus Pedius, that he might take (them) to Gaul.*

Standing after **cōscripsit**, **et** points on to **mīsit**.

**Da-t** <sup>1</sup>negōtium <sup>1</sup>Senon-ibus, <sup>1</sup>quī <sup>1</sup>finitimī <sup>1</sup>Belg-is  
*Gives-he task Senons-to, who borderers Belgians-to*  
<sup>0</sup>era-nt, <sup>1</sup>utī <sup>2</sup>ea, <sup>1</sup>quae <sup>1</sup>apud <sup>1</sup>e-ōs <sup>1</sup>gera-ntur,  
<sup>0</sup>were-they, <sup>1</sup>that <sup>2</sup>those, <sup>1</sup>which among the-m <sup>1</sup>going-on-are-they,  
<sup>0</sup>cognōsc-a-nt, <sup>1</sup>sē-que <sup>1</sup>de <sup>1</sup>hīs <sup>1</sup>rēbus <sup>1</sup>certiōrem  
learn-shall-they, <sup>0</sup>him-and <sup>1</sup>as-to <sup>1</sup>these <sup>1</sup>things <sup>1</sup>pretty-certain  
<sup>0</sup>faci-a-nt. <sup>0</sup>**Hī** <sup>0</sup>omnēs <sup>0</sup>nūntiā-v-ērunt, <sup>0</sup>manūs <sup>0</sup>cōg-I.  
make-shall-they. *They all report-ed-they bands gathered-be.*

*He assigned (it as) a task to the Senons, who were neighbors to the Belgians, that they should find out those (things) that were going on among them, and should keep him posted about these things. They all reported (that) bands (were) being gathered.*

-que, and, connects **faciant** to **cognōscant** and renews the force of **utī**, which governs **cognōscant**.

**227.** Verbs are often omitted, where they are easily understood.

Flūmen Dubis,	<sup>1</sup> ut	circin-ō	circum-ductum	( <sup>0</sup> )
River Doubs,	as-if	compasses-by	about-dug	( )

**oppidum cingi-t.**  
town girdles-it.

*The river Doubs encircles the town, as if (it had been) drawn around it with a pair-of-compasses.*

Ē-dūc	tē-cum	etiam omnis	tu-ōs,	<sup>1</sup> sī minus	( <sup>0</sup> )
Out-take	thee-with	also all	thy-men,	<sup>1</sup> if not-all	( <sup>0</sup> )

<sup>1</sup>quam <sup>0</sup>plūrimōs ( ).  
<sup>1</sup>as <sup>0</sup>most ( ).

*Take out all your men with you too, if (you can) not (take them) all (take out) as many as (you can).*

The full Latin sentence is: **Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnis tuōs, sī minus (potes), quam plūrimōs (potes).**

We say: *as well as he can* or *as best he can*. Latin uses only the latter form: **quam optimē potest**, *as best he can*, or, **quam celerrimē potest**, *as quickest he can*, or, **quam maximum militum numerum**, *as greatest a number of soldiers he can*.



Galeae.

### Our task and how it is to be accomplished

**228.** Nothing can make the purpose of well-graded readings clearer, or better emphasize the importance of helps such as are given in this appendix than a glance at the problem which is solved for you below.

It is a rather complicated sentence from the author you are likely first to attack, and the solution serves at once to illustrate the most convenient and satisfactory method by which you must already have attained the ability to attack that author and to outline the surest steps by which you may still attain such ability, if you have not already done so.

**229.** You will probably regard this sentence difficult at first sight.

“Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum trāns-  
ire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre,  
populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs  
ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quīn, cum  
omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque  
fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliā  
contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nos-  
trā Rhodanus dīvideret.” B. G., I., 33, 4.

But you can easily read in Latin and understand :

1 a. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant.

2 a. Germānī autem <sup>1</sup> Rhēnum trānsībant.

3 a. Germānī in Galliam veniēbant.

4 a. Multitūdō Germānōrum in Galliam veniēbat.

5 a. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsībant et magna multitūdō eōrum in Galliam veniēbat.

NOTE. — *Cōnsuēscēbant*, *were becoming accustomed*, assumes the tense of *trānsībant* (2 a) and *veniēbant* (3 a) and changes them to present infinitives. See § 132.

6 a. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsīre cōnsuēscēbant.

7 a. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magna eōrum multitūdō venīre cōnsuēscēbat.<sup>2</sup>

NOTE. — The statement of an actual occurrence is changed to the *infinitive with subject accusative* when it becomes the subject of a verb. §§ 142, 152 a.

8 a. Germānōs in Galliam venīre periculōsum erat.

9 a. Germānōs autem cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre Rōmānīs periculōsum erat. (Cf. 2 a and 6 a above.)

NOTE. — A declaration changes its form when it becomes the object of a verb. §§ 142, 153. Here *erat* becomes *esse*.

10 a. Paulātīm <sup>3</sup> autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre Rōmānīs periculōsum esse vidēbat.

11 a. Magnam multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum esse vidēbat.

12 a. Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum esse vidēbat.

<sup>1</sup> *Autem* however.  
*gradually, little by little.*

<sup>2</sup> Agrees with its nearest subject.

<sup>3</sup> *Paulātīm*

1 *b.* **Hominēs** sibi temperātūrī erant.

2 *b.* Cimbrī Teutonīque Galliam occupāverant.

3 *b.* Cimbrī et Teutonī **ita** fēcerant.

4 *b.* Rhodanus Galliam ā prōvinciā dīvidēbat.

5 *b.* Sēquanī proximī prōvinciae<sup>1</sup> ex Gallīs sunt. Facile erat Rhodanum ē Sēquanīs in prōvinciam trānsīre.

NOTE. — **Cum** with the *subjunctive* may mean *after*. §§ 115 *b*, *c*, 224.

6 *b.* **Cum** Cimbrī Teutonīque omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in prōvinciam exībant. Ex prōvinciā in Ītaliā contendēbant.

NOTE. — **Quīn**, *but, so that . . . not*, takes the *subjunctive*. § 115.

7 *b.* Hominēs barbarī sibi temperātūrī nōn erant, quīn in prōvinciam exīrent. § 155 *b*.

8 *b.* **Hominēs** barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn esse exīstimābat, quīn in provinciam nostram exīrent.

9 *b.* Hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn exīstimābat, quīn ex prōvinciā in Ītaliā contenderent.

NOTE. — **Ut** with the *indicative* often means *as*. § 147 *b*.

10 *b.* Hominēs ferī ac barbarī in prōvinciam exitūrī erant, **ut** Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcerant. §§ 102–3, 202.

11 *b.* Hominēs ferī ac barbarī temperātūrī nōn erant, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāssent, in prōvinciam exīrent, **cum** Rhodanus Gallōs ā prōvinciā dīvideret.

NOTE. — But in indirect statements, all subordinate verbs stand in the *subjunctive*. § 137 *b*.

12 *b.* Hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāssent, **ut** ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde<sup>2</sup> in Ītaliā contenderent, **cum** Rhodanus Gallōs ā prōvinciā dīvideret.

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.* the *cisalpine* province, now northern Italy.

<sup>2</sup> *Inde* from there.

“Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum  
trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem  
venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi  
hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat,  
quī, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri  
Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in  
Ītaliā contenderent, praesertim<sup>1</sup> cum Sēquanōs ā prō-  
vinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret.” §§ 225, 226.

The tricks thus employed by Latin authors to express thoughts are limited in number. You can learn them all (or nearly all) beforehand and then read the authors. But to become used to them and master them you must read. This is what is meant by preparing for Caesar, Cicero, and other writers; and if you have not read an abundance of easy Latin intelligently, you are not prepared to read the average Latin of their writings without the greatest drudgery and difficulty.

What shall one do in order to become able to read the authors easily and comfortably and enjoyably?

1. Read easy Latin first.
2. Read connected Latin from the first.
3. Re-read it till you master it.
4. Make yourself understand yourself as you read.
5. Read plenty of Latin that is easy to master.
6. Read aloud to train your eye, to get your own tongue accustomed to narrate to you, and to impress the Latin forms and phrases (in their natural order) on your own ear and understanding.
7. Read the Latin both before and after translating.
8. Read harder and harder sentences and read them harder and harder, and you will soon be able to read anything.

<sup>1</sup> Praesertim especially.



**230. a.** What appears to be *direct* or *indirect* object in English is expressed in a variety of ways in Latin according to the nature of the governing word. The *governing power* of certain words (especially verbs) will frequently be indicated by using abbreviations to point out some of the more common constructions that must be used with them. Other constructions will be learned by experience and observation.

CONSTRUCTIONS	ABBR.	EXAMPLES	
Infinitive as subject	Inf. s.	<b>Legere</b> licet	§ 131
Infinitive as object	Inf. o.	<b>Legere</b> cōnātur	§ 130
Infinitive with subject Accusative	4 Inf.	<b>Puerum</b> ire iubet	§ 134
		<b>Puerum</b> ire patitur	§ 142 a
b. Takes the Genitive	2	<b>Librī</b> cupidus est	§ 107 c
		<b>Puerī</b> interest	§ 73 c
c. Takes the Dative	3	<b>Cōsiliō</b> interest	§ 73 d
		<b>Servīs</b> praeest	
d. Takes the Accusative	4	<b>Puerum</b> vocat	§ 5 d
e. Takes the Ablative	6	<b>Librō</b> ūtitur	§ 182 b
f. Acc. of the person Abl. of the thing	4 p 6 t	<b>Puerum librō</b> dōnat	§ 74, 12
		<b>Puerum librō</b> spoliāt	§ 63 b
g. Dat. of the person Acc. of the thing	3 p 4 t	<b>Puerō librum</b> dōnat	§ 56, 3
		<b>Puerō</b> <sup>1</sup> <b>librum</b> imperat	§ 5 f
		<b>Puerō</b> <sup>1</sup> <b>librum</b> ēripit	§ 5 f
h. Two Accusatives	4 p 4 t	<b>Puerum librum</b> flāgitat	§ 147 e
		<b>Puerum nōmen</b> rogat	§ 155
i. Acc. (thing) ā, ab w. Abl. (person)	4 t ab p	<b>Librumā</b> <b>puerō</b> <sup>1</sup> postulat	§ 147 e
		<b>Id ab aliīs</b> <sup>3</sup> quaerit	§ 147 e
		<b>Id ā mē</b> petit	
j. ē, ex w. Abl. (person) Acc. and Dat. ut-clause (thing)	4 t ex p 4 t 3 p 3 p ut w. Sub.	<b>Id ex puerō</b> <sup>1</sup> quaerit	§ 147 e
		<b>Id puerō</b> persuādet	§ 147 e
		<b>Puerō</b> persuādet <b>ut eat</b>	§ 147 a

<sup>1</sup> Translate of the boy.<sup>2</sup> Translate from the boy.<sup>3</sup> Translate of others.

## ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

(Based on text and word lists and paradigms of Appendix. No English-Latin vocabulary necessary.)

While striving to master the forms of a *few* nouns thoroughly, pupils often console themselves with the thought that they are preparing to recognize the cases of *all* nouns promptly and unerringly. Their expectations may well be fulfilled in forms like

sōlis	virtūti	magnus	amīce	lūcem	tōtō
bonōs	cornūs	omnis	āera	rēgum	Circēs

because no other case has the same spelling. But when we remark that no Latin scholar on earth can possibly tell the case of

omnis	amīci	tempus	mare	decem	filiō
custōs	fructūs	equīs	oppida	rēgnum	diēs

without first seeing them used in sentences, it becomes evident why the pupil's hope of being able to tell the case of a word by the *last letter or so* is every day being shattered in Latin classes.

The fact is that the character and form of most Latin words are not to be determined so much by knowing their lineage as by observing the "company they keep" — *i.e.* their relation to the words with which they are used.

These exercises aim to develop the habit of looking at words *from both points of view* and to train pupils to employ both these indispensable methods of procedure, *viz.* :

a. Using forms found in model sentences or like those given in paradigms, and

b. Writing forms of other words known to be correct from their use in easy passages of the text.

NOTE. — Easy exercises accomplish the desired results far more readily than more difficult ones. These exercises have been made especially simple and easy, as they are intended either for rapid oral or written work. They may be used at intervals, as the reading proceeds, to clinch the pupil's grasp of forms, while their use is most apparent, and to assist in developing a clearer and more definite idea of the *machinery* through which the human mind works to express thoughts both in English and Latin.

**One-Word Exercises. English Case-Forms**

English cannot be turned into Latin without careful study of the use of each word. The purpose of Exercises I–VI is to compel attention to the construction of single words in English and Latin sentences. Constructions that are apt to be confounded or need to be contrasted are studied together. Sections marked (a) in Exercises I–VIII require the use of the nouns found in §§ 75–6 and other words having the same endings.

**EXERCISE I — Predicate Nominative and Direct Object**

*Study carefully §§ 5 a, d, e; cf. § 74, 3, 4; 76. Omit words in parentheses. Number each. Commence each exercise with a capital. Punctuate as in English.*

a. 1. (It is) evening. 2. (I love) the evening. 3. (I see) the master. 4. (He calls) his son. 5. (That is) the son. 6. (He is called) Mark. 7. (He is thought) an enemy. 8. (He is) unfriendly. 9. (That island is) Rhodes. 10. (Do you see) Rhodes? 11. (That is) Philippi. 12. (Do you see) Philippi? 13. (That is) the boy. 14. (We see) the boy. 15. (They are) boys. 16. (They see) the boys. 17. (That is) a book. 18. (He has) a book. 19. (Those are) books. 20. (They have) books.

b. *Express the following in Latin (see pp. 3–5) as predicate nominatives.*

1. A sphere. 2. A great globe. 3. The earth. 4. The sun. 5. A globe. 6. A great sphere. 7. Large globes. 8. Flat. 9. Round. 10. Large.<sup>1</sup> 11. Bright. 12. Globe-like. 13. Small. 14. Pale.

*Express the following in Latin as direct objects.*

1. The earth. 2. What? 3. A great light. 4. What (things)? 5. Another light. 6. What things?

<sup>1</sup> Predicate nominatives are either nouns or adjectives; p. 5 note, § 83.

## EXERCISE II — Direct and Indirect Object

*Study carefully § 5 d, f; cf. §§ 56, 3; 74, 3, 4, 6 and 93. Use words occurring in § 5 and on pages 2-5 of the text.*

a. 1. (It is) Mark. 2. (Call) Mark. 3. (Give) Mark (this). 4. (I see) pupils. 5. (Are they) pupils? 6. (They are not) masters. 7. (Tell) the pupils (so). 8. (He saw) boys. 9. (Did he tell) the boys (so)? 10. (He told) most (of them). 11. (See) the books. 12. (Are they) books? 13. (Some are) pupils; (others are) teachers. 14. (That is) a village. (See 5 g and Vocab.)

1. (Call) the boys. 2. (Do not call) the master. 3. (They are called) globes. 4. (See) the globes. 5. (It is) the master. 6. (That is) a boy. 7. (He is not) a pupil. 8. (It is) his son. 9. (Give) the son (a book). 10. (Call) a boy. 11. (Is he called) Mark? 12. (He calls) most-of-them. 13. (We choose) the boys. 14. (Tell) the boys (so). 15. (Give) the sons (this).

b. *Express as indirect objects (see pp. 6-8, 11 and § 74).*

1. The earth. 2. Moon. 3. Stars. 4. It; them.  
5. Cato.

*Express as direct objects (see pp. 6-11 and § 74, 4).*

1. Light.<sup>1</sup> 2. The earth. 3. It.<sup>1</sup> 4. Them. 5. Another-body's light. 6. A soft light. 7. Other lights. 8. These lights. 9. A-great-deal. 10. Many (things); what (things)? 11. The stars. 12. Me; himself. 13. A river. 14. Cato.

*Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 6-11; § 74, 3).*

1. Lighted. 2. Luminous. 3. Dark.<sup>2</sup> 4. Bright. 5. Like. 6. Another's.<sup>2</sup> 7. Glittering. 8. Bright and hot. 9. Thick and countless. 10. Flat. 11. Globular; round. 12. Large. 13. Glittering and hot. 14. Light and shadows. 15. Little dots; stars; a star. 16. Spheres. 17. Other suns. 18. Cato. 19. Swift. 20. A ray; rays. 21. Julius. 22. A book.

<sup>1</sup> Use two or more different words. \*

<sup>2</sup> Which are plural? Which neuter? § 55 c, e, f.

## EXERCISE III — Direct Address and Exclamations

*Study § 74, 7 and 8. Cf. §§ 75-6. Use words on pp. 2-5.*

- a. 1. Thou foe. 2. My son. 3. (Look), master! 4. O Mark! 5. My (native) Rhodes. 6. (Fortunate) Rhodes! 7. (Poor) Mark! 8. (Come) boys. 9. O pupils. 10. (Lucky) pupils! 11. (Look) my sons! 12. (Speak) foes! 13. O (fortunate) Philippi! 14. Ye masters. 15. O (great) globes! 16. (Poor) boys! 17. O (bright) rays!

## EXERCISE IV — Ownership Asserted; Ownership Assumed

*Study § 5 e. Cf. §§ 56, 2, 3; 105 and 106 b.*

- a. 1. (That is) a book. 2. (I see) the book. 3. (It belongs) to Mark. 4. (It is) Mark's (book). 5. (Is there a name) to the book? 6. (That is) a school.<sup>1</sup> 7. (Those are) pupils. 8. (Call) the pupils. 9. (Give) the pupils (books). 10. (Are there books) for the pupils? 11. (Is there any name) to the school? 12. Mark (has books). 13. (I have) Mark's (books). 14. (Mark has) the books. (§ 5 e.) 15. (It belongs) to the boy. 16. Boys'. 17. Globe's. 18. Of most-(of-them). 19. Of Philippi.

*Express in Latin (see pp. 7-14).*

1. Earth's.<sup>2</sup> 2. Of the moon. 3. Its.<sup>3</sup> 4. Their.<sup>2</sup> 5. Stars'.<sup>2</sup> 6. Of the sky. 7. Of the sun. 8. Of this figure. 9. Of the smaller dipper. 10. And-of-them.

## EXERCISE V — Measures of Extent and Difference; Time

*Study § 68. Cf. § 5 d, j; 56, 4, 6; 74, 17, 18, 19.*

- a. 1. (It is) autumn.<sup>4</sup> 2. During autumn. 3. During the evening. 4. At evening. 5. Within a year. 6. (I see) hamlets. 7. (They are) villages. 8. (It is) the year. 9. A year's (time). 10. Years' (work). 11. (Time) of year. 12. (Is there any end) to the year? 13. (It lasts) a year. 14. (It lasts) for years (§ 56, 4). 15. A year (later). 16. (Ten) years (after).

<sup>1</sup> Lūdus.

<sup>2</sup> In more than one way.

<sup>3</sup> § 109 b, c.

<sup>4</sup> Autumnus.

*b. Express in Latin; see pp. 6, 10, 12, 18, 19.*

1. During-the-day.<sup>1</sup> 2. During the night. 3. So great a distance (§ 74, 17). 4. At midday. 5. In the morning.
6. All day. 7. Late in the day. 8. All night long. 9. The whole year. 10. At midnight. 11. At the rising (of the sun).
12. At night. 13. The<sup>2</sup> higher the better (74, 19). 14. (Is away) a-great-deal. 15. A-great-deal better. 16. Next year.
17. Last year. 18. (Can)not (read) at all. 19. A year before.
20. The year before. 21. (Is away) two years. 22. Seven years later. 23. Yesterday.<sup>3</sup> 24. Today. 25. Tomorrow.<sup>1</sup>
26. On that day.<sup>4</sup> 27. In six years. 28. For six years.

#### EXERCISE VI — Subject Nominative; Subject Accusative

*Study §§ 56, 1 and 4; 121, 122, 125, 134, 142 a. Cf. § 74, 1 and 2.*

- a. 1. A boy (goes). 2. (We see) a boy (go). 3. Boys (call). 4. (I hear) boys (call). 5. A friend (is calling).
6. (I hear) a friend (calling). 7. Most-of-them (came).
8. (We saw) most-of-them (come). 9. The villages (burned).
10. (We saw) the villages (burn). 11. The school (is closed).
12. (He orders) the school (closed).

*b. Express as subjects of finite verbs (see pp. 2-11).*

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky (p. 5, note.)
4. The sun. 5. Light.<sup>3</sup> 6. Night. 7. The earth.<sup>3</sup> 8. This light. 9. These lights. 10. Globes. 11. The stars.<sup>3</sup> 12. We; I; you; thou. 13. Julius. 14. Julia. 15. The boy. 16. He; it; <sup>3</sup> she; they.<sup>3</sup>

*Express as subjects of infinitives.*

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky. 4. The sun.
5. Light.<sup>3</sup> 6. Night. 7. Earth.<sup>3</sup> 8. This light. 9. These lights. 10. Globes. 11. Stars. 12. Us; me; it; <sup>3</sup> them.

<sup>1</sup> Latin adverb.    <sup>2</sup> English adverb; Abl. in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> More than one way.    <sup>4</sup> Of which declension is each? § 55 c.

a. 1. (There goes) a boy.<sup>1</sup> 2. (I see) the boy (go). 3. (He bade) the boy (go). 4. (There) he (goes). 5. Horses (run). 6. (I see) horses (run). 7. The sons (go). 8. (I let) the sons (go). 9. (Where are) the boys? 10. (There are) the boys!<sup>1</sup> 11. (He orders) the boys (to go).<sup>2</sup> 12. (Here is) the boy! 13. (Where is) the master? 14. (He is calling) the boy. 15. The boy (is called). 16. (He bids) the boy (hurry). 17. (There go) the boys. 18. (I see) the boys (run). 19. (They order) the school (closed). 20. The school (is closed). 21. (It is closed) for a year (§ 56, 4). 22. (Here comes) Mark.

<sup>1</sup> If the word *here*, *there*, or *where* stands first in an English sentence, the subject usually stands after the verb.

<sup>2</sup> § 146 a.

### Two-Word Exercises <sup>1</sup>

**Predicate Nominative** — what a person or thing *is*, *becomes*, *is made* or *called* or *said to be*, etc.

**Predicate Accusative** — what one *knows*, *thinks*, *declares* or *learns* a person or thing *to be* or *become*, etc.

EXERCISE VII — Study § 5 a-c; cf. §§ 74, 3; 146, 1. Use words (pp. 24-6) like paradigms §§ 75-6.

a. 1. Paulus (is considered) a friend. 2. (I think) Paulus a friend. 3. (I know) Paulus (to be) a friend. 4. (I see) my friend Paulus. 5. His son (is thought) hostile. 6. (I think) his son (to be) an enemy. 7. (I call) his son an enemy. 8. The boy (is named) Paulus. 9. (He calls) his son Paulus. 10. (We know) the boy (to be) Paulus. 11. (We know) the boys (to be) friendly. 12. The master (is) a Greek.

b. Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 5, 6, 10-1, 14).

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. Large (n.). 4. Great globes. 5. Large (f.). 6. Dark (n.). 7. Day. 8. Shadows. 9. Stars.<sup>2</sup> 10. Pale. 11. A star. 12. Suns. 13. Spheres.

<sup>1</sup> In exercises marked (a).

<sup>2</sup> More than one way.

14. Small. 15. Round.<sup>1</sup> 16. The dipper. 17. Motionless.  
18. The larger dipper. 19. The smaller. 20. Polaris.<sup>2</sup>

*Express as predicate accusatives (see pp. 5, 6, 10-2).*

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. Bright (*sing.*). 4. Great<sup>2</sup>  
globes. 5. Large (*f.*). 6. Dark (*n.*). 7. Day. 8. Shadows.  
9. Pale. 10. Stars.<sup>1</sup> 11. A star. 12. Suns. 13. Spheres.  
14. Small. 15. Very-large. 16. Night. 17. Midday.  
18. High.

*Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 15-21).*

1. South. 2. West-wind. 3. Cool.<sup>1</sup> 4. Damp. 5. Soft.  
6. Hard. 7. Harder. 8. Flowing. 9. Shapeless. 10. Even.  
11. Plains. 12. Hills.<sup>3</sup> 13. Rough. 14. Thin. 15. Dense.  
16. Denser. 17. More thin. 18. Very-rare. 19. Fixed.  
20. End. 21. Situated. 22. The North Pole. 23. Cold (*pl.*).  
24. Cold (*sing.*). 25. Warm.<sup>1</sup> 26. Spring. 27. Summer.  
28. Longer. 29. Green. 30. Clear. 31. Blue. 32. Very-  
short. 33. Dry. 34. Covered-with-flowers.

### EXERCISE VIII — Predicate of the Object; Appositives

NOTE. — Predicate Nouns are attached to the direct object in such a way as to become a *part of the assertion*.

Ex. (They count) the boy a friend. Cf. § 5 b.

Write the word for *boy* as direct object;  
then *friend*, predicate of the object (accusative).

**Puerum**  
**Puerum amicum.**

*Study § 5 b and § 93; cf. § 74, 5.*

1. (He considers) the Romans his enemies. 2. Romans  
(seem) friendly. 3. Most-of-them (are not) enemies. 4. (I  
call) most-of-them friends. 5. Our friend Mark (is calling).  
6. Our friend Mark's (plan). 7. (Tell) our friend Mark.  
8. (They see) your friend the master. 9. Friend Mark!  
10. (We know) the boy (to be) Mark.

<sup>1</sup> More than one way.

<sup>2</sup> Of which declension is each? § 55 c; cf. §§ 42, 2; 52.    <sup>3</sup> § 79 a.



*b. Express as predicates of the object (see pp. 3, 12-5).*

1. A globe. 2. The East. 3. The West. 4. The South.
5. The pointers. 6. The North. 7. The west wind.

*Express as subjects with appositives (pp. 15, 17, 19).*

1. The first (one), Boreas. 2. The latter being adjusted.
3. The star Polaris. 4. Water when-falling (p. 42).

*Express as objects with appositives (see pp. 20-3).*

1. Places that-were-deserted. 2. The fruits that-are-ripe.
3. Fields and woods that are white.

*Study § 94. Use words found on pp. 24-6.*

- a.* 1. O (fortunate) Greeks who-were-philosophers. 2. (They call) the Greek Theodorus. 3. (He names) his son Lucius. 4. (He is older) than my friend Aemilius. 5. (They saw) Rhodes when-it-was-a hamlet.<sup>1</sup> 6. (He is) a boy that-is-friendly. 7. The master who-is-our-friend (told us this). 8. (We knew) his son when-a-boy. 9. (He saw) Philippi when-it-was-a-mere-village. 10. The son (is learning it) while-he-is a boy. 11. (We told) most of-them as-they-were-friendly. 12. (Invite) the Greeks even-though-they-are-enemies. 13. The master (lived here) when-a-boy. 14. (Tell) the son, if-he-seems-friendly. 15. (Ask) the boy even-if-he-is-a Greek. 16. (We shall ask) the Romans because-they-are-our-friends. 17. (Invite) Titus since-he-is-my son. 18. (They are stronger) than Mark when-he-was-a boy. 19. A boy who-was-his-friend (warned him).

#### EXERCISE IX — Infinitives in English and Latin

*Study §§ 121-3, 127-8, 130. What is a finite verb? § 125. Use Infinitives only. Omit words in parentheses.*

1. (I ought) to call. 2. (I will) call. 3. (They may) be called. 4. (I can) be called. 5. Calling (may) be done. 6. (I

<sup>1</sup> Study § 94.

ought) to try. 7. (I can) make effort. 8. (I can) order. 9. (It may) be ordered. 10. Order (may) be given. 11. To read. 12. (It can) be read. 13. (I may) take. 14. (We can) let. 15. (It may) be heard. 16. (I can) send. 17. (He is willing) to go. 18. Traveling (may) be done. 19. (I may) be unwilling. 20. (It cannot) be. 21. (He began) traveling. 22. (They dare not) speak. 23. (Doesn't he dare) to be heard?

**Exercises of one to three words. See §§ 131-4 a.**

a. 1. Trying (is permitted). 2. (One may) try. 3. Reading (is allowed). 4. Bribing (is) giving. 5. Call (is) speak. 6. To order (is) to allow. 7. To be taken. 8. Be going. 9. To be. 10. To be put. 11. Be able. 12. Let. 13. To wish. 14. Prefer. 15. Be unwilling.

1. (I seem) to be able. 2. (Seem) to be. 3. (Seem) to hear. 4. (Kept) from trying. 5. (Ordered) to read. 6. (Kept) from being. 7. (Forced) to let. 8. (Said) to be.

1. (I wish) to call my friends (§ 133). 2. (We can) be friends. 3. (He seems) to be unfriendly. 4. (Might) be called friend. 5. (Is ordered) to call the boys. 6. (Seems) to be calling the master. 7. (Appears) to be a wall. 8. (May) be willing to speak. 9. (I may) prefer to read. 10. To try to go.

b. 1. (Hear) Mark call (§ 134). 2. (I hear) calling done. 3. (Let) a boy go. 4. (I think) Mark willing. 5. (Regard) boys able to speak. 6. (I order) boys to be called. 7. (I hear) the son call. 8. (I hear) it ordered. 9. (Hear) the order given. 10. (I saw) a boy take a horse. 11. (I saw) the horses taken.

*Express as direct objects of other verbs (pp. 21-2, 26).*

1. To ripen. 2. Reaping. 3. Picking. 4. To be. 5. To become white. 6. To pick. 7. To gather. 8. To make-ready. 9. To speak. 10. To learn.

*Express as subjects of other verbs (cf. §§ 129, 131, 133):*

1. Seeing. 2. Going-out. 3. To see (p. 20). 4. To wander (p. 24). 5. Writing (p. 29). 6. Looking-over (p. 34). 7. To count (p. 36). 8. To measure (p. 41). 9. Willing.<sup>1</sup> 10. To write (p. 29). 11. To get (p. 45). 12. Acquiring (p. 46). 13. Writing (p. 48). 14. To enumerate (p. 50). 15. Getting. 16. Building. 17. Keeping-up. 18. Providing. 19. To bring-up (p. 52).

<sup>1</sup> § 131.

### Complete Sentences

#### EXERCISE X — The Present Indicative (Finite)

*Study §§ 136-7. Review § 5 a-c and 74, 1-5.*

1. He is calling. 2. The boy is calling. 3. <sup>1</sup> She is calling the boy. 4. A boy is being called. 5. It is called Rhodes. 6. (The island) is called Rhodes. 7. He is called Mark. 8. The boy is called Mark. 9. Calling-is-being-done. 10. They call. 11. Boys call. 12. They call the boy Lucius. 13. The boy is called Lucius. 14. He calls the boys friends.

1. The boys are called friendly. 2. They order. 3. The order-is-given. 4. They are ordered. 5. Reading is being done. 6. It is read. 7. They do go. 8. One goes.

NOTE. — Every language has its own peculiar order of words. Latin words must be written or spoken in the *natural Latin order*. The infinitive regularly stands before indicatives meaning *may, can, let, wish, try, will, prefer, are heard, are ordered*, etc. Imitate the order of words in the model sentences given in §§ 130-4.

#### EXERCISE XI — Indicatives and Infinitives

a. 1. They call. 2. They can call (§ 121). 3. They are trying. 4. They may try. 5. It is permitted to try. 6. One may read. 7. They read. 8. They will not read. 9. They

<sup>1</sup> Place the *verb* at the *end* of the sentence or of its clause.

will-rather hear. 10. He prefers to hear. 11. He is reading. 12. He is ordered to read. 13. He is ordered to go. 14. It is being read. 15. It can be read. 16. She reads.

*Infinitives with Indicatives (§§ 129, 132; cf. § 155).*

b. 1. Seem to rise (p. 12). 2. Seems to remain (p. 14). 3. Seem to turn-themselves (p. 19). 4. Are seen going. 5. Are seen turning-themselves-back (p. 25). 6. Of speaking (p. 26). 7. About doubling (p. 29). 8. Cannot be discerned (p. 30). 9. Was the custom to count (p. 36). 10. One may measure. 11. Method of measuring (p. 41). 12. Taught to find (p. 43). 13. To get by reading (p. 45). 14. By hearing; by seeing (p. 46). 15. (We) are taught to write (p. 48). 16. Are forced to write; ought to shine (p. 49).

*Express in Latin (as found on pp. 22-3; cf. §§ 136-7).*

Irr.	-ā-	-ē-	-e-	-i-	-i-
brings	blows	shines <sup>1</sup>	burns	there begins	raves
becomes	roars	sees <sup>2</sup>	grows	looks-down	comes <sup>3</sup>
(they) are	blow	see	fall	begin	come <sup>4</sup>
become	bend	are silent	seek	look-down	go <sup>4</sup>
are-away <sup>5</sup>	move	are-rigid	dry-up	take; make <sup>6</sup>	hear

*Express in Latin (see pp. 10, 20-3; cf. §§ 181-3).*

is called	is seen	is spoken of	is-made <sup>7</sup>	is heard
detains-itself	seems	turns-itself <sup>8</sup>	dies	bribes
are called	seem	feed (selves)	die	bribe
gather (selves)	dread	come-back	let	open
attempt	are-mixed	help-selves <sup>9</sup>	go (§ 206)	go out

c. *Express in Latin (cf. §§ 136-7).*

1. Gift-is-made (§ 137). 2. Penetrating-is-done (p. 16). 3. Answer-is-given (p. 43). 4. Descending-is-done (p. 18). 5. Taking away-is-done (p. 43). 6. Going-is-done (p. 18).

<sup>1</sup> p. 12. <sup>2</sup> § 74. <sup>3</sup> p. 15. <sup>4</sup> p. 24. <sup>5</sup> p. 10. <sup>6</sup> p. 21. <sup>7</sup> § 212. <sup>8</sup> p. 19. <sup>9</sup> p. 26.

7. Calling-is-done (§ 136). 8. One may (§ 136). 9. Reading-is-done (or) one reads (§ 106 c). 10. One takes; one heeds; one goes (§§ 136-7). 11. One replies (p. 43). 12. One writes (p. 49).

NOTE. — A former thought or statement is often mentioned as a part of a new thought or statement (§ 142). Former thoughts are often expressed as the direct object of verbs meaning *see, hear, perceive, know, say, read, order, bid, let, wish* (§ 142).

d. 1. The master calls. 2. They hear the master call. 3. Boys try. 4. He lets the boys try. 5. The sons speak. 6. They let the sons speak. 7. The-order-is-given. 8. They hear the-order-given. 9. The master is reading. 10. The boys wish the master to read. 11. The son goes. 12. He lets his son go. 13. They hear that<sup>1</sup> the son goes. 14. The boys try. 15. They wish the boys to try. 16. He wishes that the boys try. 17. It is being read. 18. They wish it to be read.

e. *Imitate the sentences on pp. 12 and 13.*

In the morning the sun rises. It rises off east. We see the sun rise. At mid-day the sun is high in the sky. We call the mid-day noon. The sun shines all day. We see the sun shining in the sky. Late in the day it sets. We see (it) set off west. At evening it-gets-dark. The stars grow bright. We see the stars grow bright. The moon rises off east. We see the moon rise. It shines all night. We see the moon shining in the sky. Late at night the moon sets. The stars also seem to set in the west.

f. *Express in Latin as found in the text.*

(We) are (p. 16); call, see (p. 12); get (p. 7); hear (p. 13).

(We) are-away, stand, like, choose (p. 24); desire<sup>2</sup> (p. 26).

(We) are able (p. 48); are called (§ 187); are taught (p. 43).

(We) think (for ourselves), help-ourselves, measure (p. 38, § 182).

<sup>1</sup> § 146 a.

<sup>2</sup> or *wish*.

- (We) look, speak-of, declare, know, know-not, inquire (p. 42).  
 (We) notice, regard, learn, become-acquainted-with, are able, advance-ourselves, become, distinguish, can, are taught (p. 45).  
 (We) get, go out, make, are-made (p. 46).  
 (We) shall-note, have-said, were, shall-learn, shall-follow (p. 34).

*Express in Latin as found in the text or paradigms.*

- (Thou) art (p. 57); art reading (p. 5); askest (p. 43);  
 (Thou) callest (§ 187); art rejoicing; dost-understand (p. 57);  
 takest (§ 202); hearest (§ 207); goest (§ 212).  
 (Thou) canst (§ 183); art called; art excited; art forgetful  
 (p. 57); art taken (§ 202); art heard (§ 207).  
 (Thou) wilt-have-completed; wilt-begin; wilt-be-clad (p. 57).  
 (You) did-read; are-reading; will-read (p. 10).  
 (I) am; think; am called; hold; rejoice; understand (p. 57);  
 take (§ 202); hear (§ 207); can; could;<sup>1</sup> was; were<sup>1</sup> (§ 183).

## EXERCISE XII — Commands; The Position of the Vocative

*Study Imperative forms. See §§ 183 c, 186, 189, 191 b, 194, 196 b, 199, 201 b, 204, 206 b, 209, 211 b, 214. Cf. § 170, note.*

The negative of a command or entreaty is **nē** (*not*). The negative of a declaration is **nōn** (*not*).

**Nōli, nōlite**<sup>2</sup> (*do not*) followed by the infinitive is far more common and more polite than **nē** with the imperative.

**Nē puerum vocā!**  
*don't call the boy!*

**Nōli eum vocāre**  
*do not call him*

**Nōn vocat**  
*he is not calling*

1. Call the master, Mark.<sup>3</sup> 2. Don't call the boys! 3. Do not call the boys. 4. Go, boy! Don't be called. 5. Go, boys;<sup>3</sup> don't be called! 6. Try,<sup>4</sup> Aemilius. 7. Try, boys!

<sup>1</sup> More than one way.    <sup>2</sup> § 186.    <sup>3</sup> § 56, 5.    <sup>4</sup> §§ 181-2.

8. Do read,<sup>1</sup> master! Order<sup>2</sup> the boys to read. Bid Mark (to) try. 9. Read, Mark! Don't be bidden. 10. Let<sup>3</sup> the boys go, master! 11. Let Titus be invited, boys. Don't let Paulus hear! Do not let<sup>3</sup> the master hear. 12. Go, boy! Don't be ordered. Don't be caught. 13. Be friendly, Mark.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. § 199.    <sup>2</sup> Cf. § 194.    <sup>3</sup> Cf. § 206 b.

### EXERCISE XIII — Adverbs and Indeclinable Numerals

*Study § 69 and the table of numerals, p. 29.*

The boy has a book. He reads well. The boys have books. They can read well. The barbarian is not a pupil. He can not read. Most Greeks can read. The majority (of) Romans can read well. Romans speak (in-) Latin. Mark speaks (in-) Latin. He can speak well. Titus speaks better. Most pupils speak very well. Theodorus speaks differently. He speaks (in-) Greek. The barbarians do not speak (in-) Greek. They cannot even speak (in-) Latin. The Gaul<sup>1</sup> tries to speak Latin. He speaks as well as he can. Theodorus speaks badly. The master calls the boys. They hear the-calling-done. They do not wish to go. He calls again-and-again. Afterward though-unwilling<sup>2</sup> they go as quickly as possible. He tells (bids) them to read. They read very well. They read as long-as they can. Afterward he lets them go.

1. How long is he absent?<sup>3</sup> 2. He is away for a-long-time. 3. The master calls the boys more-than-once. 4. They are far away.<sup>3</sup> 5. They do not hear. 6. They are too far away. 7. They stay (are) away<sup>3</sup> too long. 8. They go away<sup>4</sup> as far as possible. 9. They wander<sup>5</sup> far and wide. 10. They go away very seldom. 11. They do not love the master as much as they fear him. 12. They do not wish the master ill.

<sup>1</sup> Gallus.

<sup>2</sup> inviti.

<sup>3</sup> § 185.

<sup>4</sup> abeunt.

<sup>5</sup> vagantur.

1. There are ten pupils. 2. Apollonius (3) has fifty books.
3. Titus gives Theodorus books. 4. The boy does not read well.
5. He reads as best he can. 6. The barbarians<sup>2</sup> cannot even read.
7. The boys read more easily. 8. Marcus reads the book five times.
9. He loves to read. 10. He reads as rapidly as he can.
11. He often makes-mistakes.<sup>2</sup> 12. Titus loves horses especially.
13. He loves horses more than (he loves) books. 14. <sup>3</sup> Titus (3) has twenty horses.<sup>1</sup>
15. He gives the master books. 16. The master reads very well.
17. They express-themselves otherwise than the master (speaks).

<sup>1</sup> See § 62 f.

<sup>2</sup> errat.

<sup>3</sup> (3) = Dat. (1) = Nom.; cf. § 105.

### EXERCISE XIV — The Use of Prepositions

NOTE. — Some Latin prepositions are always followed by the accusative case; some always take the ablative; *in* and *sub* may take either case. Each Latin preposition has *just one underlying idea*, that we cannot express exactly with any one word. Each partial meaning given must be taken in the sense of all the others. English prepositions have no exact equivalents in Latin.

Ex. *They send Mark a book.*

Cf. § 5 f.

Write the word for *book* (direct obj.)

Distance is involved. Use *ad*

*Ad* governs the Acc. case

*Dare* § 128 means *give* or *send*

1. *Librum . . .*

1. *Librum ad . . .*

1. *Librum ad Mārcum . . .*

1. *Librum ad Mārcum dant.*

Ex. *He starts for the fields.*

Cf. § 5 g.

Destination; *in* with Acc.

*Proficisci* start (like *loqui* § 136)

2. *In agrōs . . .*

2. *In agrōs proficiscitur.*

Ex. *He seems (a man) of friendly feeling toward Titus.*

*Amicō animō in Titum vidētur.*



*Use a preposition with the accusative in each. Study § 57.*

1. In-the-direction-of-the hamlet. 2. (Wait) till evening!
3. Near the village. 4. Up to the walls.<sup>1</sup> 5. They go toward the fields. 6. Up on the wall. 7. Close-by the village.<sup>2</sup>
8. He is next-to Mark. 9. He is ordered to go ahead-of the boys. 10. The pupil is in-care-of the master. 11. They are going among friends. 12. They are wandering in-the-vicinity-of the village. 13. They happen<sup>3</sup> upon a barbarian. 14. He is starting for school. 15. Between the pupils.

*Use only prepositions with the ablative. Study § 58.*

1. From-the-direction-of the village. 2. From a boy (up).
3. He is called by a boy. 4. Away from the walls. 5. From-the-direction-of Rhodes. 6. Down from the wall. 7. The boy is with the master. 8. They are among friends. 9. He is on the wall. 10. And for this reason. 11. He speaks concerning the books. 12. A few of our men are speaking. 13. He speaks for his friends. 14. They are (§ 185) far away from the school (§ 221 b). 15. He is in the village.

*Use at least one preposition in each exercise. Study § 60.*

1. He sends Mark a book. 2. They are on the wall.
3. They lead the horses up on a hill. 4. Titus goes to the village (§ 5 g). 5. He puts the boys to flight. 6. The boys have in mind to call the master (§ 105). 7. Call the boys to the house, Titus. 8. They are far away from the house (§ 221 b). 9. Titus sends Theodorus a book. 10. Our friends are at the village. 11. They return home from the village. 12. The boy

<sup>1</sup> § 63 a.

<sup>2</sup> vicus -i, m.

<sup>3</sup> incidere, cf. §§ 197, 221 b.

goes with the horses. 13. Mark is one of them. 14. Not a few of the boys are in the school. 15. They rush<sup>1</sup> to arms. 16. He is (a boy) of unfriendly mind toward the Greeks (§ 62 g).

*Use no prepositions. For case forms see §§ 56, 60-2, 76.*

1. Give a book to Mark! 2. They ride on horses (§ 62 b). 3. Apollonius goes to Rhodes. 4. They return home. 5. Mark goes to Philippi. 6. He is in Cyprus. 7. They go (out) from home (§ 221 b). 8. Mark gives Theodorus a book. 9. They return at evening. 10. They are coming-back<sup>2</sup> from Rhodes. 11. They till the land with horses. 12. They wait for a year. 13. It is the master's son. 14. It is the house of Titus. 15. The field is next (§ 68 c, Ex.) to the village (3).

*Use one preposition with the accusative in each. § 57.*

1. Beyond the village. 2. In the eyes of Apollonius. 3. At my house. 4. At Titus' house. 5. In which direction are they going? 6. In sight of town. 7. They are wandering over the fields. 8. Because of the height of the walls.

*Use one preposition with the ablative in each. § 58.*

1. One of<sup>3</sup> them is returning. 2. There is a bridge over (on) the river. 3. One of the boys is going out from home. 4. In comparison with the books. 5. Not a few of the pupils are trying. 6. They wait-for<sup>4</sup> Titus in front of the walls. 7. I take Titus for a friend. 8. They go along with the master. 9. He is among the boys. 10. The master returns<sup>2</sup> ahead of the pupils. 11. In behalf of the barbarians.

<sup>1</sup> *currere*; cf. § 197.

<sup>2</sup> *reverti* like *loqui*, § 136; see § 182.

<sup>3</sup> See § 66 c.

<sup>4</sup> *expectare*.

**EXERCISE XV — Indefinite Numbers**

*Study § 64. Use prepositions in Nos. 14 and 16.*

1. How-many pupils are there? 2. There are many.  
3. They are going home. 4. They see horses. 5. The horses belong to Titus. 6. Titus sees several. 7. How many does Theodorus see? 8. He sees five horses. 9. The master sees just-as-many. 10. Mark sees as many as Titus. 11. The Gaul sees none. 12. How many are going? 13. Our (men) are going. 14. Titus takes as many as possible with him. 15. The majority wish to go. 16. Not-a-few of the boys ride on horses.

**EXERCISE XVI — Indefinite Pronouns (Masculine)**

*Study §§ 40, 65-6 and 108-10 masculine only. See § 74.*

*Use one preposition in each sentence (except 12, 13, 15, 16).*

1. The boys are wandering in the fields. 2. A-few are in the school. 3. Some prefer to remain (§ 128) in school. 4. Very few are going to the village. 5. The master goes with the boys. 6. They go to the fields. 7. She sees the boys go to school. 8. She sees her (people) go to the village. 9. They call their men into the house. 10. She sends her (friends) books (§ 5 f). 11. My-people are of friendly feeling toward Mark. 12. The good-men love horses. 13. Horses do not like bad-men. 14. The good are of friendly mind toward the bad. 15. Some praise Mark, others blame him. 16. The one praises Mark, the other (praises) Titus.

1. One praises one, another another. 2. Which one of the (two) boys blames Mark? 3. Neither-one blames Mark. 4. Neither (§ 66) Mark nor any one of the boys speaks. 5. Some blame one, others another. 6. The ones praise the master, the others blame him. 7. Nobody calls the pupils. 8. Who is ordering the boy to speak? 9. He alone is going home. 10. They alone return home (§ 182 b).

## EXERCISE XVII — First and Second Declension Nouns

NOTE. — All the nouns thus far given belong to the same class as *alumnus*, pl. *alumni*. First Declension nouns belong to the same class as our word *formula*, pl. *formulae* (borrowed from Latin). Neuter nouns of the Second Declension are of the same class as *stratum*, pl. *strata*. They have *-um* (rarely *-us*) in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular and *-a* in the same cases of the plural. Note that the ending *-a* occurs in the singular of the one class but in the plural of the other.

*Study § 77. Use no prepositions. Cf. §§ 56, 60.*

1. In Alexandria. 2. In Rhodes. 3. At Arpinum. 4. In Philippi. 5. From Syracuse. 6. At Leuctra. 7. He is Titus' son. 8. She is a daughter of Titus. 9. Arpinum is a town. 10. Son's and daughter's. 11. Town's. 12. The sons' and daughters'. 13. Towns'. 14. He goes to Philippi. 15. They go either<sup>1</sup> to Athens or<sup>1</sup> to Leuctra. 16. He goes to Arpinum. 17. They go to Rhodes. 18. According to a plan. 19. He goes out from Athens. 20. By the north wind.

<sup>1</sup> Use *aut . . . aut*: cf. § 66 a.

*Use one preposition in each. §§ 57-8.*

1. To the town. 2. Through towns and villages. 3. With sons and daughters. 4. Into the crowd. 5. Into camp. 6. Into the provinces. 7. Toward the provinces. 8. In-sight-of Arpinum. 9. Away from the camp. 10. Toward Athens. 11. In the towns. 12. To-a-point-near Philippi (§ 60).

NOTE. — To get the base of a noun of the First or Second Declension, drop *-i* or *-orum*, *-ae* or *-arum* from the *genitive*. Use the uncontracted Genitive Singular only to get the base. In writing Latin use the contracted form of the Genitive Singular, if any. Do not attempt to write the Nominative Singular without first making sure of the exact spelling; see §§ 6 c, 41-3. Each noun has its own set of endings. From the Nominative and Genitive given in the vocabulary, it can be determined which set of terminations a noun has.

*Study* §§ 59, 129, 135; *cf.* §§ 190 b, 191 d, 195 b, 196 d, 200 b, 201 d, 205 d, 206 d, 210 b, 211 d, 215 b.

1. For the sake of hearing. 2. For attacking. 3. Is necessary to try (*cf.* § 152 a). 4. He is ready to read. 5. He can read well. 6. Upon inquiring. 7. Upon taking. 8. By fleeing. 9. He is prepared to flee. 10. They wish to read. 11. To act is necessary. 12. It is time to act. 13. Time to see is not given. 14. Time to take arms is not given.

### EXERCISE XVIII — Time, Cause, Purpose, Manner, Respect

*Study* §§ 56, 6; 59; 74, 12, 15, 16, 18; 96 b, c. *See pp.* 31–2.

*Use no prepositions.* 1. To Aemilius. 2. To Aemilia. 3. In wisdom.<sup>1</sup> 4. In abundance.<sup>2</sup> 5. With resources.<sup>2</sup> 6. From care. 7. From Leuctra. 8. In an hour.<sup>3</sup> 9. For an hour (4). 10. For five hours (4). 11. To the inhabitants.<sup>4</sup> 12. Hour's. 13. Galba's.<sup>5</sup> 14. Girl's. 15. In the course<sup>6</sup> of an hour. 16. In the period<sup>6</sup> of a year. 17. In zeal.<sup>7</sup> 18. In two years. 19. According to the plan. 20. Wrongly. 21. He is praised for his diligence. 22. (Go) for grain. 23. (Start) for Rome.

*Use a preposition in each.* 1. In-the-eyes-of Aemilius. 2. In-the-care-of Aemilia (§ 57). 3. With Galba. 4. Between Aemilia and the maid.<sup>8</sup> 5. Beyond Rome. 6. On-this-side-of the camp (§ 57). 7. By a slave; by a maid. 8. About troops.<sup>2</sup> 9. From among the troops. 10. One of the poets (§ 66 c) is calling. 11. Few of the philosophers wish to go. 12. In-behalf-of the sons; in-behalf-of the daughters. 13. In the opinion of the crowd. 14. Carefully. 15. With diligence. 16. According to Paulus' plan. 17. To Aemilius. 18. Against a companion. 19. For the camp. 20. At Julius.

<sup>1</sup> cōsiliū.      <sup>2</sup> cōpia -ae, f.      <sup>3</sup> hōra -ae; f.      <sup>4</sup> incolā -ae, m.

<sup>5</sup> Galba -ae, m.      <sup>6</sup> spatium -ī, n.      <sup>7</sup> studium -ī, n.      <sup>8</sup> serva -ae, f.

*Study §§ 66 b, c and 120 a-e. Use words on pp. 28-9.*

*One preposition in each.* 1. One of the sons is calling. 2. Aemilia is calling one of the girls. 3. Two of the boys are at home. 4. They can see one of the towns. 5. He is called by one of (his) daughters. 6. They see the horses of two of the barbarians (§ 63). 7. Three of the towns are taken. 8. He can see three of the horses. 9. Thousands of barbarians are fighting with the Romans. 10. The master gives three of the boys books. 11. Titus is reading a book of one of his sons. 12. Mark gives one of the boys a book. 13. The camp is in-sight-of Leuctra. 14. They are ten miles away from the camp. 15. Both are coming from the village. 16. Either Lucius or Galba will call the boys to the house.

*Study §§ 67-8; cf. uses of words on pp. 31-2.*

1. Year before last. 2. Ten miles. 3. Ten miles away. 4. On that day. 5. He cannot read at all. 6. Twice in the course of a year. 7. Four times in a period of three years. 8. For a period of four days. 9. He cannot see at first. 10. He sees Aemilius for the first time at Arpinum. 11. Five times in the course of a year. 12. He calls again and again.

*Study §§ 70, 71 c; 72; 73 a-e; 74, 17 and 19.*

1. There is need of so much for the pupils. 2. How much of good is there to the book? 3. It is rated of very great (value). 4. He buys it at a very small (figure). 5. It is so much the interest of the pupils. 6. They take part in reading. 7. Slaves are for-the-most-part a protection to boys. 8. How much do they read? 9. They read as much as I. 10. How much better can Titus read? 11. Very little better. 12. The one reads too little, the other well enough. 13. There is nothing bad to him. 14. He is not alarmed at all.

## EXERCISE XIX — Indefinite Pronouns (Neuter)

Study §§ 71 a, b; 108 a, b; 109 a, 110, 111, 112.

1. What is of more (value)? 2. They hear nothing else.
3. The Greeks defend none of the towns; boys are a protection to the one, slaves to the other. 4. If there is any protection, he may tell them. 5. If any one knows anything, one may tell it. 6. What one hears, he may tell them. 7. How able are they? 8. Which of the towns is defended better? 9. They defend both, what they can. 10. We do not know whether they read or speak (§§ 137 c; 139; 143). 11. They neither read nor speak (§ 66). 12. They are ready for neither (thing).
13. It is permitted to read everything (that is) best.

## EXERCISE XX — The Agreement of Pronouns

NOTE. — Pronouns agree with the words for which they stand in gender and number. What determines their case?

*Express by words found in the text.*

*The earth* is not luminous; *it* is dark; the sun gives *it*<sup>1</sup> light, 6, 5. We choose *boys*; we select *two*; *they* are not far from us; we hear *them* speaking.<sup>2</sup> We see *a light*; *it* is called the sun, 4, 3. *The sun* is not flat; *it* looks globe-like, 4, 3. *The earth and moon* are dark; *they* are not luminous, 8, 2. What gives *them* light? The sun illuminates *them*, 7, 4. There are *two dippers*; and one of *them* is called the smaller, the other the larger, 14, 9. The second is *Auster*; and *it* starts from-the-direction-of the noonday-sun, 15, 7.

We call *the fourth* Zephyrus; *it* blows from the west, 15, 11. There are two poles; and one of *them* is called the North, the other the South Pole, 19, 9. *These regions* are cold; everything in *them* is frozen, 19, 11. The farmer plants *trees*, whose fruit

<sup>1</sup> Figures refer to pages and lines where pronouns are found.    <sup>2</sup> P. 24.

he will never see, 20, 21. He plants *trees*, *that-they* may profit others, 20, 22. There is *a school* at Rome; prominent men let their sons go to it, 26, 2; *in it* they learn Greek (things).

### EXERCISE XXI — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

*Study §§ 116 a-c; 138-9; 147 c.*

1. I call thee. 2. Thou callest me. 3. I urge that thou call (§ 188) us. 4. Give (§ 184) me the book. 5. They send me (§ 5f) books. 6. They are at my house (§ 57). 7. Who is at thy house? 8. He asks who is going (§ 143) with me. 9. You urge that we call Mark. 10. Whom (§ 110) do you call us? 11. Why does he order us to go? 12. A demand-is-made by you. 13. Which (§ 108) of you (two) blames us? 14. What one of us accuses you?

1. I call my (friends, § 64) to me. 2. I urge that thou call (§ 188) the boy to thee. 3. We request that he call the pupils to him. 4. He demands lands for himself. 5. He calls Titus to him. 6. They take<sup>1</sup> (their) sons with them. 7. We reproach<sup>2</sup> ourselves. 8. We take<sup>2</sup> the boys with us. 9. He forgets (§ 107 c) Mark's insult (2) to him (2). 10. They forget Titus' injury to me.<sup>3</sup> 11. He has<sup>4</sup> troops about him.

### EXERCISE XXII — The Imperfect and Perfect Tenses

*Study §§ 183-5. Translate past tenses by the Perfect.*

Where were you last year, Titus? You were at home (§ 60)? I was at thy house (§ 57). I could not see thee. Thou wast absent at-the-time. Wast thou not at Mark's house (§ 109 b)? There is (some one-) who knows (§ 137 c) where thou wast. Many are said to have been with thee. They did not fail

<sup>1</sup> *dūcunt*

<sup>2</sup> § 64.

<sup>3</sup> Use the genitive.

<sup>4</sup> *habet*.



thee (3). One is said to have been absent. Many do not know where thou wast (§ 143). Galba says many wish (§ 142 *a*) to find out.<sup>1</sup> I was with Galba. We were not far away. There were many with us. Thou couldst not see Galba. He could not see thee. Neither of us could see thee.

*Translate past tenses by the Imperfect. See §§ 144-5.*

I was at Arpinum year before last, boys. Doesn't Mark know where I was (§ 143)? He was in the camp. The camp was (§ 66 *c*) not far from town. And-if-he (§ 115 *c*) was in the town, he could see me often. Why (§ 114) did you fail me (3)? You could easily (§ 69) find out where I was. Galba will go away if he can. They however wish the boys to be at hand.

### EXERCISE XXIII — The Perfect, Active and Passive

NOTE. — To get the perfect stem of any verb, drop -I from the Perfect Indicative, Active, First Person, Singular. The Perfect Active of all verbs has the same endings as *fui* (§ 183 *b*). For the passive, see §§ 168, 171, 187, etc.; cf. §§ 99 and 101.

*rogāvi* I asked   *habui* I had   *dixi* I said   *cēpi* I took   *fui* I was  
*vetui* forbade   *vidi* saw   *lēgi* read   *fēcī* did   *vēni* came  
*vocāvi* called   *iussi* bade   *tuli* bore   *ivi*, *ii* went   *dedi* gave

1. I asked. 2. Thou hast called. 3. He forbade. 4. We have had. 5. You saw. 6. They have bidden. 7. I said. 8. Thou hast borne. 9. She has read. 10. We took. 11. You have done. 12. They have gone.<sup>1</sup> 13. I was. 14. Thou hast been. 15. He has come. 16. We came. 17. You have been giving. 18. They have been. 19. They have been absent. 20. I was able. 21. Thou hast been asking. 22. I have seen. 23. It has been going. 24. He has been reading. 25. We have often (§ 69) forbidden. 26. To have taken; to have seen; to have gone; to have given.

NOTE. — Rewrite changing to the Subjunctive. To the passive.

<sup>1</sup> Translate in four different ways.

**EXERCISE XXIV — The Third Declension**

*Study §§ 57-8, 78-81, 82 a-c. One preposition in each.*

1. With a guard. 2. As-for the wound. 3. Toward the mouth of the river. 4. Toward the country. 5. In-the-opinion-of the maiden. 6. To the judges. 7. Toward the ships. 8. In what direction? 9. Toward the sea. 10. Into river Arar. 11. Near Bibracte. 12. From the direction of Gades. 13. Because of the tax. On the sea.

*Use no prepositions.* 1. With a wound. 2. To the country (§ 74, 10). 3. To Bibracte. 4. From Gades. 5. On account of a wound. 6. By force. 7. By sea. 8. On the river Arar. 9. By clouds. 10. With oxen. 11. By walls. 12. At Gades. 13. In Bibracte. 14. To Gades. 15. Because of the tax.

**EXERCISE XXV — Nouns of all Declensions and Classes**

*Study §§ 81; 82 a-c; 145. Use words on pp. 51, 56.*

There is a house near by the river. A boy is going-up to the house. He is called Aemilius. He approaches the doorstep. On it (§ 119 *e*) he reads "Look-out-for the dog." Does he see the dog? Does it alarm him at all? There is a maiden near the entrance. She is a girl of nine years. Her-name-is Aemilia. She is Aemilius' sister. She calls him. She wishes her brother good-health. The brother hears his sister's voice. He comes to her. They talk. Then they run to the house.

**General Truths — Present Tenses** (*see pp. 52-4*)

With us (p. 31) the father is called the man-of-the-house. He rules the household. The house is a care to him. It is the father's (duty) to build a home, to provide all (things) of which there is need. It is the mother's (part) to look after the children. She is spoken-of-as a matron. Many things are a care to her.

The mother brings up her sons and daughters, makes bread, prepares food, keeps all (things) in order. Children obey their father, mother (and) elders; yield to them, bow to their will. It is necessary that children be obedient.

### **Actions Continued in the Past — The Imperfect (*pp. 51-2*)**

Among (p. 31) the Romans the father had the power of life and death over the mother, children (and) slaves. They led away captured (men) into slavery. It was permitted slaves however to buy back their freedom by serving.

There was a river in Latium. It was called the Liris. It flowed into the sea. Not far from the Liris was a plantation. It was a possession of Paulus who-was-a Roman citizen. The river Fibrenus flowed into the Liris. There was a villa near the river. It was Paulus' villa. Paulus was a farmer. He had possessions at either side of the river Fibrenus. There was a bridge over the river Liris. The depth of the water was very-slight. Some used-to-cross by-fording, others by the bridge.

Paulus was sitting in the atrium. He was talking with a Greek. The Greek was called Chilo. He was inquiring of him what there was new. Chilo was telling him all (things). The master was praising Chilo, because he looked-after the cattle. He was giving him instructions. He was equalizing the tasks of the work. He was assigning each-one a share of toil. He was deciding where each should go, what he should do on the next day.

### **Acts Finished in the Past<sup>1</sup> — Perfect Tenses**

There was too little water for the cattle. The slaves cared-for them. They drove them to the river Fibrenus. One of the slaves ran-away. Brennus saw him escape. He did not tell

<sup>1</sup> Occurring on a single occasion and not spoken of as repeated.

this to Chilo, the overseer. The latter spoke with the master Paulus. He made mention of Brennus. He ought to have paid<sup>1</sup> the penalty. The master forbade Chilo to punish him. Chilo, to be sure, being-a-Greek did not seem (a man) of good feeling toward Gauls.

EXERCISE XXVI — Agreement of Adjectives (§§ 83-9; 109 c)

**pauci, paucae, pauca, few<sup>2</sup> plērique, plēraeque, plēraque most<sup>3</sup>**

m.	m.	m.	m.	f.	f.
liber bonus		agricolae boni		plēraeque puellae	
a good book		of a good farmer		most (of the) girls	

1. He is a good (§ 91) son. 2. He is a good boy. 3. He is a good farmer. 4. It is our horse. 5. It is my book. 6. It is another's book. 7. It is our town. 8. It is our daughter. 9. It is our friend. 10. Aemilia is a good girl. 11. He sees our horse. 12. He calls few friends. 13. They are good sons. 14. It is our father. 15. He is a powerful friend. 16. Toward our camp. 17. Of most horses. 18. Of few horses. 19. Of our father. 20. Of my horse. 21. Of another's horse. 22. Of a good farmer. 23. He is a bad boy.

N. s. m.	N. s. m.	G. s. m.	G. s. m.	N. pl. m.	N. pl. m.
Galba	amicus	Libri	veteris	Agricolae amici	sunt
Galba (who is)	friendly	of an old book		farmers are friendly	

1. What sort of horse is it? 2. It is a good horse. 3. It is my horse. 4. A beautiful (§ 91) horse. 5. Does he see (§ 145) the beautiful horse? 6. What-kind-of-a book does he bring (§ 212)? 7. A good book. 8. He brings an old book. 9. He saw (§ 192) my books. 10. He brings such a book as Mark's (is). 11. What-sort-of farmer is he? 12. Friendly. 13. What sort of town? 14. Such a town as Arpinum.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> dare débuit.    <sup>2</sup> Place before their nouns.    <sup>3</sup> Rewrite in the plural.

*Write the following expressions in the Nominative. See § 42.*

1. Old customs. 2. My friends. 3. Old trees. 4. Other's trees. 5. Old wounds. 6. My wounds. 7. Old wars.<sup>1</sup> 8. Old wrongs (§ 96 l). 9. My wrongs. 10. Equal wrongs. 11. Equal dangers.<sup>2</sup> 12. Powerful races.<sup>3</sup> 13. Very powerful tribes. 14. Great dangers.

NOTE. — Rewrite the above in the Nominative Singular, Genitive Singular, Genitive Plural, Accusative Singular, and Ablative.

### EXERCISE XXVII — Comparison of Adjectives

*Place the adjectives tantus and quantus before their nouns, the others after their nouns. Use words on pp. 38–9. Write each expression in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.*

1. A wide river. 2. A broad field. 3. A shorter route. 4. A narrow way.<sup>4</sup> 5. A broader field. 6. A short route. 7. A low hill. 8. A high mountain. 9. A high tree. 10. A short person.<sup>5</sup> 11. A longer route. 12. A shorter way. 13. A very long march. 14. A rather easy route. 15. Very great care (§ 96). 16. Enormous size. 17. So great height.

NOTE. — Rewrite Nos. 1 to 15 above in the plural.

### EXERCISE XXVIII — Irregular Adjectives (§§ 40, 108–9, 120)

*Write each in the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases.*

1. The son alone. 2. The daughter alone. 3. All Gaul. 4. The whole camp. 5. Any town. 6. No island. 7. Which thing? 8. Neither horse. 9. Either girl. 10. Any men. 11. The other (man). 12. Others. 13. The other daughter.

NOTE. — Rewrite in the plural.

<sup>1</sup> bellum, -i, n. <sup>2</sup> periculum, -i, n. <sup>3</sup> gens, gentis, f. <sup>4</sup> via, -ae, f. <sup>5</sup> homo, hominis, m.

EXERCISE XXIX — Adjective Forms of Verbs

*Study §§ 93-104. Write each in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.*

1. A boy (who is) trying. 2. A maiden (who is) waiting.
3. (One who is) reading. 4. A crowd (that is) departing.
5. The sun (when) rising. 6. A (thing that is) extolling.
7. A slave fleeing. 8. (He) going. 9. A (thing) demanded.<sup>1</sup>
10. (He when) ready. 11. (She though) terrified. 12. A (man who had been) taken. 13. A town (that was) fortified.
14. A legion (that was) best prepared. 15. A less impeded route.
16. A thing<sup>2</sup> heard. 17. (He) having delayed.
18. (She) having spoken. 19. A boy having followed. 20. A crowd going to follow.
21. A maiden (when) going to go out. 22. A judge (who was) going to grant.
23. A (thing that ought) to be granted. 24. A ship (that is) to be awaited.
25. A number to be divided. 26. A town (that ought) to be fortified.
27. A river (that ought) to be crossed (§ 215 a, c).

NOTE. — Rewrite in the plural.

EXERCISE XXX — Expressions of Purpose, Result, etc.

*Write each sentence six different ways. § 159.*

1. Envoys come to seek peace. 2. They send (a man) to call the boys.
3. They come to Rome to ask aid. 4. He sends envoys to seek auxiliaries.<sup>3</sup>
5. They send troops to devastate<sup>4</sup> the fields. 6. Soldiers<sup>5</sup> are called to defend<sup>6</sup> the town.

*Write each sentence one or two ways. §§ 149, 151.*

1. They are not so brave as to try this. 2. No one is so brave that he would not be frightened.
3. They had done it to frighten him. 4. There are many that are easily frightened.
5. There is no one but is frightened occasionally.

<sup>1</sup> Neuter. <sup>2</sup> rēs. § 81. <sup>3</sup> auxilia, -ōrum, n. <sup>4</sup> vāstāre. <sup>5</sup> milēs, militis. <sup>6</sup> dēfendere.

## EXERCISE XXXI — The Indicative and Subjunctive

Review §§ 136-40; study §§ 137 c, 138 a-c, 147, 149, 156.

## Present Tenses

*He is going*; they urge *that he go*. *Who is he?* I know *who he is*. *They try*; he recommends *that they try*. If he is away, he does not hear it. If he *should be away*, he *would not hear* it. *He hears*; they speak so, *that he hears*. He *can not* read the book. He *would read*, if he *should be able*.

## Imperfect Tenses (§§ 171-2)

*He was trying*; they urged *that he should try*. *Where was he?* They knew *where he was*. If he *was present*,<sup>1</sup> he *heard* it. If he *were present*, he *would hear* it. He *kept-hearing* (it). It *was said in-such-a-way* that he *heard* it. He *could not* read. He *would*<sup>2</sup> read it, if he *could*.

## Perfect Tenses

*Where was he?* They told Titus *where he was*. *He heard* (it); it *was said in-such-a-way* that he *heard* (it). If he *was away*, he *could not* hear it. If he *should be away*, he *would not hear* it. He *would tell* Mark, if he *should be able*.

## Pluperfect and Imperfect

*He had been away*; he *had not heard* (it). If he *had been present*, he *would have heard* it. *Where had they been?* No one told Titus *where they had been*. He *had been able* to tell Mark. He *had not been willing*. He *could have told*<sup>3</sup> Mark, if he *had been willing*. He *did not tell* us, because he *was not willing*. Although (§ 115 b) he *had heard* it, he *would not tell*. If we *had seen* you, we *should have called* you.

<sup>1</sup> Use a form of *adesse*; cf. § 185. <sup>2</sup> Subjunctive, see § 186. <sup>3</sup> = *would have been able* (to tell).

## EXERCISE XXXII — Variations of Expressions

*Study the sections referred to with each group. Express in Latin as found in the text or reference given.*

§§ 56, 6; 57-8; 74, 15; 224. Because they are so great a distance away 10, 8 and 17.<sup>1</sup> Therefore 15, 5. By reason of its very nature. On account of evenness 17, 5, 8. Suffer for lack of water. Suffer with thirst 21, 17. (And) for this reason; (and) on account of this fact 20, 8; 35, 10; 47, 18; 69, 17; 75, 9. For the same reason 49, 6. For my sake 57, 21. Why? 57, 4, 21; § 115 c.

§§ 56, 6; 74, 16. In shape, 3. In all respects, 17. In order, 28.

§§ 56, 6; 62 b; 71 c; 182. With its heat 21, 3. By the rays 7, 4. With its own light 9, 6. Of or by its own weight 18, 4. By other bodies' light 11, 9. With fruit 22, 5. With frost 22, 9. With clouds 22, 15. With ice 23, 9. With snow 23, 14. With citizenship 24, 6. On horses; on horseback 24, 10. By three names 25, 16. With masters 26, 9; with the eyes 30, 10. In hours; in days; in months; in years 31, 2. By the month and day 32, 3. With air 33, 14. In miles 38, 11. By fording; on bridges 39, 14, 15. By the width 40, 4. In the left hand 47, 9. By machinery 49, 20. By a rapid journey 50, 20.

§ 62 a. With them 16, 3. With horses 20, 19. With boys 24, 10. Along with them 26, 21. With our own measures 26, 24. With many 48, 15. With him 50, 16; 67, 11. With carts 51, 7. With her 55, 20; 58, 5. With the rest 58, 2; with the Greeks 58, 9; with this slave 58, 13; with Theodorus 58, 21. With his father and Crassus 67, 16; with his father as-he-returns 71, 16. With his young son 67, 8, 9.

§§ 56, 6; 96 b. In the right proportions 30, 8. With greater pains 47, 4. Slowly and with great care 48, 3. With great diffi-

<sup>1</sup> Numbers refer to pages and lines.



culty 49, 19. In fair shares 51, 23. Of a sudden 55, 6. With great noise 55, 9. According to what fashion dressed 57, 18. As quickly as possible 60, 3. With great danger 63, 3. According to his own notion 63, 17. With fitting words 65, 17. With a king's taste 67, 8. In a hoarse language 71, 8. In a louder voice 71, 11. With a great fuss made 72, 14. Without wrong doing 87, 20. In secret 91, 22. Without offense 92, 19. In a low voice 55, 21.

§§ 56, 2, 6; 62 *g*. (Some are of one color) others of another color 30, 9. Of the same length 35, 7. Of three hours 35, 18. To the depth of many thousand feet 39, 19. Of a smaller body; of shorter stature 40, 12. Of good feeling toward Gauls 52, 4. Of good mind toward him 55, 15. A girl of nine years 55, 19. Of enormous size 59, 12. Of any favor (in the eyes of his father at that time) 60, 16. Of good disposition toward him 65, 18. A boy of eleven years stood 70, 17. He would have appeared to us (a boy) of fifteen years. He was of so large limbs 70, 19. Was of great favor 76, 27.

§§ 56, 2; 72. More (of) heat 20, 3. Less (of) light 20, 6. Two thousand books 29, 13. One fourth of a day 31, 24. As much of trouble as 34, 16. More of trouble 36, 17. Length is estimated in miles 38, 16. One half (of) a pace 40, 14. What is there (of) remainder? Nothing (of) remainder 43, 16. What good or beautiful 45, 11. Something new 46, 7. Some business 46, 12. What-amount of a book 49, 18. What new 51, 17. What affair? 60, 10. No annoyance 61, 7. Any hindrance 62, 8. A large part of the public land 63, 11.

§§ 56, 6; 94-6. With light absent; (when) light (is) absent 30, 3. The sun (when) setting 35, 13. In counting days; when counting days 36, 9. And-upon-this being done; and (as soon as) this (is) done 43, 4. When reading-is-being-done 47, 9. During the night 6, 5; 14, 2. During Caesar and Bibulus consuls 57, 3. On the fourth day 31, 16. On these things having

been found out 59, 14. Upon this message being given 62, 11. Upon Aemilius requesting it 65, 16. With Caesar unwilling; (if) Caesar (is) unwilling 86, 5. And-with it removed 87, 5. Upon the Aeduans promising grain 89, 6.

§ 96 c. According to the custom; by the method 50, 2. According to the custom of Greeks 64, 18. By what method 31, 5. Of his own accord 64, 9. According to his own notion 63, 17. According to<sup>1</sup> his custom; according to her custom; according to their custom (§ 96 c).

§ 56, 4; 68 a, b. How much they differ 34, 21. Differ a great deal from ours 40, 9. Advance more or farther every-day 45, 6. Writes a great deal 50, 6. Pleases us little 51, 10. Not at all 57, 13. Do you understand at all? 57, 18. Are as far apart as the length of a man can occupy of space 59, 8. For the most part 69, 7.

Teaches them many (things) 34, 5. (We) are taught the most important tricks 43, 4. Are taught to read 45, 2. Asks me my name (§ 155). Ask the Aeduans (for) grain 90, 19.

§§ 5 j; 56, 6; 69. More than five miles 50, 21. Longer than a year 70, 13. More than five miles 90, 13. Was shorter than the one that we use 40, 11. They stepped shorter than we 40, 13. The Romans were of shorter stature than we (are).

§§ 5 e; 105-6. There is weight to all things. Each has its own weight 42, 2, 3. Each (thing) has its own color. Blue (belongs) to the sky. Gold has a yellow color. There are different-colored rays to light 30. There is a golden color to the fields 21. (There is) only one name to most Greeks 25. We have in mind 24. There are thirty days to November 31. There is no measure to space 33. For reading (persons) there is access 45. A name belonged to the boy Arm'nius 71.

<sup>1</sup> More than one way.

**EXERCISE XXXIII—The Rendering of English Prepositions**

*Study the sections referred to with each group.*

**On.** §§ 56-62; 74, 18. On the ground 19, 12. On horses; on foot 24, 10. On high mountains 23, 7. On the seventh day 32, 3. On no side 33, 10. On the book 47, 13. On the earth 3, 2; 42, 7. On itself 42, 12. On the upper side 70, 7. On inquiring 82, 6. On all Gaul 84, 6. On them 101, 10.

**Over.** §§ 56, 3, 6; 57-8. Over the fields 21, 5. (Over) the earth 23, 14. Over this thing 85, 10. (Boast) over this victory 83, 5. Over this river 86, 4. Above this number 29, 13.

**To.** §§ 60, 159. To-day 10, 11. To-morrow 10, 13. To air 18, 3. To the fields 20, 17; 21, 12. To Arpinum 24, 8. To school 25, 13. To it 26, 2. To Italy 26, 15. To each (thing) 30, 4. To these measures 32, 16. To all space 33, 7. To the depth 39, 19. To their body 40, 1. To establish peace 84, 16. To go out 84, 5. To any one 64, 20; 88, 5. Till the last day 31, 17.

**For.** §§ 56-60. For rest 12, 10. For the cattle 21, 9. For themselves. For winter 21, 11. For lack of water 21, 16. For each day 22, 7. For Rome 26, 10. For us 26, 21. For many years 26, 13. (For) great use. For reading the books 34, 8. For width 41, 8. For example 43, 11. For writing 49, 10. For-what-place 51, 24; cf. 119 *d*. For my sake 57, 21. As for Paulus (§ 57). For him 64, 11. For his age 70, 19.

**About.** §§ 57-8. About autumn; about their hearth 22, 1, 17. About this matter 34, 14. About doubling 29, 1. At about the twelfth hour 64, 21. About ten (§ 57).

**Of.** §§ 56, 62 *g*, 66 *c*. Of which 14, 9; 19, 9. (Cleared) of leaves 22, 12. (Treats) of numbers 43, 2. Of measuring; of measuring circles 41, 11, 15. Of one foot 39, 6. Of two hundred feet 48, 21. Of a white color 30, 13. (Full) of air 33, 14.

## VOCABULARY

Where the uses or peculiarities of words are more important than the mere meaning, reference is made to sections of the appendix where they are treated. Certain proper names are purposely omitted in order to allow the student to master them by observation as directed in §§ 45, 55c. The nominative case of such nouns should be used to render them in English, unless they are found in an anglicized form in headlines or in the appendix.

Some words not found in the text are given to illustrate the form or meaning of others.

The following abbreviations are used: Ab., Abl. *ablative*; Ac., Acc. *accusative*; adj. *adjective*; App. *appendix*; B. G. *Gallie War*; cf. *compare*; dir. *direct*; Eng. *English*; f., fem. *feminine*; Futp. *future perfect*; Imp. *imperfect*; Imv. *imperative*; Ind. *indicative*; indir. *indirect*; m., mas. *masculine*; n., neu. *neuter*; o., obj. *object*; Part. *participle*; P. P. *perfect participle*; Plup. *pluperfect*; sing. *singular*; Sub. *subjunctive*; s., subj. *subject*; w. *with*.

For explanation of other signs see § 230, page 280.

ā, ab, abs 58; 62d; 220, 1

ab-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, in 4;  
219, 2

ab-dūcō, ab-dūcere, ab-dūxī, ab-  
ductus *lead away*

ab-eō, ab-īre, -īi, -itus *go away*

ab-horreo, ab-horrere, ab-horruī  
*shrink from*

abs-tineō, abs-tinere, abs-tinuī,  
-tentus 220, 1

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, ā-futūrus  
185, ā or ab 6; absēns 94b  
ac 66, 69

ac-cēdō, ac-cedere, ac-cessī, -ces-  
sus *ap-proach, come near, be  
added*, ad 4; 220, 2; 221b

ac-celerō, ac-celerare *hasten*

ac-cidō, ac-cidere, -cidi 3; 95

ac-cipio, ac-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus  
*receive, accept, learn*

ac-clivis, -e *upward sloping*

ac-commodō, ac-commodare *ad-  
just*

ac-currō, -currere, -curri, -cursus  
*run to or up to* ad 4

ac-cūsō, ac-cūsare 4; 74, 4

acer, ācris, ācre *sharp, active,  
spirited*; ācritē *sharply*;  
acerbus, -a, -um *bitter*; aciēs,  
aciēi f. *edge; line (of battle)*

ad (w. Acc.) §§ 57, 220, 2

ad-dō, ad-dere, -didī, -ditus *put  
beside, give to, add* 3p, 4t

ad-dūcō, ad-dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-  
tus *lead on, bring to, induce*

ad-eō, ad-īre, -īi, -itus *go to,  
get at*; aditus, -ūs m. *a going  
to, an approach, access*

ad-hibeō, -hibere, -hibuī, -hibi-  
tus *have at hand or present*

**ad-hūc** *up to this* 119d

**ad-mīror**, **-mīrārī**, —, **-mīrātus**  
*wonder at* 4

**adolēsoō**, **adolēscere**, **adolēvī**,  
**adultus** *grow up*; **adolēscēns**,  
**-entis** *young (man)*

**ad-orior**, **ad-orīrī**, —, **ad-ortus**  
*rise up against, attack*

**ad-sum**, **ad-esse**, **ad-fuī**, **ad-**  
**futūrus** *be present, be at*  
*hand*

**adventus**, **-ūs m.** *a coming to*

**ad-vertō**, **-vertere**, **-verti**, **versus**  
*turn toward*; **animum ad-**  
**vertere** or **animadvertere** *turn*  
*attention to, notice* 4; **adversus**  
*turned towards*; *facing, op-*  
*posed, unfavorable* 3; **adversus**  
**w. Acc.** *against*

**aedēs**, **-is f.** *building*; *temple*;  
**(pl.) house**; **aedi-ficō**, **-āre**  
*build a house, build*; **aedi-**  
**ficiūm -ī n.** *building*

**aeger**, **-gra**, **-grum** *sick*; **aegrē**  
*with difficulty*; *hardly*.

**aequus**, **-a**, **-um** *level, even, equal*;  
*fair, kindly*; **aequum est** *it is*  
*fair*; **aequē (ac)** *equally, as*  
*well (as)*; **aequitās aequi-**  
**tātis f.** 43; **aequor**, **-oris n.** 41;  
**aequāre** *equal*

**aes**, **aeris n.** *copper, bronze*;  
*money*; **aes aliēnum (another's**  
**money), debt**

**aestās**, **aestātis f.** *summer*

**aestimō**, **-āre** 73; **ex-istimāre**  
*reason out, think, judge*

**aetās**, **-ātis f.** *age, time of life*

**aethēr**, **-is m.** 51, *ether, a very*  
*light, colorless and attenuated*  
*substance thought to pervade*

*all other substances and*  
*space so far as known.*

**af-ferō**, **ad-ferre**, **at-tulī**, **al-**  
**lātus** *bring to, carry to*

**af-ficiō**, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**  
*do to, affect, visit with*

**affinitās**, **-ātis f.** *relationship (by*  
*marriage), affinity*

**ager**, **agri** 41; **agri-cola**, **-ae m.**  
*(landsmen) farmer, peasant*

**ag-gredior**, **ag-gredi**, —, **ag-**  
**gressus** 219, 2; 220, 2

**agmen**, **-minis n.** *drove, army on*  
*march*

**agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **actus** 97–8; 102–  
4; 197; *drive, carry on, do, act,*  
*discuss, treat*; **grātiās agere**  
*render thanks*; **agitō**, **agitāre**  
*keep driving, pursue, hound*;  
**ad-igere** *drive to, hurl*

**albus**, **-a**, **-um** *dead white* 223

**aliquis (aliquī)**, **aliqua**, **aliquid**  
**(aliquid)** *some, any* p. 182

**aliquot** *some, several*; **aliquotiēns**  
*several times* 64; 120g

**alius**, **-a**, **-um** 40, 65, 103, 117;  
**alius atque** or **ac** *other than*;  
**aliter** 69; **aliās** p. 183; **aliō**  
p. 182; **alibi** *elsewhere*; **ali-**  
**unde** p. 183; **aliēnus**, **-a**,  
**-um** 109c; *strange, foreign, un-*  
*favorable*; **aes aliēnum n.**  
*debt*

**alō**, **alere**, **aluī**, **alitus** or **altus**  
*feed, support, raise*; **altus**, **-a**,  
**-um** 92; **altum n.** *high sea, deep*  
*(sea)*; **altē** *highly, deeply*;  
**altitūdō**, **-dinis f.** 62g, 92

**alter**, **altera**, **alterum** 40, 65, 109,  
120

**ambō**, **-ae**, **-ō** 55a note

**ā-mittō, ā-mittere, -misi, -mis-**  
*let go away, lose; send away*  
**amō, amāre** 97, 107; **amor,**  
**-ōris m.** *love*; **amicus, -a, -um**  
 91; **amicē** *in a friendly way*;  
**amicitia, -ae f.** 91  
**am-plector, am-plecti, —, am-**  
**plexus** *fold or wrap around,*  
*embrace, surround*; **amplexus,**  
**-ūs m.** *embrace*  
**amplus, -a, -um** *large, spacious;*  
*splendid*; **amplius** *more (of*  
*distance or number)*; **amplē**  
*largely, on a large scale*  
**an** see **utrum** 71  
**an-ceps, -cipitis** *two-headed;*  
*double, doubtful*  
**angustus, -a, -um** 92; **angus-**  
**tiae, -arum** 92; *defile, narrows*  
**animus, -i** *spirit, feeling, mind;*  
*courage, high spirits*; **animad-**  
**vertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-**  
**sus** *turn the mind to; notice,*  
*observe, attend to, punish in* 4  
**annus, -i** 74, 17; **annuus, -a,**  
**-um** *for-a-year, yearly, annual*  
**ante** 57; **ante . . . quam** 69;  
**ant-eā** 69; **antiquus, -a, -um**  
*ancient, old time, former*  
**ante-ponō, ante-pōnere, -posui,**  
**-positus** *put ahead of* 3 and 4  
**a-periō, a-perire, a-perui, a-per-**  
**tus** *(get from) uncover, open*;  
**apertus, -a, -um** *open, un-*  
*covered*  
**ap-pellō, ap-pellāre** *call (to),*  
*call upon, appeal to*  
**ap-petō, -petere, -petivi, -petitus**  
*seek for*  
**ap-propinquō, -propinquāre** *draw*  
*near to, approach*

**Aprīlis, -e of April** 109c  
**apud** 57  
**aqua, -ae f.** *water*  
**Arar** 79  
**ara, -ae, f.** *altar*  
**arbitror, arbitrāri, —, arbitrātus**  
*serve as judge; consider* 181;  
**arbitr-ium, -i n.** *notion, judg-*  
*ment*  
**arbor, arboris f.** *tree*  
**arcessō, arcessere, -ivi, -itus**  
*summon, invite, send for*  
**ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsi, ārsus** *blaze;*  
*glow*; **ārdor, -ōris m.** *a burning*  
**āreō, ārēre** *dry up, wither*; **āri-**  
**dus, -a, -um** *dry* 223  
**arma, -ōrum n.** 44, 60; **armō,**  
**armāre** *arm, equip*  
**arō, arāre** *plow, till*  
**ar-ripiō, ar-ripere, -ripiui, -reptus**  
*seize upon, snatch* 3p, 4t  
**ars, artis f.** *skill, art, trick*  
**a-scendō, a-scendere, -scendi,**  
**-scēnsus** 219, 2; 220, 2;  
**ascēnsus, -ūs m.** *ascend*  
**a-sciscō, a-sciscere, -scivi, -scitus**  
*take to, adopt* 3 and 4  
**asper, aspera, asperum** *rough,*  
*harsh, bitter, rugged*  
**as-sentiō, as-sentire, -sēnsi,**  
**-sēnsus** *agree (to), assent*  
**at** *but, but yet* cf. 66  
**āter, ātra, ātrum** *(dull) black,*  
*dark*  
**atque or ac** 66, 69; **simul atque**  
*as soon as* 224  
**ātrium, -i m.** *reception room,*  
*atrium, a main hall of a Roman*  
*house*  
**at-tingō, at-tingere, -tigi, -tāctus**  
 219, 3 **ad + tangō**

- at-tribuō, at-tribuere, -tribui, -tributus assign to 220, 2
- auctor, -ōris m. originator, producer, author; auctoritās, -ātis authority, power, influence
- audeō, audēre, —, ausus 94b; 100; audāx, audāx, audāx Gen. audācis 85; audācter 91; audācia, -ae boldness, daring, recklessness
- audiō, audire 98, 122, 136, 207
- au-ferō, au-ferre, abs-tuli, ablātus 220, 1; 180-1; cf. 136, 142
- augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus increase
- aurum, -i m. money, gold
- aut 66a, b
- autem (never stands first in a sentence) moreover, but, however
- auxilium, -i support, assistance; pl. auxiliaries (augeō)
- ā-vertō, ā-vertere, -verti, -versus 220, 1; avert; āversus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile
- avus, -i m. grand-father; avunculus, -i maternal uncle
- bellum, -i m. war; bellō, bellāre (make) war; bellicōsus, -a, -um warlike
- bene 69; bene-ficium, -i service, kindness; benignus, -a, -um kindly, friendly
- bis 67; binī, -ae, -a 120; bi-duum, -i n. 68; bi-ennium, -i n. 68 (annus)
- bonus, -a, -um 64, 70, 91; melior, -ius 91; optimus, -a, -um 91
- bracchium, -i n. fore-arm, arm
- brevis, -e 88, 92; brevitās, -ātis f. 92; breviter shortly
- cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsus fall; be slain; cāsus, -ūs m. fall, chance, accident, case
- caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus cause to fall, fell, cut, kill, slay; caedēs, -is f. killing; cf. nūbēs 79c
- caelum -i n. air; sky
- campus, -i m. plain, field
- candeō, candēre be white, glow; candidus, -a, -um shining, white; candor, -ōris m. whiteness; incendere set on fire
- canis, -is m. dog
- cantus, -ūs m. singing
- capiō, capere, cēpi, captus 97, 98, 102, 104, 127, 136, 220, 5; captus, -ūs m. a taking, idea
- caput, capitis n. 82; anceps, ancipitis two-headed
- carcer, -is m. prison
- carrus, -i m. 149f
- cārus, -a, -um dear
- casa, -ae hut
- castra 62f, 66b; castellum, -i n. little camp, fort, redoubt
- causa, -ae f. cause, reason 59; case; ac-cūsāre bring case against, accuse
- caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus take care, be cautious — (of or that) 4 or nē w. Sub.
- cōdō, cōdere, cessi, cessus move, step, go away, yield, retreat 97
- celer, -is, -e 74, 1; celeritās, -ātis f. swiftness, rapidity; celeriter quickly

centum 120; p. 29; centuriō, -ōnis m. *commander* (of hundred), *centurion*  
 cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus *separate, distinguish, see*  
 certus, -a, -um *certain, sure; certiōrem facere* 155a; p. 46  
 cervus, -i m. *stag, buck*  
 cēterus, -a, -um *other, the rest*  
 cibus, -i m. *food; cibāria, -ōrum n. food stuffs, (ground) meal*  
 cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctus 181b; p. 1  
 circu-eō, circu-īre 220, 3; circu-itus, -ūs *a going around, circuit, detour; circus, -i m. circle, ring; circus, games; circum* 57, 220, 3; *circiter* 57; *circinus, -i m. 26, compasses*  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus 3 and 4 or 4 and 6; 220, 3  
 circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus *pour around*  
 circum-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus *come around, surround* 4  
 cis or citrā 57; ceterior, -ōris *on this side, hither, nearer*  
 civis, -is m. *citizen; civitās, -tātis f. citizenship; state*  
 clāmō, clāmāre *shout; clāmor, -ōris m. outcry, shout*  
 clārus, -a, -um *clear, bright*  
 Claudius, -a, -um *Claudian, of the Claudian family*  
 coepī, coepisse, coeptus 123  
 co-erceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus *shut together; restrain, check*  
 cognōmen, -inis n. *surname, name*  
 co-gnōscō, co-gnōscere, co-gnōvī,

co-gnitus *become thoroughly acquainted, learn; Perf. know* 4  
 cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, cōactus 98, 103, 121, 219, 4; cōgitō, -āre *think*  
 cohors, cohortis f. *cohort*  
 co-hortor, -hortārī 147e  
 collega, -ae m. *associate in office*  
 col-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus *gather*  
 collis, -is m. *hill*  
 col-locō, -locāre *place, arrange; nūptum collocāre send to marry*  
 col-loquor, -loquī, —, -locūtus 220, 4; colloquium, -i n. *interview*  
 collum, -i n. *neck*  
 colō, colere, colui, cultus *till, cultivate, cherish, worship; incolere dwell in, live*  
 comb-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus 220, 4  
 com-memōrō, com-memorāre *speak of, call to one's attention*  
 com-meō, com-meāre (ad) *go back and forth (to) visit, go to; commeātus, -ūs m. supplies; trip*  
 com-mittō, com-mittere, -misi, -missus *join together, do, allow* 3p, 4t or ut w. Sub.  
 com-moveō, com-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus *startle, alarm* 98  
 commūnis, -e *common, general*  
 commūtātiō, -ōnis f. *a change*  
 com-parō, com-parāre 220, 4  
 com-periō, com-perīre, com-perī, com-pertus *find out, learn*  
 com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus *fill completely, fill up*  
 com-plūrēs, -plūrium *several*



cōn-cēdō, cōn-cēdere, cōn-cessi,  
cōn-cessus 102, 104

cōn-cidō, cōn-cidere, -cidi *fall  
flat, collapse*

cōn-cidō, cōn-cidere, cōn-cidi,  
-cismus *cut down or to pieces*

concilium, -i n. *meeting, council*;  
conciliāre *win (over), get by  
asking*

cōn-diciō, -ōnis f. *terms*

cōn-dōnō, -āre *give up, for-give,  
pardon*

cōn-dūcō, cōn-dūcere, -dūxi,  
-ductus *bring together; hire*

cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, -tuli, -lātus  
82, 104, 155; sē cōnferre *take  
self*

cōnfēstim *promptly, with haste*

cōn-ficiō, cōn-ficere, cōn-fēci,  
-fectus 98, 102, 219, 3; 220, 4

cōn-fidō, cōn-fidere, —, fisus  
*trust firmly, rely on 3 or 6*

cōn-firmō, -firmāre *make firm,  
strengthen; assure, encourage*

cōn-fligō, -figere, -fixi, -flictus  
*dash together, fight, struggle*

cōn-gredior, -gredi, —, gressus  
*come together, meet cum 6*

cōn-iciō, cōn-icere, cōn-iēcī, con-  
iectus *hurl, throw at in 4*

cōn-iungō, cōn-iungere, cōn-  
iūnxi, -iūnctus *join together,  
unite*

coniūnx, -ugis *consort, spouse,  
husband or wife*

cōn-iūrō, -iūrāre *swear together*;

coniūrātiō, -ōnis f. *conspiracy*

cōnor, cōnārī 97, 100, 102, 122,  
127, 191; cōnātus, -ūs m.  
157

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um *of same*

*blood; kindred; pl. mas. kins-  
men*

cōn-sciscō, cōn-sciscere, -scivī,  
-scitus; sibi mortem cōnscis-  
cere *take or bring death on self*

cōn-scribō, cōn-scribere, -scripsi,  
-scriptus 226; patrēs cōn-

scripti *enrolled fathers, senators*

cōn-sentiō, cōn-sentire, cōn-  
sēnsi, cōn-sēnsus 156 cum 6

cōn-sequor, cōn-sequi, —, cōn-  
secutus *follow up, overtake,  
attain*

cōn-servō, cōn-servāre *preserve,  
put away, save (for 3 or in  
4)*

cōn-sido, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessus  
*settle, take position, encamp*

cōnsilium, -i n. 77; *counsel,  
advice, wisdom*

cōn-sistō, cōn-sistere, cōn-stiti  
*take a position; consist; halt*

cōn-spiciō, cōn-spicere, cōn-  
spexi, -spectus *catch sight of,  
see; cōnspectus, -ūs m. view,  
sight; cōnspicārī espy, catch  
sight of*

cōn-stituō, cōn-stituere, -stitui,  
-stitutus *put together, establish,  
build, set up, station; decide*

cōn-stō, cōn-stāre, -stiti *stand  
with, be consistent, agree, be  
complete, consist; cōnstat it is  
established, known, or certain;*

cōnstanter *consistently, uni-  
formly*

cōn-suēscō, cōn-suēscere, cōn-  
suēvi, -suētus *become accus-  
tomed; cōnsuēvisse or cōn-  
suēsse be accustomed; cōn-  
suētūdō, -inis f. 146*

**cōsul**, -is m. 95-6; **cōsulāris**,  
-e *consular*; *exconsul*; **cōn-  
sulātus**, -ūs *consulship*; **cōn-  
sultum**, -i *decree*; **cōn-sulō**,  
-sulere, -suluī, -sultum (*take*)  
*counsel, ask* 4p, 6t

**cōn-sūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpsi,  
-sūptus *use up*

**con-tendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -ten-  
tum *stretch with, struggle with,*  
*strain, struggle to, make haste*  
**Inf. o**; *insist-on* 4. See 154

**con-tineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus  
62f, 63, 97, 98, 154, 219, 3;  
(terra) **continēns**, -ntis f.  
*mainland*

**contrā** prep. with acc. *against*;  
**contrārius**, -a, -um *opposite*

**contumēlia**, -ae f. 107

**con-veniō**, -venire, -vveni, -ven-  
tus *came together, meet, as-  
semble*; *convenient it is meet,*  
*fitting, or agreed* **Inf. s**; **con-  
ventus**, -ūs m. *meeting, con-  
ference*; *court*

**con-vocō**, -vocāre *call together*

**cōpia**, -ae f. *supply, abundance,*  
*opportunity*; pl. *forces, troops*;  
*supplies, resources*; **cōpiōsus**,  
-a, -um *well supplied*

**cornū**, -ūs *horn*; *wing* (of army)  
81

**corpus**, corporis n. *body*

**cōs.** = **cōsulibus**

**cotidiē** *every day*: **cotidiānus**,  
-a, -um *daily, ordinary*

**crassus**, -a, -um *thick*; **crassi-  
tūdō**, -inis f. *thickness*

**crēber**, **crēbra**, **crēbrum** *thick,*  
*close, frequent*

**crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, -crēdi-

tus *believe, trust* 3 or 3p, 4t;  
219, 2

**creō**, **creāre**, 223; **crēscere**,  
**crēvi**, **crētus** 223

**cruciātus**, -ūs m. *torture, torment*  
**crūdēlis**, -is, -e *cruel*; **crūdēlitās**,  
-ātis 94b *crudeliter cruelly*

**cuius** 109b; **cui** 110; -**que** 111  
**cultus**, -ūs m. *civilization*; **looks**  
**cum** 58, 220, 4; 221b

**cum** 115b, c; 119a, b; 224

**cuneus**, -i m. *wedge*

**cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivi**, **cupitus**  
*long for, desire* 4; 4 **Inf.**; 162;  
**cupidus**, -a, -um *desirous* 2;  
**cupiditās**, -ātis *desire, eager-  
ness* 2

**cūr** 141b

**cūra**, -ae f. 63; **cūrāre** 158

**currō**, **currere**, **cucurri**, **cursus**  
*run*; **ac-currere** *run up to*;  
**cursus**, -ūs m. *a running*;  
*run, course*

**cūstōs**, -ōdis 43, 78; **cūstōdia**,  
-ae f. *protection, custody*; **cū-  
tōdire** *guard*

**damnō**, **damnāre** *declare guilty,*  
*condemn*

**dē** 58, 220, 5; 221b

**dē-beō**, **dē-bēre**, **dē-bui**, **dē-  
bitus** **Inf. o** 121, 219, 4

**decem** p. 29; **dēni**, -ae, -a *ten*  
*each* 120; **decidēs** p. 29;  
**decimus**, -a, -um 120

**dē-cernō**, -cernere, -**crēvi**, -**crē-  
tus** *determine, decide, decree*

**dē-cipiō**, **dē-cipere**, **dē-cēpi**, **dē-  
ceptus** 220, 5

**dē-dō**, **dē-dere**, -**didī**, -**ditus** *lay*  
*down, give up, surrender*; **sē**

- dēdere *devote*; dēditō, -ōnis  
f. a giving up, surrender
- dē-dūcō, dē-dūcere, -dūxī, duc-  
tus *lead away, conduct, take*
- dē-ferō, dē-ferre, dē-tulī, -lātus  
*bear away, carry away, report*
- dē-ficiō, dē-ficere, dē-fēcī, -fectus  
220, 5; *revolt* ā, ab 6
- dē-iciō, dē-icere, -iēcī, -iectus  
*throw or cast down; disap-  
point; dēiectus, -ūs m. down  
pitch, slope*
- dē-inde *thereupon, then* 120g
- dē-liberō, -āre *think over*
- dē-ligō, dē-ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus  
*select; dēlēctus, -ūs m. levy*
- dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī,  
-minūtus *lessen, diminish*
- dēmum or dēnique 66
- dēnī, -ae, -a *ten each* 120
- dē-nūntiō, -āre *send word to*
- dē-populō *see populō*
- dē-serō, dē-serere, -seruī, -ser-  
tus *give up, abandon, desert*
- dē-siderō, -āre *long for, miss*;  
dēsiderium, -ī n. *desire, longing*
- dē-sistō, dē-sistere, -stitī *desist  
from, stop, cease* 6 or Inf.; 157
- dē-spērō, dē-spērāre (dē) *despair  
(of)*; 221b
- dē-spiciō, dē-spicere, dē-spexī,  
dē-spectus 220, 5
- dē-stituō, dē-stituere, dē-stituī,  
dē-stitūtus *leave unsupported,  
desert*
- dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fui 185
- dē-terreō, -terrere, -terruī, -terri-  
tus 153; 155b
- dē-trahō, dē-trahere, dē-trāxī,  
-tractus *draw off, take away,  
rob*
- dē-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus  
*take or carry along*
- dexter, -tra, -trum *right*; dextra,  
-ae f. *right hand*; ā dextrā *on  
the right*
- diciō, -ōnis f. *sway*
- dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus *tell, say,  
speak, speak of as, call* (see  
103; 146a); causam dicere  
*plead a case*; dictiō, -ōnis f.  
*the pleading*
- diēs, diēi m. or f. *day* 81
- dif-ferō, dif-ferre, dis-tulī, di-  
lātus 220, 5; cf. 212
- dif-ficilis, -is, -e 92, 157e; dif-  
ficultās, -ātis f. 92
- dif-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī *flee away*
- di-ligō, di-ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus  
*pick out; cherish*; di-ligēns 97  
*careful*; diligentia, -ae f. 74,  
15; dilēctus, -a, -um 98 *loved*
- dimidiū, -a, -um 220, 5; di-  
midium, -ī
- di-mittō, di-mittere, di-misi, di-  
missus *let go away, dismiss*
- dis-cēdō, dis-cēdere, dis-cessī,  
dis-cessus 97; discessus, -ūs  
m. *departure, flight*
- discō, discere, didici *learn*; dis-  
ciplina, -ae f. *training; learn-  
ing*; discipulus, -ī m. *learner,  
pupil*
- dis-pōnō, dis-pōnere, dis-posuī,  
dis-positus 220, 5
- dis-simulō, -simulāre *pretend not*  
dis-tinēō, dis-tinēre *keep apart*  
diū 69, 119b
- diversus, -a, -um *turned apart,  
different, diverse*
- dīves, -itis *rich*; dīvitiae, -arum  
*riches, wealth*

dīvidō, dividere, -visī, -visus 98,  
104

dō, dare, dedī, datus 97-8 ; 102,  
104, 106e, 128, 184 ; in fugam  
dare put to flight; operam dare  
pay attention; give effort

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus  
teach 4p 4t ; explain

doleō, dolēre, doluī feel pain or  
grief; suffer; dolor, -ōris pain

dolus, -ī device, trickery

domus, -ūs f. 81 ; domī 61 ;  
domum homeward; domō 60 ;

dominus, -ī 146 ; domina, -ae  
mistress, lady; domicilium, -ī  
n. dwelling, abode; 181b

dōnō, dōnāre 230 3p 4t or 4p 6t ;  
dōnum, -ī n. gift, present

dubius, -a, -ūm doubtful; nōn  
dubium est quīn 153 ; dubi-  
tāre 146b

ducentī, -ae, -a 120 or p. 29

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead,  
draw (conclusion), deem, con-  
sider, hold; in mātrimonium  
or uxōrem dūcere marry;  
ductus, -ūs leading cf. 157

dum 147d

duo 120 ; duodecim 120

duplex, -icis 120f ; duplicāre  
double

dux, ducis leader, guide, general

ē, ex 58

ea 115

eā p. 183

ec —! ec-quīs? -qua? -quid?  
145a

ē-dō, ē-dere, -didī, -ditus 220, 6 ;  
ēditus, -a, -um elevated, raised

ē-doceō, ē-docēre show exactly

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus  
221b

ef-ferō, ef-ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātus  
let out, take out, get out (news)

ef-ficiō, ef-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus  
220, 6 ; work out, bring about,  
4 or ut w. Sub.

ef-fugiō, ef-fugere, -fūgī flee  
(away), escape 4

ego I, mei, mihi, mē, mē-cum  
116a

ē-gredior, ē-gredi, —, ē-gressus  
97, 100, 102

eius, eiusdem 109b

ē-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus 218

ē-loquor, ē-loquī, —, ē-locūtus  
speak out

ē-mittō, ē-mittere, ē-misī, ē-mis-  
sus send out or up, let go out

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus 73

ē-nārrō, -āre tell off, recite, re-  
count

enim (never stands first) 66

ē-nūntiō, ē-nūntiāre 154, 220,  
6

eō, ire, iī or ivī, itum 97-8,  
102-4, 137, 140, 212

eō 74, 19 ; eō 119d or p. 182 ;

eōdem 112b ; 119d or p. 182 ;

eōrum, eōrundem 109b

epistula, -ae f. formal letter

equus, -ī 62, 74, 12 ; eques, -itis  
m. 43, 159 ; equester, -tris,

-tre of a horseman, equestrian ;  
equitāre ride, drill (on horse) ;

equitātus, -ūs m. cavalry

ē-ripiō, ē-ripere, -ripuī, -reptus  
230g, 4p ; ē, ex 6 rescue

errō, errāre go astray, wander,  
err ; error, -ōris m. wandering,  
mistake

- ē-rumpō, ē-rumpere, ē-rūpī,  
 ē-ruptus *break out, burst forth,*  
*dash out*; ēruptiō, -ōnis f. a  
*dash*  
 et 66  
 etiam (et + iam) *also, even*  
 et-sī w. Ind. 156; 224  
 ē-veniō, ē-venire, ē-vēnī, ē-ven-  
 tus *come out*: ēventus, -ūs m.  
*outcome*  
 ē-vocō, ē-vocāre *call out, summon*  
 ex, ē 58, 220, 6; 221b  
 ex-audiō, ex-audire *overhear*  
 ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus  
*go out, leave*  
 ex-cipiō, ex-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus  
*take out, take up; except, meet*  
 ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus 221 *go out*;  
 exitium, -ī n. *ruin, overthrow*  
 ex-erceō, ex-ercēre, ex-ercuī, ex-  
 ercitus *keep in motion, train,*  
*exercise, carry on*; exercitus,  
 -ūs m. *training, army*; exerci-  
 tāre *drill*; exercitātiō, -ōnis f.  
*training*  
 ex-igō, ex-igere, ex-ēgī, ex-āctus  
*drive out, exhaust, finish, take*  
*from by force*  
 ex-istimō, -āre 219, 1; 4 Inf.;  
 existimātiō, -ōnis f. *opinion*  
 ex-pediō, ex-pedire 98 -i-; 220, 6  
 ex-pellō, ex-pellere, ex-pulī, ex-  
 pulsus *drive out, expel*  
 ex-plōrō, *ascertain*; explōrātus  
*assured*; explōrātor, -ōris m.  
 62e  
 ex-pōnō, ex-pōnere, -posuī, -posi-  
 tus *set forth, explain*  
 ex-pūgnō, -pūgnāre *take by storm,*  
*storm*; expugnātiō, -ōnis *cap-*  
*ture*  
 ex-quirō, ex-quirere, -quisivī  
 (-iī), -quisitus 219, 1  
 ex-sequor, ex-sequī, —, ex-  
 secūtus 220, 6  
 ex-siliō, ex-silire *leap up or forth*;  
 exsilium, -ī n. *exile*  
 ex-spectō, -spectāre 104-6d,  
 141  
 extrā w. acc. *outside of*; exteri  
*those outside, foreign*; exterior  
*outer*; extrēmus *outermost, end*  
*of*  
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus *do,*  
*make, arrange, cause* 148-9,  
*bring about*; facinus, -oris n.  
*evil deed, crime*; facilis, -e 92;  
 facile 69, 92; facilitās, -ātis  
 f. *ease*; factiō, -ōnis f. *party*;  
 facultās -tātis 92  
 fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus *de-*  
*ceive*; falsus, -a, -um *deceptive*  
 fāma, -ae f. *report, rumor*; fame  
 famēs, -is f. abl. famē 55c  
 -familiās (old Gen.) = familiae  
 fās *right, fate*; fātum, -ī n. *fate*  
 faucēs, -ium f. *jaws*; throat  
 faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus favor 3  
 fēmina, -ae *woman*; fēmineus,  
 -a, -um *of a woman, woman's*  
 cf. 109c  
 ferē *almost, about*  
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus 212, 104,  
 155b; bear, carry, endure;  
 bear news, declare; ferāx,  
 -ācis or fertilis, -e *bearing*;  
*productive*  
 ferrum, -ī *iron*; weapon; fer-  
 reus, -a, -um *of iron* cf. 109c  
 ferus, -a, -um *wild*; fera (bēstia)  
*wild animal*

**fīdō, fidere, —, fīsus** *confide, trust* 3; *rely* 6; **fīdēs, -ei** 47; *protection*; **fīdus, -a, -um** *faithful*

**figūra, -ae** *f. shape, form*

**filia, -ae**; *daughter*; **-us, -i** *son*  
**finis, -is** 44, 47; *finire* *end, terminate*; **finitimus, -a, -um** *bordering* 3; **finitimī, -ōrum** *neighbors*

**fīō, fieri, —, factus** 212 *become, be done, happen*

**firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm, solid**; *steadfast*; **firmiter** *firmly*

**flāgitō, -āre** 147e, 230

**flāvus, -a, -um** *yellow*

**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus** *weep*

**flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus** *blow*

**flōs, flōris** *m.* 42; **flōrēre** 223

**fluō, fluere, fluī, fluxus** *flow*; *in-fluere* *flow in*; **flūmen** 74, 1; 78

**focus, -i** *m. hearth*

**fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus** 162  
(*via*) **fossa, -ae** *f. ditch*

**folium, -i** *n. leaf, page*

**fore** 183 = **futūrus esse**

**foris** *Abl. out of doors*

**fors (fortis)** *f. chance*; **forte** *by chance, perchance*; **fortasse, forsitan (for fors sit an), perhaps, perchance**

**fortis, -e** 91, 149; **fortiter** 91; **fortitūdō, -inis** *f. bravery, strength*

**forum, -i** *market or public place*

**fossa, -ae** *f. see fodiō*

**frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus** *break, shatter*; **fragor, -ōris** *m. breaking, noise, din*

**frāter, frātris** *brother*; **frāternus, -a, -um, brotherly** *cf.* 109c

**frētus, -a, -um** *leaning, relying* 6

**frōns, frontis** *f. forehead*; **front**

**frūmentum, -i** 74, 17; **frūmentārī** *procure grain, forage*; **frūmentārius, -a, -um** *of grain* 109c

**fuga, -ae** *f.* 60; *in fugam dare* *or fugāre* *p.* 15 *put to flight*; **fūgiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus** 4, 97

**fuit** 183

**furō, furere** *rave*

**gaudeō, gaudēre, —, gāvīsus** *rejoice*; **gaudium, -i** *n. joy*

**gēns, gentis** *f. race, family, clan, tribe*; **genus, generis** *n. birth, origin, lineage*; **sort, kind**; **generātīm** *by tribes*

**gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus** *bear, carry*; *wear, carry on, accomplish, manage, do*; **rem gerere** *do business*; **bellum gerere** *make or wage war* 226 *or p.* 238

**gladius, -i** 62

**glōria, -ae** *f. fame, pride*; *liking, admiration*; **glōriārī** *glory in, take pride, boast* 6

**gradior, gradī, —, gressus** *step, walk, move*; **gradus, -ūs** *a step, grade, rank* *pl. steps, stair*

**Graecus, -a, -um** *Greek*; **Graecus, -i** *a Greek*; **graecē** 69; **Graecia, -ae** *Greece*

**grātus, -a, -um** *pleasant, agreeable, acceptable*; **grātum, -i** *a thing pleasing, a favor*; **grātia, -ae** 59, 62g; **grātiām habere** *be grateful*; **grātiās agere**

- return thanks; *grātiā* referre return a favor; *grātulārī* congratulate
- gravis*, -e heavy, severe, serious, dignified; *graviter* severely, seriously; *gravitās*, -ātis f. weight; dignity
- habeō*, *habēre*, *habuī*, *habitus* 58, 102, 104, 222c; *habitāre* 222c
- haereō*, -ēre, *haesi*, *haesus* stick
- harēna*, -ae f. dry soil; sand, arena.
- hibernus*, -a, -um of winter; (*castra*) *hiberna* winter camp cf. 109c
- hic*, *haec*, *hoc* 117b, 119c; *hic* . . . *hic*; this . . . that; the one . . . the other; *hic* . . . *ille* the latter . . . the former; *hic* 119e; *hinc* 119f; *hāc* 119g; *hōc* 154; *hodiē* this day, to-day; *hūc* 119d; *ad-hūc* up to this, thus far
- hiems*, *hiemis* f. winter; *initā hieme* at the beginning of winter; *media hiems* mid-winter; *extrēma hiems* last of winter; *summa hiems* the depth of, dead of winter; *hiemāre* pass the winter
- hodiē* see *hic*; *hodiernus*, -a, -um to-day's, of to-day cf. 109c.
- homō*, *hominis* human being, man
- honōs* or honor, *honōris* m. office, honor; *honestus*, -a, -um honorable; *honestāre*, honor
- hōra*, -ae f. hour
- hortor*, -ārī, —, *hortātus* 147c.
- hortus*, -ī, m. garden
- hōrum*, 109b
- hostis*, -is 63; stranger, foreigner, enemy (public) as opp. to *inimicus* (private) enemy
- huius* 109b
- hūmānus*, -a, -um of man, human 109c; cultured, refined; *hūmānitās*, -ātis f. refinement, culture
- humus*, *humī* m. ground; *humī* (Loc.) on the ground; *humilis*, -e 92
- iaceō*, *iacēre*, *iacuī* lie (dead)
- iaciō*, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus* throw, hurl; *iacāre* 222c; *coniciō*, *conicere*, *coniēcī*, *coniectus* throw (all together), thrust
- iam* now, soon, already; at that time, at this time; *iam diū* long since; *iam* . . . *iam* at one time . . . at another; *nōn iam* no longer
- ibi* p. 183
- idem*, *eadem*, *idem* 47; *eōdem* p. 182; *ibīdem* p. 183; *indidem* p. 183; *eādem* p. 183; *item* 119b
- id*, *quod*; *ea*, *quae* 115
- idōneus*, -a, -um suitable 3 or ad 4
- Idūs*, -uum f. *Ides*; see page 36
- igitur* 66
- ignis*, -is m. fire
- ille*, *illa*, *illud* 109b, 118b (after its noun) that well-known or famous; *ille* . . . *hic* the one . . . the other, the former . . . the latter; *illō*, *illūc* 119d; *illic* 119e; *illinc* 119f; *illāc* 119g
- imber*, *imbris* m. rain shower

- immōtus, -a, -um, *unmoved* 98 ; 220, 7
- im-pediō, im-pedire 98
- im-pendeō, -pendere 220, 7
- imperō, -āre 147e ; 3p, 4t ; 3p ut Sub. ; imperātor, -ōris m. *commander, general* ; imperium, -i n. *command* ; *chief command, power, control, government*
- im-petrō, -āre 147e ; 4 ab 6 ; ut Sub.
- impetus, -ūs m. *charge, attack, rush*
- im-plōrō, -āre ask 4t, ab ploro beg
- im-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus put in, put on, put upon, *impose, levy upon* 3p, 4t or 4, in 4
- imus, -a, -um 92
- in 57 and 58
- in-cendō, in-cendere, in-cendī, in-cēnsus set on fire ; incendi-um, -i n. *fire, conflagration*
- in-cidō, in-cidere, in-cidī fall upon, happen upon, in 4
- in-cipiō, -cipere take to, begin
- in-citō, in-citāre rouse
- in-colō, in-colere, in-coluī dwell in, inhabit 4 ; in-cola, -ae m. *inhabitant* ; agri-cola farmer
- in-columis, -e unharmed, safe
- in-cūsō, in-cūsāre bring charge against, upbraid
- inde, p. 183
- index, -icis m. *pointer, discloser, informer* ; indicium, -i information, accusation ; indicāre point out, show, make known, accuse
- in-dūcō, in-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus lead on, influence
- indulgeō, -ēre indulge 3
- in-eō, in-ire, -iī, -itus go into enter (upon) ; initium, -i n. *an entering upon, beginning*
- inferī, inferior, infimus 92
- in-ferō, in-ferre, in-tulī, il-lātus 155b, 220, 7 ; bellum inferre 3 carry war against
- infirmus, -a, -um weak, unsteady
- ingēns, ingentis cf. 84 ; enormous
- in-gredior, in-gredi, —, in-gressus in 4 ; 153
- in-imicus, -a, -um unfriendly 75 ; inimicitia, -ae f. *enmity*
- in-iquus, -a, -um unfair, unjust 219
- initium see ineō
- in-iūria, -ae f. 107
- in-iussus, -a, -um unbidden cf. 98 ; 220, 7
- inopia, -ae f. *want, lack*
- in-opināns, -antis (when) not expecting, unaware 84, 220, 7
- inquam I say ; inquit says he
- in-sequor, in-sequi, —, in-se-cūtus follow on, pursue
- insidiae, -ārum f. *a sitting against ; ambush, treachery*
- insolenter insolently
- in-stituō, in-stituere, in-stituī, in-stitūtus set up, decide, establish ; equip ; institūtum, -i n. *custom, institution*
- in-stō, in-stāre, in-stiti stand on, keep at, press on ; insist
- in-struō, in-struere, in-strūxī, in-strūctus heap up ; arrange, set in order, plan, contrive



insula, -ae f. 60 ; 74, 21

in-sum, in-esse *be in*

in-teger, -gra, -grum *untouched; fresh, complete*

intel-legō, intel-legere, intel-lēxī, -lēctus 220, 8 ; *l aware, see*

in-tendō, in-tendere, -tendī, -tentus *strain toward, stretch out toward*

inter 57 ; 220, 8 ; 221b

inter-cēdō, inter-cēdere, -cessī, -cessus 220, 8 ; 221b

inter-diū *during the daytime*

inter-dum *sometimes, meanwhile*

inter-eā *there between; meanwhile*

inter-ficiō, inter-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus *make away with, kill, put to death* 220, 8

inter-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus *thrust in, situated between, intervening*

inter-im *there between, meanwhile*

inter-mittō, inter-mittere, -mīsī, -missus *let go between times, interrupt, let up, stop* 220, 8

interneciō, -ōnis f. *massacre (nex)*

inter-pōnō, inter-pōnere, -posuī, -positus *put between, interpose; offer, allege*

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī 70, 73c, d

intervallum, -ī n. *interval*

intrā (w. Ac.) *within*

intrō-dūcō, intrō-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus 220, 8 *lead into*

intulī *see Inferō*

in-veniō, in-venire, -vēnī, -ventus *come upon, find* 4 ; *find out* 4 Inf.

in-victus, -a, -um *unconquered, invincible*

invitō, invitāre, *invite*

invitus, -a, -um (when) *unwilling, (though) reluctant* 94, 96

ipse, ipsa, ipsum 118

ira, irae *anger; irācundus, -a, -um hot-tempered; irāscī* 223b *grow angry; irātus angry, enraged*

is, ea, id 112, 115, 119c ; p. 182 ; eō p. 182 ; ibi p. 183 ; inde p. 183 ; eā p. 183 ; ita 119b

iste, ista, istud 109b, 118b ; istīc 119e ; istūc 119d ; istinc 119f ; istāc 119g

ita-que *and so, therefore*

item 119b

iter, itineris n. 82a, b, e *a going; journey, route, line of march; iter facere march; (eōs) itinere prohibere keep (them) from marching or passing*

iterum 67, 120g

itūrus 102-3

iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus 4 Inf. ; 122, 127, 136, 139

iūdex, iūdicis 46, 78 ; iūdicāre *serve as judge, judge, decide, think, declare; iūdicium, -ī n. court, judgment, decision*

iugum, -ī n. *yoke; ridge, chain of hills; summit; iumentum, -ī n. yoke animal*

Iūlius, -ī 60

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctus *join*

iūs, iūris n. 42, 225 ; iūrāre *take oath, swear; coniūrāre swear together, conspire; iūs iurandum oath; iūstus, -a, -um*

- right, just, fair*; iūstitia, -ae f. *fairness*  
iussus, -ūs m. *a bidding* cf. 157  
iuvenis, -is *young*; iuventūs 44  
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus 4 *help, aid, assist*; iuvat *it pleases*  
labor, labī, —, lapsus *slip*  
labor, -ōris m. *toil*; labōrāre *toil, work out, be in trouble, suffer (inconvenience)*  
lac, lactis n. *milk*  
laccessō, lacessere, -īvī, -ītus *challenge, provoke, excite*  
lacrima, -ae f. *tear*  
lacus, -ūs m. *lake*  
lapis, -idis m. 43  
largus, -a, -um *copious, lavish, unstinted*; largiter *copiously*; largīrī 136, 139; largītīō, -ōnis f. *lavish giving, bribery*  
Latium, -ī n. *Latium*; Latinus, -a, -um *Latin*; latīnē 69  
latrō, -ōnis m. *robber, highway-man*  
lātus see ferō  
lātus, -a, -um 92; lātē 69; lātītūdō, -dinis f. 42, 92  
latus, -eris n. *side, flank*  
laus, laudis f. *praise*; laudāre, 151  
laurus, -ī f. *laurel (tree)*  
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus 97 -e-, 106, 136, 218; legīō, -ōnis f. *a choosing; legion*; legiōnārius, -a, -um *of a legion, legionary*; lēgāre *appoint legally, commission*; lēgā-  
tus, -ī m. *lieutenant, envoy*; lēgātīō, -ōnis f. *mission, commission, embassy*  
lēnis, -e *soft, gentle*; lēniter *smoothly, gently*; lēnitās, -ātis f. *softness, gentleness, mildness*  
lentē *slowly*  
lēx, lēgis f. *law, statute*  
liber, libri m. *inner bark*; 62  
liber, libera, liberum 91; pl. liberī, -ōrum *free children*; liberē *freely*; liberāre *to make free*; libertās, -ātis f. *freedom*; liberāliter *generously*  
libet, libere, libuit, libitum 119b; libēns *pleasing*; libenter *with pleasure, gladly*  
licet, licere, licuit, licitum 139  
lingua, -ae f. *tongue*; *language*  
littera, -ae f. *letter* pl. 218a; litterārius, -a, -um *of letters*  
lītus, -oris n. 218a  
locus, -ī m. *place, room*; pl. loca n. *places*; locī *passages in books*; locāre *place, locate*; let; collocāre *arrange, station, put*  
longus, -a, -um 92; *distant*; longē 69; longitūdō 92  
loquor, loquī, —, locūtus 136; *express one's self*  
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus *play* 6; *make sport of* 6; lūdus, -ī m. *game, play*; school; ē-lūdere *dodge, escape*  
lūstrō, -āre *survey, look over*  
lūx, lūcis f. *light of day*; lūcere *shine*; lūmen, -inis n. *light*; lūna (for lūcina) *moon* 223  
lūxus, -ūs m. *luxury, taste*  
māchina, -ae f. *machine, structure*; māchinārī *contrive, invent, scheme*; māchinātīō, -ōnis f. *contrivance*

**magister**, -tri m. 76 *master, overseer; teacher; magistrātus*, -ūs m. *chieftainship, office*  
**magnus**, -a, -um 70, 92 ; **magnitūdō**, -dinis f. *greatness, size; maior*, -ius 92 ; **maximus** 92 ; **magnopere**, **magnō opere** 70 ; **magis** 69 ; **maximē** 69, 92  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī** 137, 186  
**malus**, -a, -um 91, 64, 70 ; **male** 69 ; **maleficium**, -i n. 91  
**mandō**, **mandāre** 3 and 4 *give up to; entrust, bid; command; mandātum, -i *order*  
**manēō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus** *remain, abide, stay*  
**mānsuētus**, -a, -um *gentle*  
**manus**, -ūs f. *band, force* 81  
**mare**, -is n. 79b ; **maritimus**, -a, -um *of sea, maritime* cf. 109c ; **aequor** *level sea; pelagus* *broad sea; pontus* *deep sea, altum* *high or deep sea*  
**māter**, **mātris** 41 ; **māternus** cf. 109c ; **māterfamiliās** ; see -**familiās**  
**mātūrus** 91 ; **mātūrē** 91 ; **mātūrius** 91 ; **mātūrāre** Inf. o. 91 ; 223  
**medius**, -a, -um *mid-, middle, central*  
**meī** 116a  
**mel** 41  
**melior**, -ius 91  
**membrum**, -i n. *limb*  
**meminī**, **meminisse** *remember, recollect* 4, 4 Inf. ; **memor**, -oris *mindful or remembering* 2 ; **memoria**, -ae f. *recollection; tradition, record* 2 ; **memoriā tenēre** *keep in mind,**

*recollect; memōrāre* *recall, recount, relate* 4  
**mēns**, **mentis** f. *mind*  
**mēnsis**, -is m. *month; mēnsūra, -ae f. *measure; mētīrī* *measure*  
**mereō**, **merēre**, **meruī**, **meritus** *deserve, merit; meritum, -i n. *merit, desert; meritō* *deservedly; merx, mercis* f. *ware; mercēs* *goods; mercēs, -ēdis* f. *pay; mercātor, -ōris m. *trader*  
**metus**, -ūs m. *fear, dread; metuere, **metuī** *fear, apprehend, dread*  
**meus**, **mea**, **meum** 64, 83, 109c  
**mīles**, -itis 44 ; **militāris**, -e 109c *soldier's, military; militia, -ae f. *military service; domi militiaeque* L. *at home and abroad*  
**mille**, **mīlia** 120 ; **mīllēsīmus**, -a, -um *1000th*  
**ministrō**, -āre *furnish*  
**minor** 150 ; **minus**, -ōris 70 ; **minus** 118c ; **minuere**, **minuī**, **minūtus** *lessen, decrease; minimē* 69 ; **minimus** 92  
**mīrus**, -a, -um *wonderful; mīrārī* *wonder at, marvel*  
**misceō**, **miscēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtus** *mix, mingle; 4 and 6*  
**miser**, **misera**, **miserum** 74, 8  
**mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsi**, **missus** *let go, 159, 62*  
**modus**, -i m. *measure, kind; modo* 66 *in a measure, in a (limited) manner; only, but, just, just now; modestus, -a, -um *self-restraining*  
**moenia**, -ium n. 79, *walls*  
**mōlēs**, -is f. *shapeless mass; pile, heap, dam, mole, dyke, burden;*******

**moliri** *pile up, heap up, build, plot; molestē with annoyance*

**molitus**, -a, -um *ground*

**moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus** *warn, advise* 4, *ut w. Sub.*

**mōns**, **montis** *m. mountain*

**mora**, -ae *f. delay, hindrance;*

**morārī** 100 *detain self cf. 181, delay*

**mors**, **mortis** *f. 100; morior,*

**mori**, —, **mortuus** 100

**mōs**, **mōris** *m. 42*

**moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus** 98, 145; **mōtus**, -ūs *m. a move, uprising cf. 157*

**mulier**, -eris *f. (married) woman*

**multus**, -a, -um 64, 70; 74, 17;

74, 19; **plūs** 70, 150; **plūrimus** 64, 70; 72, 73; **multitūdō**, -inis *f. body, number, great quantity*

**mūnus**, **mūneris** *n. task, function, service; gift; mūniō,*

**mūnīre** 97-8, 104; **mūnitiō**, -ōnis *f. 98*

**mūrus**, -ī *m. wall*

**mūtō**, -āre *change*

**nam** 119b; **nam-que** 119b

**nāscor**, **nāscī**, —, **nātus** 223b;

**nātus**, -ī *son; nāta*, -ae *daughter; maior nātū elder; minor nātū younger; less in age; nātiō*, -ōnis *f. race, people, tribe; nātūra*, -ae *f. 6d*

**nātō**, **nātāre** 222c; **nauta**, -ae

(*for navita* § 178) *m.; nāvis*, -is *f. 62c, 79; nāvigāre sail; nāvigātiō*, -ōnis *f. sailing*

**-ne** *interrog. particle* 145a, b

**nē** 69, 141, 148, 153-155

**nec**, **neque** 66

**necesse** *nom. or acc. necesse est it is urgent; necessitās*, -ātis

*f. urgency; necessitūdō*, -dinis

*f. relationship; necessarius*, -a, -um *urgent, necessary; relative*

**neg-legō**, **neg-legere**, **neg-lēxī**, **neg-lēctus** 98, 102; 220, 9;

225; **neglegenter**, *carelessly*

**negō**, **negāre** *say no, deny, refuse*

**neg-ōtium**, -ī *n. 220, 9*

**nē-mō**, **nēminī**, **nēminem** 118c

**ne-quā-quam** *p. 183*

**ne-que**, **nec** 66

**neuter**, **neutra**, **neutrum** 40, 65

**nēve**; *see nē and -ve*

**nex**, **necis** *f. slaying, death, murder*

**nihil**, -ī *n. 118c, 70-1, 145b*

**nisi** (**nī**) 141b, 113, 156

**nītor**, **nīti**, —, **nīsus** or **nīxus** *strive; rely or rest* 6; *or in 4*

**nix**, **nivis** *f. 46*

**nōbilis**, -e *see nōscō*

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī** 121, 128, 137

**nōmen**, -inis *n. 41; suō nōmine on one's own account; nōminātīm by name; nōmināre call by name*

**nōn** 141; **nōn-dum** *not yet; nōn iam no longer; nōnnūllus; nōnnumquam cf. 64, 119b*

**nōnus**, -a, -um 120; **nōngenti** 900

**nōs** 116b

**nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** 107, 223; *perf. nōvī I know; nōbilis*, -e *knowable; prominent*

**noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum** 64, 109c

**nōtō**, -āre *mark, denote*

novem 120 ; noviēns 120g

novus, -a, -um *new, strange;*

novae rēs *revolution;* novis-

simus *newest, last (to come or*

pass); novissimum agmen

*rear-guard;* novāre *renew, re-*

pair, change; novitās, -ātis

f. *newness, novelty, strangeness*

nox, noctis f. 46 ; noctū, nocte

74, 18 ; primā nocte *at night-*

fall; multā nocte *late at night*

nūbēs 79 ; nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī

nūpta (f.) (*veil*), marry; nūp-

tiae, -ārum f. *marriage (cere-*

monies); nūptum (Sup.) 157

nūdus, -a, -um 6 *bare;* nūdāre

*make bare, clear* 4 and 6 ; 63

nūllus, -a, -um 40, 64, 65, 118b

num? 145c

numerus, -ī m. *number, amount;*

saepe numerō *oftentimes;* nu-

merāre *count*

numquam p. 183

nunc *now;* nunc . . . nunc *at*

*one time . . . at another;*

nū-per *just now, lately;* 220,

10

nūntius, -a, -um *announcing;*

*messenger, news;* nūntiāre 142

nūper *see nunc*

ob 57 ; 220, 9

ob-aerātus, -a, -um *in debt;*

*debtor*

ob-lātus *see of-ferō*

ob-liviscor, ob-liviscī, —, ob-

litus 2 or 4 ; 4 Inf. 107, 223b

ob-oediō, ob-oedire *listen to, give*

*heed to, obey*

ob-sideō, ob-sidēre, ob-sēdī, ob-

sessus *sit by or against; be-*

*siege, blockade;* obses, -idis

106e ; obsidiō, -ōnis f. *block-*

*ade, siege*

ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī,

-strictus *bind*

obstrictus, -a, -um *bound*

ob-tineō, ob-tinēre, ob-tinuī, ob-

tentus 98, 220, 9

oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, -cāsus

*fall, settle, set;* occāsus, -ūs m.

*a falling down; setting;* oc-

cāsīō, -ōnis f. *opportunity*

oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, oc-

cīsus 219, 1

oc-cupō, oc-cupāre *take posses-*

*sion of, seize*

oc-currō, oc-currere, oc-cucurrī

or oc-currī, -cursus 220, 9

Ōceanus, -ī m. *ocean;* mare

Ōceanus *the Atlantic*

octō 120 ; Octōber 87 ; octāvus,

-a, -um 120 ; octōgintā 120 ;

octingentī, -ae, -a *eight hun-*

*dred.*

oculus, -ī m. 62g

ōdī, ōdisse 74, 22 ; odium, -ī n.

*in* 4, § 5f

of-ferō, of-ferre, ob-tulī, ob-

lātus 220, 9

officiū, -ī n. *service, duty*

oliva, -ae f. *olive*

omnis, -e 71 ; omnīnō *in all*

opera, -ae f. *labor; pains, effort*

opiniō, -ōnis f. *idea, expecta-*

*tion*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit 152

oportūnus, -a, -um *lucky*

oppidum, -ī 77 ; oppidānus, -ī m.

*townsman*

op-primō, -primere, -pressī,

-pressus *oppress*

op-pugnō, op-pugnāre *assault, attack, storm* (a town); op-pūgnātiō, -ōnis f. *assault, storming*

optimus 91; -ē 69; optimātēs, -ium, m. *aristocrats*

opus, operis n. 70, 71c; magno-pere 70; quantopere 70; tantopere 70

opus est 6, 71c

ōra, -ae f. *coast, border, zone*

orbis, -is m. *circle, round, orbit*; orbis terrārum *the circle of the lands i.e. the world*

ōrdō, -inis m. 42

orior, oriri, —, ortus 97, 100, 102; origō 42; oriēns 97; ortus, -ūs m. *the rising* (of the sun)

ōrnō, ōrnāre *adorn*; ōrnāmentum, -i n. *ornament, equipment, credit*

ōs, ōris n. 78; *face*; ōrō, ōrāre *move mouth, plead, beg*; ōrātor, -ōris m. *pleader, orator*; ōrātiō, -ōnis f. *plea, argument, speech*

os-tendō, os-tendere, os-tendī, ostentus 146, 220, 9

ovis, -is f. *sheep*

pābulum, -i n. 148h; pābulāri *get forage*; pābulātiō, -ōnis f. *foraging*; a *foraging expedition*

pācō, see pāx

paene *almost*; paen-insula, -ae f. *almost-island, peninsula*

pāgus, -i m. *district, clan, canton*

palūs, -ūdis f. 43

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus *open, spread out*; passim *here and there*

pār, paris 83; pariter *equally*

parcus, -a, -um *sparing*

pāreō, pārere, pārui *obey* 3

pariō, parere, peperī, partus *give birth to, bring forth*; parēns, -entis *parent*

parō, parāre 98, 102

pars, partis f. 47, 79; pars . . .

pars *some . . . others*; partim *partly*; parti-ceps, -cipis *participant, sharer*; partiri 104

parvus, -a, -um 70, 71, 92, 150; parum 70; minor 150; minus 69, 148d, 150, 155, 118c; minimus 70, 92; minimē 69

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus *cause to feed, pasture*; pascor, pasci *feed (self) on* 6; 180-2; pāstor, -ōris m. *feeder, shepherd*

passus p.p. of patior 100

passus (p.p. of pandō) *open*

passus, -ūs m. *a spreading; double step* (about 5 feet); mille passūs 1000 *paces, a Roman mile* 120

pateō, patēre, patui *extend, lie open, spread* pp. 33, line 9, 38, 14; pate-faciō, pate-facere, -fēcī, -factus *throw open, open, disclose*

pater, patris 41; paternus, -a, -um 109c; patrius, -a, -um *paternal*; (terra) patria *fatherland, country*; patruus, -i *an uncle on the father's side*

patior, pati, —, passus *let, allow*

pauci, -ae, -a 64; paucitās, -ātis f. *fewness*

paulum 70; paululum 70; paulatim *little by little, gradually*; paulisper *for a short time*

**pāx**, **pācis** f. 46, 159 ; **pācāre** *subdue*; **pactum**, -i n. *agreement*  
**pecus**, -oris n. *cattle*; **pecūnia**, -ae f. (value of cattle) *money*  
**peius** see **malus** 91  
**pellis**, -is f. *skin, hide, pelt*  
**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepuli**, **pulsus** *strike, beat, push, drive*  
**per** 57 ; 70  
**per-agō**, **per-agere**, **per-ēgi**, -**actus** *drive through; finish, accomplish*  
**per-dō**, **per-dere**, -**didī**, -**ditus** *put through; destroy, loose*  
**per-dūcō**, **per-dūcere**, -**dūxī**, -**ductus** *take on or over, continue*  
**per-eō**, **per-īre**, **per-īi**, -**itus** *go through; perish, be lost* 220, 10  
**per-facilis**, -is, -e *very easy*  
**per-ferō**, **per-ferre**, -**tulī**, -**lātus** *bear through, carry through; endure to the end; carry news*  
**per-ficiō**, **per-ficere**, -**fēcī**, -**fectus** 98, 220, 10  
**periculum**, -i n. *danger*; **periculōsus**, -a, -um *perilous*; **periclitārī** *take risk (to self)* 180-2  
**peritus**, -a, -um 2 *skilled in, experienced, familiar with*; **im-peritus** 2 *ignorant*  
**per-magnus**, -a, -um cf. 64, 70  
**per-maneō**, **per-manēre**, -**mānsī**, -**mānsus** *stay through, hold out, abide*  
**per-mittō**, **per-mittere**, -**mīsī**, -**missus** *let go through; yield, allow, permit* 4, *ut w. Sub.*  
**per-moveō**, **per-movēre**, -**mōvī**, -**mōtus** *move throughout, rouse, induce*

**permulti** 64, 220, 10  
**perniciēs**, -eī f. *thorough killing; destruction, disaster* cf. **nex**  
**perpauci**, -ae, -a 64, 220, 10  
**per-rumpō**, -**rumpere**, -**rūpī**, -**ruptus** *break through*  
**per-sequor**, **per-sequī**, —, **per-secūtus** *follow thoroughly, pursue, press hard*  
**per-sevērō**, **per-sevērāre** *persevere, insist upon* **Inf. o.**  
**per-spiciō**, **per-spicere**, **per-spexi**, -**spectus** *see through, see clearly, make out, understand*  
**per-suādeō**, **per-suādēre**, -**suāsī**, -**suāsus** 147e  
**per-terreō**, **per-terrēre**, -**terrui**, -**territus** *terrify thoroughly*  
**per-tineō**, -**tinēre**, -**tinui** 220, 10  
**per-turbō**, -**turbāre**, *confuse thoroughly, throw into confusion*  
**per-veniō**, -**venīre**, -**vēnī**, -**ventus** *get through to, arrive at* **ad** 4 ; *arrive in* **in** 4  
**pēs** 43 ; **pedes**, -itis m. 43 ; **pedester**, -tris, -tre *belonging to the feet; of infantry* cf. 109c ; **peditātus**, -ūs m. *a body of foot-soldiers, infantry*  
**petō**, **petere**, **petivī**, **petitus** 147e  
**phalanx**, -**angis** f. *phalanx; close formation of troops*  
**pīlum**, -i n. *javelin, spear*  
**placeō**, **placēre**, **placui**, **placitum** 3, 133  
**plānus**, -a, -um *flat, even*; **plānē** *plainly*; **plānitiēs**, -eī f. *levelness, plain*  
**plēbēs**, -eī f. *commons*  
**plēnus**, -a, -um 62  
**plērique** *most people* 76

plērumque 70

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque  
76

plūrimum 70

plūs, plūris n. 70, 72 ; 74, 19 ; 150

poena, -ae f. *penalty, punishment*

pol-liceor, pol-licēri, —, pol-  
licitus *hold forth; promise*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus *put  
down, put, place, establish*

pōns, pontis m. 158

populō, populāre *ravage, raid*

populus, -ī m. 107

porta, -ae f. *gate, entrance; por-  
tus, -ūs harbor, port*

portō, portāre 97, 102, 104

poscō, poscere, poposci *demand,  
claim; inquire into*

possideō, possidēre, *possess, own*

possum, posse 137, 183 ; potēns  
84, 91 ; potentia, -ae f. *power,  
influence*

post 57, 68 ; posteā 69 ; pos-  
terus, -a, -um ; posterior  
*hinder; postrēmus or post-  
umus latest, last, final; pos-  
trīdiē on the next day; pos-  
trēmō at last*

pōstulō, postulāre 147e

potēns 84

potestās, -ātis or potentia, -ae f.  
*power, chance (at) 2*

potior, potiri, —, potitus 182

prae 58, 92, 220, 11

prae-acūtus, -a, -um *sharpened*

prae-beō, prae-bēre, prae-buī,  
prae-bitus 220, 11

prae-cēdō, prae-cēdere 74, 16 ;  
220 ; 11

prae-cipiō, prae-cipere, -cēpī,  
-ceptus *take beforehand, antici-*

*pate, advise, warn, give direc-  
tions, order; prae-cipue espe-  
cially*

praeda, -ae f. *booty, prey;  
praedāri make prey of, rob,  
plunder*

prae-currō, -ere *run ahead*

prae-dicō, prae-dicāre *make  
known, proclaim; vaunt, boast*

prae-ferō, prae-ferre, -tulī, -lātus  
*place before, prefer 3 and 4*

prae-ficiō, prae-ficere, prae-fēcī,  
-fectus 3 and 4, *put at the head  
of or in charge of; praefectus,  
-i captain, prefect (of cavalry)*

prae-legō, -ere *read out*

prae-mittō, prae-mittere, prae-  
misi, -missus *send in advance*

praemium, -ī n. *bounty, reward*

prae-nōmen *fore-name; cf. co-  
gnōmen added name*

praesidium, -ī n. *garrison; guard*

prae-stō, prae-stāre, -stīti, -stitus  
*stand in front, excel 3 ; put in  
front of, furnish 3p, 4t*

prae-sum, prae-esse, prae-fuī *be  
at head of, in charge of 3 ;  
praesēns, praesentis present  
cf. 84*

praeter 57 ; praeter-eā *besides;  
praeter quam further than,  
except*

praeter-eō, praeter-ire, -ii, -itus  
220, 11

prae-eō, -īre *go ahead of; praetor,  
-ōris m. one who goes before; a  
praetor, a Roman magistrate,  
general; praetōrius, -a, -um  
general's*

premō, premere, pressī, pressus  
*press, crowd, oppress*



**prēndō, prēndere** or **prehendere**,  
**prehendī, prehēnsus** *grasp*;  
**comprehendere** *seize, arrest*  
**pretium, -i** n. 73

**pridem** *long ago, long since; iam*  
**pridem** *this long ago, long ago*;  
**pridiē** *on the day before*; **prior**,  
**prius** 69, 92; **primus, -a, -um**  
 92, 120; **prin-ceps, -cipis** *first*;  
*foremost, chief*; **principātus**,  
**-ūs** m. *chiefship, leadership*;  
**principium, -i** n. *beginning*;  
**prīus, prius** (-quam) 69; **pristin-**  
**tinus, -a, -um** *former, old-*  
*time*

**privātus, -a, -um** *set apart*  
**prō** 58; 220, 12

**probus, -a, -um** *good*; **probāre**  
*find good, approve, prove*;  
**probitās, -ātis** f. *goodness*;  
**improbus, -a, -um** *wicked, bad*  
**prō-cēdō, prō-cēdere, prō-cessī,**  
**-cessus** *go forth, advance*

**prō-cōnsul, -is** m. *proconsul*  
**procul** adv. *afar off*

**prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus** 220, 12

**prō-dō, prō-dere, -didī, -dītus**  
*give away, betray*; **prōditor,**  
**-ōris** m. *traitor*

**prō-dūcō, prō-dūcere, -dūxī,**  
**-ductus** *lead forth; protract,*  
*draw out*

**proelium, -i** n. 62 f, 63, **proeliārī**  
*do battle*

**pro-ficiscor, pro-ficiscī, —, pro-**  
**fectus** *set out* 223; **profectiō,**  
**-ōnis** f. *a setting forth, depart-*  
*ture*

**prō-fluō, -ere, flow out**

**pro-fugiō, pro-fugere, pro-fūgī,**  
**-fugitūrus** 220, 12

**prō-gredior, prō-gredi, —, prō-**  
**gressus** 100, 104, 220, 12

**pro-hibēō, pro-hibēre, pro-hibui,**  
**-hibitus** 63, 102, 123, 132,  
 148g, 219, 3

**prope** *near; almost*; **propior,**  
**propius** *nearer*; **proximus, -a,**  
**-um** 68c; **proximē** *most re-*  
*cently, last*; **propinquus, -a,**  
**-um** *near; close, relative*; **pro-**  
**pinquitās, -ātis** f. *kinship*

**properō, -āre** *hasten, speed*  
 Inf. o

**prō-pōnō, prō-pōnere, prō-posui,**  
**-positus** *put forward, set forth*

**proprius, -a, -um** *one's own,*  
*proper* cf. Eng. **property**

**propter** 57; **propter-eā** 154

**prō-pulsō, prō-pulsāre** *beat off*

**prō-spiciō, prō-spicere, prō-**  
**spexī, -spectus** *look forth or*  
*look out for* 3; **prōspectus, -ūs**  
 m. *view*

**prō-vidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus**  
*foresee* 4; *provide for* 3; **prōvi-**  
**dēns** or **prūdēns** 91; **prō-**  
**videntia** or **prūdēntia, -ae** f.  
*foresight, wisdom*

**prōvincia** 77; p. 78 line 23

**prō-vocō, prō-vocāre** *call forth,*  
*challenge*

**prō-volō, -āre** *fly forth*

**pūblicus, -a, -um** 73; **rēs**  
**pūblica** *commonwealth, state*;  
**pūblicē** *in the name of the*  
*people, publicly*

**puer, puerī** 41, 44; **puella, -ae** f.  
*girl*

**pugna, -ae** f. 62f; **pugnus, -i** m.  
*fist*; **pugnō, pugnāre** 62

**pulcher, -chra, -chrum** 91

putō, putāre *trim, clean; arrange, set in order, reckon, think*

quadrāgintā 120g; quadragiēns; quadrāgēnsimus, -a, -um 40th; quadrāns, -ntis *one fourth*; quadringentī, -ae, -a *four hundred*

quadriennium 67; quadrīduum 67  
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitus 123, 143, 147e

quā 119g

quālis, -e 91

quam 64, 69, 90; quamquam *however, and yet, though*

quandō 119a

quantus, -a, -um 70, 92; quantopere 70

quā rē 115 c, 154

quattuor 120; quater 67, 120; quārtus, -a, -um 120; quaternī, -ae, -a *four each*; quattuordecim *fourteen*; quadringentī, -ae, -a 400

-que 66

queror, querī, —, questus *complain of, lament*; questus, -ūs m. *a complaint* 157; querimōnia, -ae f. *complaint*

quī, quae, quod 115

quicquam p. 182 and 119b

quicumque, quae-cumque, quodcumque 119b and p. 182

quidam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam 119b and p. 182

quidem; nē . . . quidem 69

quiēs, quiētis f. 43; quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētus *go to rest; grow quiet*; quiētus *at rest, peaceful*

quīn 115b, c, 149

quīnque 120 or p. 29; quīnquiēs 120; quīntus, -a, -um 120; quīnī, -ae, -a 120; quīnquāgintā 120 or p. 29; quīngentī, -ae, -a 120

quis, quid; quī, quae, quod 113-5

quis-quam, quid-quam or quicquam 119b or p. 182

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or quod-que 119b or p. 182

quis-quis, quid-quid 119b

quī-vis, quae-vis, quid-vis, quodvis 119b or p. 182

quō . . . eō 74, 19 or p. 18

quō . . . minus 148-9, 155

quod *the fact that, as for the fact that, that, because, since* 115b

quon-dam 119a, b and p. 183

quon-iam *since, whereas, as* 224

quoque *also, too*

quōrum 109b

quot 64; quotiēns 120e; quotannis *every year*

rārus, -a, -um *widely scattered, loose*; rārō *rarely*

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus 97, 98, 162

ratio, -ōnis, f. 42 *a reckoning; way, method; account; system, plan, reason* 154

ratis, -is f. *raft; vessel*

re-, red- 220, 13

raucus, -a, -um *hoarse*

recēns, recentis *fresh, new*

re-cipiō, re-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus 98, 104; sē recipere *betake one's self, withdraw*

rēctē see regō

re-cūsō, re-cūsāre 154, 219, 1

red-dō, red-dere, -didī, -ditus  
*give back, return* cf. 102

red-eō, red-īre, -iī, -itus *go back,*  
*return*; reditus, -ūs m. (a)  
*return*; reditiō, -ōnis f. 220, 13

red-igō, red-igere, -ēgī, -āctus  
*drive back*; *reduce, bring down*

red-imō, red-imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus  
*buy back*; *purchase, acquire,*  
*ransom*

red-integrō, -āre *renew*

re-dūcō, re-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus  
*lead back, take back*

re-ferō, re-ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātus  
*bring back, report, refer*; *relate*

re-ficiō, re-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus  
*make over, repair, refresh*

regō, regere, *rēxī*, *rēctus* *guide,*  
*direct, rule*; regiō, -ōnis f. 42 ;

*rēctus* *direct, straight*; *rēctē*  
*rightly*; *rēx*, *rēgis* m. *king*;

*rēgius*, -a, -um *kingly, royal*;

*rēgālis*, -e *king's, kingly, royal*;

109c ; *rēgina*, -ae f. *queen*;

*rēgnum*, -ī n. *royal authority,*  
*kingship*; *kingdom, realm*;

*rēgnāre* *reign*

re-linguō, re-linguere, re-liquī,  
*relictus* *leave behind, abandon,*  
*desert*; *reliquus*, -a, -um *re-*  
*maining*; *rest of*; *reliquiae*,

-ārum f. *leavings, remains*

re-minīscor, re-minīscī cf. 107,  
223

re-mittō, mittere, -mīsī, -missus  
*let go back*

repēns, -ntis *sudden*; *repente*  
*suddenly*; *repentinus*, -a, -um  
*unexpected*

re-periō, re-perire, rep-perī, re-  
pertus 135

re-petō, re-petere, -petīī, -petitus  
*ask back, seek again*

re-portō, -āre *bring back*

re-prehendō, re-prehendere,  
-prehendī, -prehēnsus *blame*

re-pugnō, -āre *resist, stand in the*  
*way of*

rēs, rei 44, 73c, 81, 113 ; *rēs*  
*pública* *the commonwealth*; *rēs*  
*familiāris* *family property,*

*estate*; *rēs militāris* *art of war*;

*rēs novae* *revolution*

re-spiciō, re-spicere, re-spexī,  
-spectus *look back, respect*

re-stinguō, re-stinguere, -stinxī,  
-stinctus *extinguish*

re-stituō, re-stituere, re-stitui,  
-stitūtus *re-establish, restore*

re-tineō, re-tinēre, re-tinui, re-  
tentus 155b

re-vertō, re-vertere, -vertī, -ver-  
sus 182 ; reverti 181b

*rēx*, *rēgis* m. 46

Rhodus, -ī f. 76

rideō, ridēre, risī, risus *laugh at*

ripa, -ae, f. *bank*

rogō, rogāre 141b, 157b

Rōma, -ae f. 74, 13 ; Rōmānus,  
-a, -um 109c ; rōmānē *in*  
*Roman fashion*

ruō, ruere, ruī, ruitūrus *rush,*  
*tumble, fall*; *ruīna*, -ae f.  
*breach*

rūrsus, rūrsum 119b

rūs, rūris n. 42, 78 ; rūs (Acc.)  
61b ; rūri (Loc.) 61c ; rūre

(Abl.) 61d

saepe 69 ; saepenumērō often-  
times

saeviō, saevire *rage, be furious*

**sagitta**, -ae f. *arrow*  
**salūs**, -ūtis f. 43 ; **salūtāre** *greet, wish good health*  
**sanguis**, -inis m. 43  
**satis** 70 ; **satisfacere** 3 *do enough for, give satisfaction*  
**scandō** 220, 2  
**sciō**, **scire**, **scivī** or **sciī**, **scītus** 74, 3 ; **sciēns** *knowing* ; **scientia**, -ae f. *knowledge* ; **in-scius**, -a, -um or **in-sciēns** *not knowing*  
**scribō**, **scribere**, **scripsī**, **scriptus** *write, write down* ; **scriptor**, -ōris m. *writer* ; **scriptum**, -ī n. *(thing) written, writing*  
**scūtum**, -ī n. *oblong shield*  
**sē**, **sui** 62 f  
**sē**-, **sēd** 220, 13  
**sēcŕētus**, -a, -um *set apart* ; **sēcŕētō** *in private, privately*  
**secundus**, -a, -um (cf. **sequī**) *following* ; *next, second* ; *favorable, successful* ; **secundum** w. Acc. *next to, along, following*  
**sed** 66  
**sē-decim** 120  
**sedeō**, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus** *sit, be fixed or settled* ; **sēdēs**, -is f. 55d ; *seat, settlement*  
**sēditō**, -ōnis f. 220, 13 ; **sēditōsus**, -a, -um *seditionous, rebellious*  
**semel** 67, 120  
**sēmen**, **sēminis** n. *seed* ; **sēmentis**, -is a *sowing*  
**semper** *always, ever*  
**senex**, **senis** *old man* ; **senātus** 44  
**sēnī**, -ae, -a *six each (way)*  
**sentiō**, **sentiŕe**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus** *per-*

*ceive by senses* ; *feel, hear, see, perceive, realize* ; **sententia**, -ae f. *feeling, thinking, opinion, judgment* ; **sententiam rogāre** *ask opinion or vote*  
**sēparātus** 220, 13 ; **sēparātīm** *separately*  
**sepeliō**, **sepelire**, **sepelivī**, **sepultus** *bury* ; **sepultūra**, -ae f. *burial*  
**septem**, *seven* ; **septiēns** *7-times* ; **septimus**, -a, -um *seventh* ; **septuāgintā** *seventy* ; **septingentī**, -ae, -a *seven hundred* ; **septendecim** *seventeen* ; **septen-triō**, -ōnis m. *seven plough-oxen* ; *Great bear, the north*  
**sequor**, **sequī**, —, **secūtus** 97, 100, 102  
**serēnus**, -a, -um *clear, calm, fair* ; **serēnō**, **serēnāre** *make clear*  
**serviō**, **servire** *be a slave, serve* ; **servus**, -ī ; **serva**, -ae *slave* ; **servitūs**, -ūtis f. 43  
**servō**, -āre *save, keep, guard, watch*  
**sex**, *six* ; **sexiēns** *6-times* ; **sex-tus**, -a, -um *sixth* ; **sēnī**, -ae, -a *six each* ; **sexā-gintā** *sixty* ; **ses-centī**, -ae, -a *six hundred*  
**seu** = **sive** 66  
**sī** 113, 224 ; **sīn** 156a, 224 ; **sive** (**seu**) 66  
**sīc** *in such a manner, so* ; **sīcut** *just as*  
**sīdō**, **sīdere** (-**sēdī**, -**sessus**) *sit down*  
**signum**, -ī n. *figure, mark, military standard, signal* ; **significāre** *indicate, show*

- silva**, -ae f. *forest*; **silvestris**, -e (of) *forest*; *wooded*
- similis**, -e like, *similar*; **similiter** *similarly*; **simulāre** *pretend*
- simul** *at once, together, at the same time*; **simul atque (ac)** *as soon as*
- sine** 58
- singuli**, -ae, -a 120e
- sinister**, -tra, -trum *left*
- sitis**, -is f. *thirst*
- socius**, -a, -um *allied, confederate, friendly; comrade*; **societas**, -ātis f. *association, alliance*
- sōl**, **sōlis** m. 41
- soleō**, **solēre**, —, **solitus** *be accustomed, wont* Inf. o
- sollicitō**, **sollicitāre** 222d
- solum**, -i n. *bottom, soil, ground*
- sōlus**, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b; **sōlum** 66
- solvō**, -ere, **solvi**, **solūtus** *loosen, unbind, release, pay, fulfill*
- sonō**, **sonāre**, **sonui**, **sonitus** *sound, resound*; **sonitus**, -ūs m. *sound, noise, din*
- soror**, -ōris f. *sister*; **sorōrcula**, -ae f. *little sister*
- sors**, **sortis** f. *lot; fate, destiny, oracle, success*
- spatium**, -i n. 67
- speciēs**, -ēi f. *appearance; looks, sight*; **spectō**, -āre *look, face; look at, consider*; **specula**, -ae f. *look out*; **speculātor**, -ōris m. *scout, spy*
- spēs**, **spei** f. 55c; **spērō**, **spērāre** *hope, expect* 4; 4 Inf.
- spiritus**, -ūs m. *breath*; **pl. airs**
- spoliō**, **spoliāre** 4p 6t, 230f *rob*
- sponde** of (one's own) *will or effort*
- statim** *see stō*
- statuō**, **statuere**, **statui**, **statūtus** *set up, station, fix; decide*
- stilus**, -i m. *stylus (for writing)*
- stipendium**, -i n. *tribute*
- stō**, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statūrus** 62c; **statiō**, -ōnis f. 42, 44, 157; **statim** *as one stands; at once; forthwith*; **statūra**, -ae f. *stature*; **status**, -ūs m. *state*; **stābulum**, -i n. *stable*
- strepitus**, -ūs m. *noise*
- studeō**, **studēre**, **studui** *be eager or zealous* 3 or Inf. o.; **studium**, -i n. 107, cf. 105; **studiōsus**, -a, -um *fond*
- suāvis**, -e *pleasant, sweet*; **suādeō**, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus** 147e
- sub** 57, 58, 220, 14; *close to, towards*
- sub-dūcō**, **sub-dūcere**, -dūxi, -ductus *lead up, draw up, haul up*
- sub-eō**, **sub-ire**, -iī, -itus 220, 14; **subitus** *having gone up to; sudden, unexpected*; **subitō** *suddenly*
- sub-levō**, -āre *relieve*
- sub-rideō**, **sub-ridēre**, -risī, -risus *half-laugh, smile*
- sub-sequor**, **sub-sequi**, —, **sub-secūtus** 220, 14
- subsidiūm**, -i n. *what sits or remains below; reserve, assistance, reinforcement*
- suc-cēdō**, **suc-cēdere**, **suc-cessī**, -cessus 3; 220, 14
- suc-currō**, **suc-currere**, **suc-currī**,

-cursus *run up or under; run to assistance of* 3

suf-ferō, suf-ferre, sus-tulī, sub-lātus 220, 14

sui, sibi, sē 116c, 180

sum, esse, fui, futūrus 183

summa, -ae f. 92; summus 92

sum-ministrō, -āre; see ministrō 220, 14

sum-mittō, sum-mittere, -misi, -missus 3 and 4, 220, 14

sū-mō, sū-mere, sū-mpsī, sū-mptus 219, 4; sūmptus, -ūs m. *undertaking, expense*

super prep. w. Acc. or Abl. *over, upon* 220, 15; suprā *above*; superbus, -a, -um *overbearing, proud*; superbē *haughtily*; superō, superāre 62f; super-sum, 220, 15; superī 92; superior 68c, 92; summus 92; suprēmus 92; summa, -ae *sum, sum total, chief position or command*

sup-petō, sup-petere, sup-petī, -petitus (look up at) *be in stock or on hand, be plentiful*

sup-plex, -icis *bending under, kneeling; suppliant*; supplicium, -ī n. *kneeling; punishment, penalty*

sus-cipō, sus-cipere, sus-cēpī, sus-ceptus 220, 14

su-spiciō, su-spicere, su-spexī, su-spectus *look under or suspect; look up to*; suspiciō, -ōnis f. 152b; suspiciārī 220, 14

sus-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus 220, 14

sustulī see sufferō and tollō

suus, sua, suum 63, 64, 109c

tabernāculum, -ī n. *tent*

tabula, -ae f. *board, writing tablet*  
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus *be silent; tacitus silent*

tālis, tāle 91

tam 64, 69, 149; tam-quam *so as, just as*

tamen *still, nevertheless, yet*  
tandem *at last, finally; pray, pray tell me*

tantus, -a, -um 70, 92; tantulus, -a, -um 149 f; tantopere 70

tardus, -a, -um *slow, late*; tardē *behind time, slowly*; tardāre *retard, hold back*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus *cover, protect*; tēctum, -ī n. *shelter, roof*

tēlum, -ī n. *missile, weapon*; spear, bolt, javelin; tēla *mitere or conicere let go or hurl weapons in* 4

tempus, -oris n. 42, 82; occasio; tempestās, -ātis f. *period of time, weather, season*; bad weather, storm; temperō, temperāre ab 6 102, 155b

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus *stretch*; tenuis, -e *stretched; thin, slender, shallow*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus 97-104 -ē-

ter 67; ternī, -ae, -a *three each*; tertius, -a, -um 120c

tergum, -ī n. *back, rear*; ā tergō *on or from the rear*

terra, -ae f. *earth, land*; terrestris, -e *earthly, of the earth* cf. 109c

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus 98, 148; terror, -ōris m. *fright*

testūdō, -inis f. *tortoise; tortoise-shaped sheller of shields or beams*

timeō, timēre, timui *fear* 153

toga, -ae f. *toga; togātus, -a, -um clad in the toga*

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus *raise, lift up; puff up, remove, take away, destroy*

torus, -i m. *couch*

tot 64; totiēns *so many times, so often; tot-idem* 64

tōtus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b

trā-dō, trā-dere, -didi, -ditus 220, 15

trā-dūcō, trā-dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus 220, 15

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus *drag, draw*

trāns 57, 220, 15

trāns-eō, trāns-ire, -iī, -itus 4, 220, 15

trēs, tria 120; tredecim 13;

trīdūm, -ī n. 67; trīni or

ternī, -ae, -a 3 *each; tri-*

ennium, -ī n. 67; trīgintā

120; trecentī, -ae, -a cf. 120d;

triēns, trientis *one third;*

tri-plex, -plicis 120f; triplicō,

triplicāre *triple*

tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtus 220, 2

tū, tui, tibi, tē 116

tueor, tuērī, —, tuitus or tūtus *protect, make safe; tūtor,*

-ōris m. *protector; tūtus, -a,*

-um *safe*

tulī see ferō

tum or tunc 66; tum cum 115b;

cum . . . tum while . . . at the same time, both . . . and

tumultus, -ūs m. *commotion*

tumulus, -ī m. *hillock, mound*

turbō, -inis whirl; whirling *storm, tornado, whirlwind*

tuus, -a, -um 109c

ubi 119a; p. 183, 148; ubique p. 183

ūllus, -a, -um 40, 65

ultrā 57; ulterior, -ius *farther;*

ultimus, -a, -um *farthest*

umbra, -ae f. *shade, shadow*

um-quam 119b

ūnā cum 58; ūnus, -a, -um 65, 120; un-decim 120

unde p. 183; undique p. 183

urbs, urbis f. 74, 21; urbānus, -a, -um (*of the*) city 109c

ūrō, ūrere, ūssi, ūstus 220, 4

ūsque ad or in w. acc. *all the way, up to or till; quo-ūsque how far*

ūsus see utor 201

ut or uti 147, 148, 149

uter, utra, utrum 40, 65, 108;

utrum *whether . . . an or;*

uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que

65, 66b, 108, p. 182; utrim-

que p. 183; utrōque p. 182

ūtor, ūti, —, ūsus 6, 100, 182,

201; ūsus, -ūs m. *use, expe-*

rience; ex ūsū est *it is of*

advantage; mihi ūsui est *it is*

useful to me cf. 159g, p. 48, l. 7

uxor, uxōris f. *wife*

vacō, vacāre 55b; vacuus, -a,

-um *empty; vacuum a void*

vadum, -ī n. *shallow, shoal, wad-*

ing (place), ford, crossing

vagor, vagārī, —, vagātus

*wander about, roam*

- valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus** *be strong; excel; be able, have power, be worth; valetūdō, -dinis* *f. health, illness*  
**vallēs, -is *f. valley*  
**vallum, -i *n. rampart, earth-works*  
**varius, -a, -um** *various*  
**vāstus, -a, -um** *empty, void, waste, wild; immense; vāstō, vāstāre* *lay waste, ravage*  
**vehementer** *violently*  
**vel** 66  
**vēn-dō, vēn-dere, -didī, -ditus** *sell*  
**vēn-eō, vēn-īre, -iī, -itus** *go on sale, be sold*  
**venīō, venīre, vēnī, ventus** 92, 97, 98, 102-4  
**vēnor, vēnāri** *hunt; vēnātiō, -ōnis* *f. hunting; vēnātor, -ōris* *m. hunter*  
**ventus, -i** *wind*  
**vēr, vēris, n.** *spring*  
**verbum, -i** *word*  
**vereor, verērī, —, veritus** 97, 100, 104, 182, 196  
**vergō, vergere** *bend, incline, slope*  
**vergobretus, -i *m. vergobret*  
**vertō, vertere, vertī, versus** *move, turn; vertī* *turn self, revolve; versārī* 222c; *dwell, conduct one's self; versus* 119b  
**vērūs, -a, -um** *true; vērō* *in truth, but; vērē* *truly; vērum* *but, but yet*  
**vesper, -eris** *or -erī* 76 *evening star; west*  
**Vesta, -ae** *f. Vesta, goddess of hearth and home*  
**vester, vestra, vestrum** *your* 109c  
**vēstigium, -i *n. footprint, track, trace; ē vēstigiō* *forthwith, straightway*  
**vestis, -is** *garment, robe; clothing, drapery; vestīre* *dress*  
**vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** 123, 132 *forbid*  
**vetus, veteris** 42, 86; **vete-rāscere** 223b  
**vexō, vexāre** *harass, ravage*  
**via, viae** *way, route, street*  
**vicēsīmus, -a, -um** *twentieth; viciēs* *twenty times; viginti* *twenty* p. 29  
**vicis** *f. change, turn; invicem* *in exchange, in turn*  
**victus, -us *m. see vivō*  
**vicus, -i** 5g, 60; **vicinus, -a, -um** *of same village; neighboring, near*  
**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus** 4; 4 *Inf.*; 97, 98, 121, 192; **vīdērī** *be seen; seem, appear* *Inf.* | o. 155  
**vigilō, vigilāre** *be awake, be on guard; vigilia, -ae* *a lying awake, a night watch, guard* p. 35  
**vīginti** *see viciēs*  
**vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus** *bind, tie; vinculum, -i* *n. bond, fetter, tie*  
**vincō, vincere, vici, victus** 225; **victor, -ōris *m. winning, winner*  
**vindicō, vindicāre** *claim as defender; defend, avenge*  
**viola, -ae** *f. violet*  
**vinum, -i** 82e; **vīnea, -ae** *f. vine-bower; shed used in military operations*************



- vir, viri** *man, husband, hero*;  
**virtūs, -ūtis** f. 43, 74, 16;  
**virilis, -e** *man's; manly*  
 109c  
**virgō** 78  
**viridis, -e** *verdant, green*  
**vis vim, vī** 80; **virēs** *forces,*  
*strength; vim facere* *do or use*  
*violence*  
**vīta, -ae** f. *life; vīvō, vivere,*  
**vixī, victus** 74, 17; **vīvus, -a,**  
**-um** *alive, living; victus, -ūs*  
*m. living, food*  
**vītō, vītāre, avoid, shun**  
**vix** *hardly, scarcely, barely; vix-*  
*dum* *hardly, yet*  
**vocō** see **vōx**  
**volō, volāre, volitāre** 222c
- volō, velle, volui** 128, 137, 140,  
 186; **voluntās, -tātis** f. *wish,*  
*desire; voluptās, -tātis f. *joy,*  
*liking, pleasure*  
**volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus** 82,  
 p. 47  
**vōs** 116  
**vōx, vōcis** f. *voice; utterance,*  
*word; magna vōx* *loud voice;*  
**clāra vōx** *distinct voice; vocō,*  
**vocāre** *call, name*  
**vulgus, -ī** *common people; vulgō*  
*for common* 77b  
**vulnus, -eris** n. 78; **vulnerāre**  
*wound; vulnus inferre* *inflict*  
*a wound*  
**vultus, -ūs** m. *look, countenance,*  
*expression, face**

# INDEX

[Numbers refer to paragraphs.]

- Ablative**, general meaning, 56, 6  
 absolute (so called), 95, 96  
 of accompaniment, 62  
 of accordance, 56, 6; 96 c  
 of agent, 62 d  
 of cause or reason, 56, 6; 74, 15  
 of comparison, 56, 6; 75  
 of description, 62 g  
 of manner, 96 b  
 of means or instrument, 62 b  
 of measure of difference, 68 b  
 of price or value, 73  
   place, in expressions of, 60, 61  
   in names of towns, *domus*, and  
     *rūs*, 60, 61; with certain words,  
     230  
 of respect or specification, 74, 16  
 of separation, 63  
 of time at or within which, 68 c  
 of way or manner, 96 b  
 with *opus est*, 71 c  
 with prepositions, 58  
 with *utor*, *potior*, 182 b  
*-ābus*, dative and ablative, 55 a, note;  
   77 a, 120  
**Accent**, 35, 36  
**Accompaniment**, with *cum*, 62  
**Accordance**, ablative of, 56, 6; 96 c  
**Accusative**  
   of direct object, 56, 4; 74, 4  
   of measure of extent, duration, etc.,  
     56, 4, 68 a; 74, 17  
   of place to which, with *ad* or *in*,  
     60, 61  
   predicate of object, 5; 74, 5  
   predicate of subj. acc., 5 c; 74, 3  
   subject of infinitive, 5 g; 56, 4,  
     142  
   "two accusatives," 155  
   with prepositions, 57  
**Active voice**, defined, 179  
**ad w. acc.** of gerund, 121 b; cf. 158
- Adjectives**, declension, 83-90; 108-  
   120, 150  
   agreement of, 83  
   as substantives, 64-5; 70-1 (64-5;  
     70-1)  
   comparison of, 88-92, 97-8  
   possessive, 109 c  
   pronominal, 108-18  
**Adjective pronoun**, 64-5; 70-1  
**Adverbs**, 69, 91-2  
**Adversative cum-clause**, 115 b; 224  
   *qui*-clause, 115 b  
**Agent**, ablative of, with *a* or *ab*, 62 d  
   dative of, 106  
**agō**, conjugation, 197-200  
**Agreement**, 66 b, c; 83, 93-6  
*alius* — *alius* —, *one* — *another*, 65  
*alter* — *alter* —, *one* — *the other*, 65  
**Antepenult**, 36  
**Appositive**, 93-6  
 "As — as possible," 69, 90, 91  
**Attraction**, subjunctive by, 137 b  
**audiō**, conjugation in full, 207-10
- capiō**, conjugation, 202-5  
**Cardinal numbers**, 120  
**Cases**, defined, 56  
   endings of, 55  
   known by their use, 74, 1-22  
   table of meanings, 56  
*castra*, declined, 77  
*causā*, of purpose, 59  
**Cause**, ablative, 74, 15  
   *cum*-clause, subjunctive, 115, 224  
   *qui*-clause, subjunctive, 115 a, 224  
   *quod*, *quoniam*, 224-6  
**Characteristic clause**, 151 b  
**Commands**, 141, 143  
**Comparative adjectives**, 89, 150  
   with ablative, 56, 6  
**Comparative degree**  
   meaning "too," 69, 89, 91-2

- Comparison of adjectives, 88-92, 97-8  
 Comparison of adverbs, 69  
 Complementary, infinitive, 132  
 Completed action, 183-5  
 Conditional sentences, 137 b, c;  
     141 b; 156  
 Conjugations distinguished, 169  
 Conjunctions, 66  
*cōnor*, conjugation, 191  
*cōnsilium*, declined, 77  
 Consonant, stems, 78-9  
 Consonant *l*, 22, 23  
 Consonants, pronunciation, 22-3  
 Contractions, 76, 178; 217; 219, 1, 4  
*cornū*, declension, 81  
*cum*, conjunction, 115 b, 119, 224  
*cum*, enclitic with prons., 116  
     with abl. of accompaniment, 62  
     with abl. of manner, 96 b  
*cum*, prep., 58, 62 a  
 Customary action, 183, 185
- Dative, general force, 56, 3  
     of agent, 106  
     of indirect object, 5 f; 74, 6  
     of possession, 5 e; 105  
     of reference or concern, 56, 3;  
         73 e; 105-6, 159 g  
     of tendency, purpose, or result,  
         73 e; 159 g  
     w. spec. vbs. and adj., 230  
     "two datives," to denote purpose  
         and reference or person con-  
         cerned, 73 e; 159 g  
*dē* or *ex* with abl. for gen., 66 c  
 Declension,  
     of nouns, 75-82  
     of adjectives, 83-90, 108-18  
     of pronouns, 108-18  
 Degree of difference, 74, 19  
 Deliberative subjunctive, 141  
 Demonstratives, 108-18  
 Deponent verbs, defined, 181-2  
 Description, 56, 2, 6; 62 g; 151  
*dic*, imperative, 170 note  
*diēs*, decl.; gender, 81 b  
 Diphthongs, 21, 27  
 Direct discourse, 142  
 Direct object, 5 d; 56, 4; 74, 4  
 Direction in space, 57, 60, 61  
*dis*-, meaning, 220, 5
- Division of syllables, 29  
 Divisions of time, pp. 35-7  
*dō*, conjugation, 184  
*domus*, declension, 81  
     cases in constructions of place,  
         60-1  
*dūc*, imperative, 170 note  
*dum*, "while," "until," 147 d  
*duo*, declension, 120  
 Duration, accusative of, 68
- e* or *-i*, in ablative singular, 78-80,  
     84-9  
*-e*, *-er*, pronunciation of, 24-26  
*eius*, distinguished from *suus*, 109 b, c  
 Endings, in conjugation, 124  
     in declension, 55  
 Entreaty, 141  
*eō*, conjugation, 212-5  
*-ēs* and *-is*, in acc. pl., 78-80; 84  
 Exhortation, subjunctive, 141  
 Extent of space, 74, 17
- faciō*, passive of, 212-5  
     imperative, *fac*, 170 note  
*ferō*, conjugation, 212-15  
*filia*, declension of, 77  
*filius*, declension of, 76  
 Finite moods, 125; 187-9; 191 a, b,  
     192-4; 196 a, b; etc.  
*fiō*, conjugation, 212-5  
 First conjugation, in full, 187-90  
 First declension, of nouns, 77  
*fore*=*futūrum esse*, 183  
 Forms, summary of, 37-55; 160-  
     182  
 Formation of verbs, 171-7  
 Fourth conjugation in full, 207-10  
 Future perfect indicative, use, 156 a
- Gender, grammatical, 54, 55 f  
 Genitive, 56, 2  
     descriptive, 56, 2  
     possessive, 56, 2  
     price or value, 73  
     subjective, objective, 107  
     whole amount, 66 c, 72  
     with special verbs, etc., 230  
 Gerund, defined, 129; uses, 135  
 Gerundive, defined, 104; uses, 158  
*gradior*, conjugation, 206

*grātiā*, of purpose, 59  
Growth of language, 218

Habitual action, imperfect of, 183  
Harmony or Sequence of tenses, 147  
Hortatory subjunctive, 141

*i-consonant*, 23

-i or -e in abl. sing., 78-9; 84  
-i, pron. dative ending, 40  
i-stems of third declension, 79  
Imperative, uses of, 143; forms, 189,  
191 b, etc.

*dic, dūc, fac, fer*, 170 note

Imperfect indicative and subjunctive,  
137 c, 147 g; 156, 183-5, etc.

Impersonal verbs, 136; 140; 98 Irr.,  
106 c.

Indefinite pronouns, 65, 71, 108-19  
Indicative, formation, 171

Indicative and subjunctive, com-  
pared, 138 b, c, d; rule for chang-  
ing indicative to subjunctive,  
137 b; 188, 193, 198, etc.

Indirect discourse, defined, 142

principal clause, 142-3

subordinate clause, 137 b

Indirect object, 56, 3; 74, 6

Infinitive, defined, 121-3; 127  
distinguishing conjugations, 126,  
169; in various case relations,  
130-5

in indirect discourse, 142

Instrument, ablative of, 62 b

-iō, of third conjugation, 162, 202-6

Interrogative particles, 145

Interrogative pronouns, 65, 71, 108,  
114, 119 a

-is and -ēs in acc. pl., 79, 80, 84, 86

*iūdex*, declension of, 78

-ius and -ium, gen. and voc., 76-7

-ius, pron. genitive ending, 40

"Jussive subjunctive," 141

-ie and -se verbs, 127, 137, 140, 186

Less vivid future conditions, 156 b

Locative, endings, 55 a, b

Locative case, use of, 60-61

Locative meaning, 56, 7; 75; 77

Long vowels, 28

*maior*, pronunciation, 23

*mālō*, conjugation, 186

Material or composition, gen. of, 56, 2

Means or instrument, abl., 62 b, e

Measure of difference, abl., 68 b.

*meus*, vocative singular *mi*, 83

Middle verbs, 181

*mille*, declension and use, 120

Mixed stems of third declension, 79 c

Modes of the verb defined, inf., 121-  
7; ind., 136; sub., 138

More vivid future conditions, 156 a

*multō*, abl. of measure, 74, 19

*multum*, acc. of measure, 74, 17

*nāvis*, declension of, 79

-ne, interrogative enclitic, 145 a

*nē*, 69, 141, 148, 149, 155

Negatives, choice of, 69, 141

*nōh*, with infinitive, 121, 141

*nōlō*, conjugation, 186

*nōmen*, declension, 78

Nominative as subject, 5 g; 74, 1

*nōnne*, in questions, 145 b

"Noun clauses," 122, 134, 142-3,  
152-5

*num*, in questions, 145 c

Number, 66 b

Numerals, pp. 28-9; list, 120

Object of verb, 74, 4, 6

Objective genitive, 107

Obligation, or propriety, sub., 141

Obligation, or necessity, expressed by  
future passive participle, 106

*oppidum*, declined, 77

"*grātiō obliqua*," 142

Ordinals, 120

Participles, defined, 97-104

"Partitive genitive," 72

Parts of speech, 57-8, 64, 66, 69, 97-  
104, 113-5

Passive voice, defined, 181

Penult, 36

Perfect infinitive, formation, 99

Perfect participle, passive, 98

deponent, 100

Perfect stem, 163

Persons and things, 62

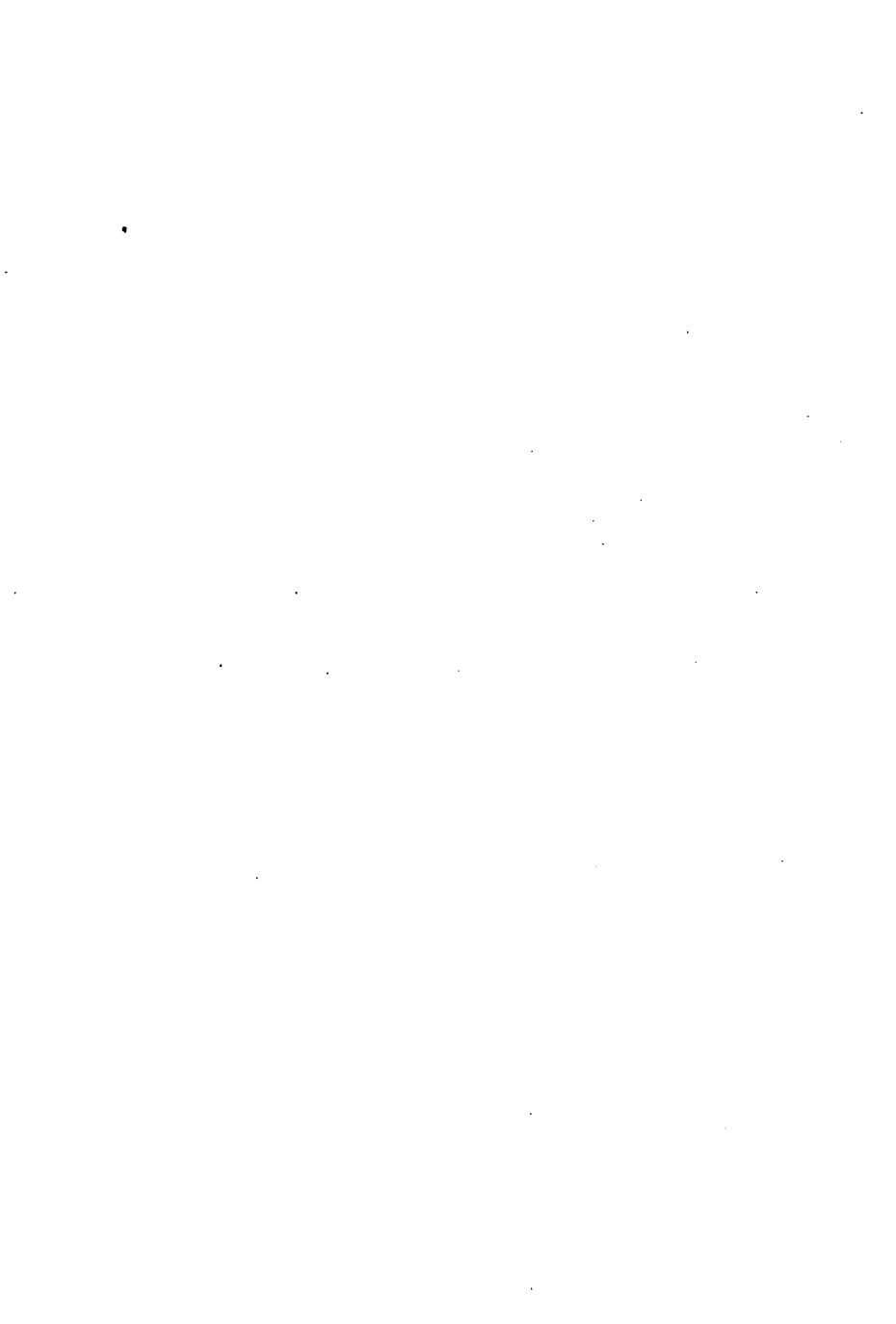
- Personal endings of the indicative, 124, 168  
 Personal endings of the subjunctive, 124, 168  
 Place, general expression of, 60, 61  
**plūs**, declension, 150  
 Possession, expressed by genitive, 5 e, 109 b  
     expressed by the dative, 105  
 Possessive adjectives, 109 c  
 Possibility, subjunctive, 141  
**possum**, conjugation, 183  
**postquam**, 69, 224  
 Potential subjunctive, 141  
**potior**, ablative with, 182 b  
**potior**, conjugation, 211  
 Predicate, defined, 74, 3, 4  
     predicate accusative, 74, 3, 5  
     predicate nominative, 74, 3  
 Prepositions, 57, 58  
 Present subjunctive, 139, 140  
 Present tense of indicative, meaning, 136-7  
 "Primary tenses," tenses of the present or future, 147 f  
 Principal parts of verbs, 161-3  
 "Principal tenses," see primary tenses, 147  
 Prohibitions, subjunctive, 141; **nōll**, 121  
 Pronominal adjectives, 64-5, 70-1, 108-18  
 Pronunciation, 21-36  
**prōvincia**, declension of, 77  
 Purpose, expressed by, 59, 148, 158  
  
 Quantity of vowels, 27, 28  
     of syllables, 33, 34  
 Quantity, position of words of, 68  
**-que**, enclitic, 66  
**-que**, indefinite particle, 76, 108, 119 b  
 Questions:  
     indicative, of fact, 145  
     subjunctive:  
         of deliberation, 141 b  
         of possibility, 141 b  
**qui**-clauses:  
     descriptive, 151  
     determinative or characteristic, 151  
     of purpose, 148  
     of result, 149  
     "rather," expressed by comparative, 69, 89, 91  
**re-**, **red-**, 220, 13  
 Reference or concern, 56, 3; 73 e; 159 g  
 Reflexive pronouns, 116 c  
     distinguished from **ipse**, 118 a  
 Reflexive verbs, 181-2  
 Relative clause, 147-51  
 Relative pronoun, 115  
 Request or entreaty, expressed:  
     by imperative, 142-3  
     by subjunctive, 141  
**rēs**, declined, 81 b  
 Respect, ablative of, 74, 16; 157  
 Result clauses, 149  
**-ro**-stems in nouns, explained, 76  
 Rule for changing indicative to subjunctive, 137 b, 188, 193, 198, etc.  
**rūs**, **rūre**, **rūrī**, in constructions of place, 61  
  
**s**-stems, 42, 78 b  
**sē**, **sēd-**, 220, 13  
 Second conjugation, in full, 192-6  
 Second declension, 75-6  
     of adjectives, 90  
 "Secondary tenses," tenses of the past, 147 g  
 Semi-deponent verbs, **audeō**, **fidō** (**cōn-fidō**, **dif-fidō**), **gaudeō**, **soleō**, see Vocabulary  
 Separation, ablative with verbs of, 63  
 "Sequence of tenses," 147 f, g  
 Short vowels, 28 b  
**simul atque**, 224  
**sine** and **cum** in expressions of manner, 96 b  
 Sociative ablative, 62 a  
 Space, acc. measure of, 68  
 Specification, 74, 16  
 Subject, of finite verb, nom., 56, 1; 74, 1  
     of infinitives, acc., 56, 4; 74, 2  
 Subjunctive, formation, 172  
     used to express:  
         adversative idea (opposition) with **qui**, with **cum**, 115, 224  
         cause or reason, with **qui**, with **cum**, 115, 224

- close connection with subjunctive or infinitive clause (attraction), 137 c
- commands or prohibitions, 141
- conditions and conclusion: less vivid future, contrary to fact, 156, b, c
- deliberation, 141
- description, in *quī-* clauses, 151
- exhortation, 141
- fear or anxiety, 153
- obligation or propriety, 141
- possibility, 141
- purpose, with *quī, quō, ut, or nē*, 148
- request or entreaty, 141
- result, with *ut, ut nōn, quān*, 149
- situation, in *cum*-clauses, 115, 224
- substantive idea, 152-5
- after verbs of hindrance, prevention, or check, with *nē, quōminus, or quān*, 155
- with *utinam*, 141
- adjectives as substantives, 64-5; 70-1
- Substantive clauses, 146, 152-5
- sum*, conjugation in full, 183
- Summary of forms of nouns and adjectives, 37-56
- Summary of forms of verbs, 160-78
- Superlative degree, 69, 90
- with *quam*, "as — as possible," 69, 90
- Supine, formation; uses, 157-9
- Syllables, division of, 29-32
- quantity of, 33-4
- Tables of:
- endings of nouns, 55
- endings of verbs, 168
- conditions and conclusion, 156
- indirect discourse, 142
- natural harmony of tenses, 147 f, g
- Tenses of participles, 97-104
- of participle, 94 b, 97-101, 103
- Terminations, *see* Endings, 55, 124
- "Than," English, how expressed, 56, 6; 75, 69
- Third conjugation, 197-206
- Third declension adjectives, 83-9
- consonant stems, 86
- i-stems, 83-5; 87-9
- Third declension nouns, 79, 80
- Third declension participles, 97
- Time at or within which, ablative of, 68 c
- "Too," expressed by comparative, 69, 91
- "Two accusatives," 155.
- ubi, ut, postquam, simul atque*, with indicative, 224
- "Until," 57, 147 d
- ut*, "as," with indicative, 115, 147 b
- utinam*, wishing particle, 141
- ūtor*, ablative with, 182 b
- conjugation of, 201
- v, ve, vē, vi*, sometimes lost in perfect stems, 178, 217
- vereor*, conjugation of, 196
- "Very," expressed by superlative, 69, 90-1
- vesper*, declension of, 76
- vetus*, declension, 86
- videō*, conjugation, 192-5
- virgō*, declension of, 78
- vis*, declined, 80
- Vocative, regular formation, 75
- or nouns, in *-ius*, 76
- used in address, 56, 5; 74, 7
- vocō*, conjugation, 187-90
- Voice, defined, 179, 180
- Volitive subjunctive, 141
- volō*, conjugation, 186
- Vowels, pronunciation, 21
- quantity, 28
- vulgus*, declension of, 77
- vulnus*, declension of, 78
- Whole, expressed by genitive, 72
- by *dē* or *ex* with ablative, 66 c
- Wish, expressed by subjunctive, 141
- with *utinam*, 141
- "Yes" and "no" questions, 145

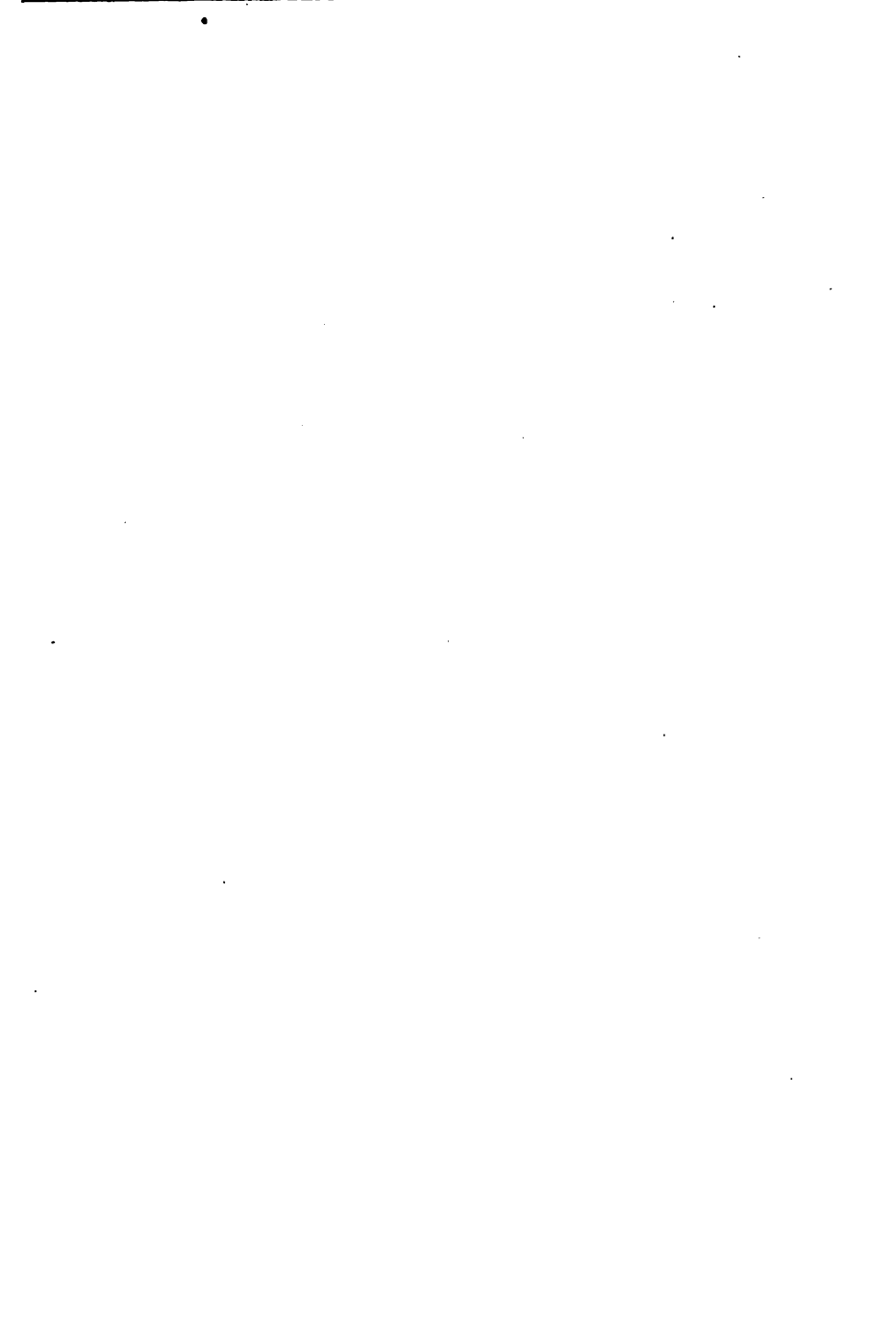


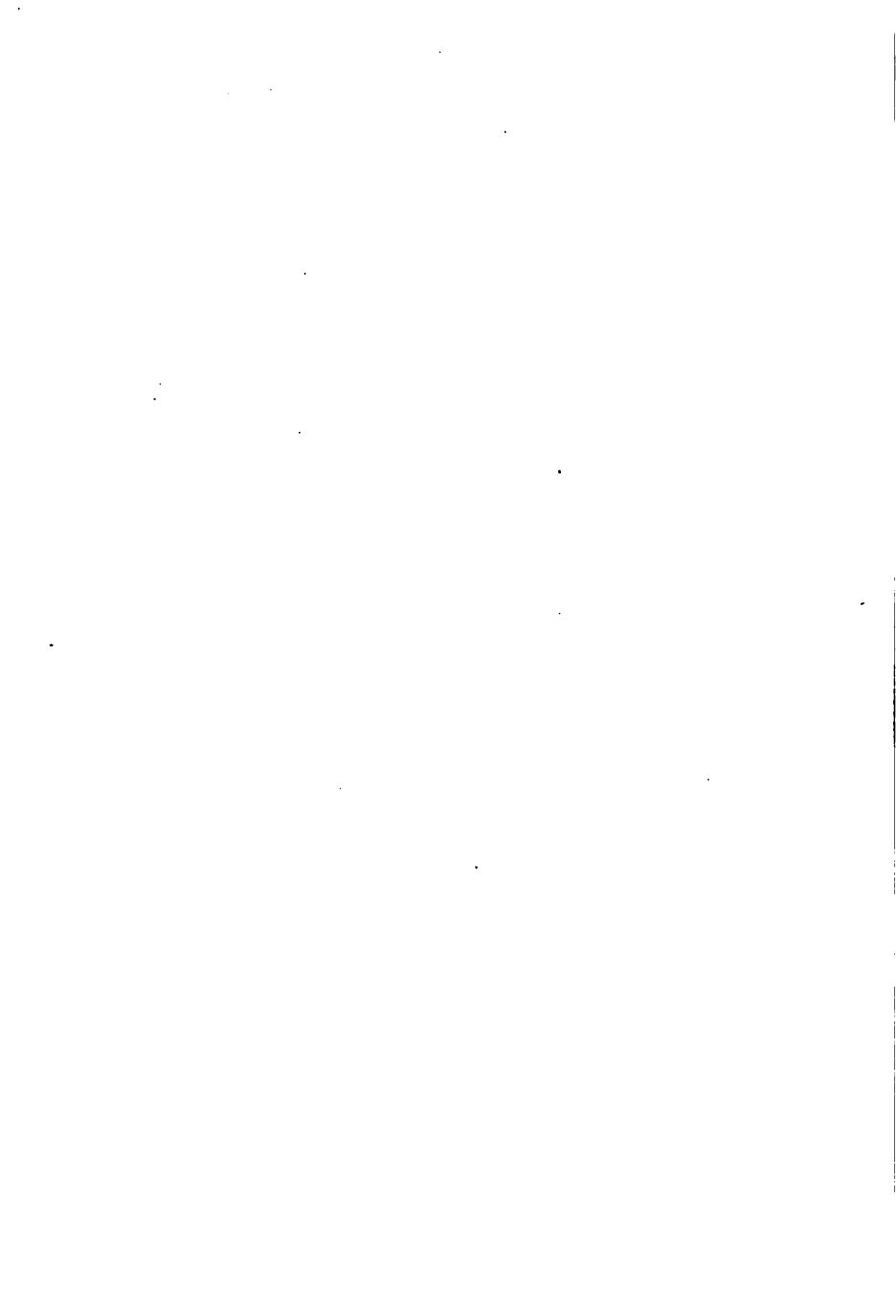












To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

JUN 13 1953  
MAY 19 1953

Keynolás, A.B.  
Latin reader

597397

DATE

NAME

DATE

Y FAC. 1953

LIBRARY. SCHOOL OF EDUCATION. STANFORD

597397

TX  
478.4  
R4

